

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN
VISWA BHARATI
LIBRARY

— 475

W6

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

A First Year French Writer.
By G. H. WADDE, 2s. 6d.
Second Year, 3s. 6d. Third Year, 3s. 6d.

Graduated French Exercises and Questionnaires on Accidence and Syntax. From the Earliest Stages up to the Subjunctive Mood.
By F. E. ROBESON, 3s. 6d.

The Transitional French Reader. With Exercises and Grammar, providing a Second French Course, based on the gradual introduction of the Tenses, for the use of Pupils who have already gone through an Elementary Oral Course.
By R. H. PARDOE, 3s.

Exercises in French Prose.
By E. G. H. NORTH and L. G. d'A. HUNTINGTON, 2s. 6d.

Lectures Scientifiques.
By W. G. HARROG, 5s.

French Unseens.

Junior Course.—Two books, 6d. each.
Senior Course.—Two books, 8d. each.

The Modern German Series.

A Primer of German Grammar.
By SOMERVILLE and BYRNE, 2s. net.

Primary German Exercises.
By the same, 2s. net.

A First German Writer.
By the same, 3s. 6d.

Primary German Translation and Exercise Book.
By H. S. BESREFORD-WEBB, 2s. net.

Beginners' Texts. 9d. each.
1. Selections from Hebel's *Schatz-
kästlein* (MORPH). 2. *Deutsches
Allerlei* (MORPH). 3. *Lustige
Geschichten* (MORPH). 4. *Erzählun-
gen aus der Römischen Geschichte*
(LYON). 5. *Leichte Lesestücke* (SIEPMAN-
N). 6. *Ulysses und der Kyklop*
(BECKER).

Elementary Texts. 1s. each.
1. *Weihnachten bei Leberecht
Hühnchen* (SERZI). 2. *Episodes
from Andreas Hofer* (HOFFMANN).
3. *Bilder aus der Türkei* (GRUHN).
4. *Die Werke der Barmherzigkeit*
(RIEHL). 5. *Die wandelnde Glocke*
(FISCHER). 6. *Der Besuch im Career*
(ECKSTRIN). 7. *Fritz auf dem Lande*
(ARNOLD).

Advanced Texts. 6 vols. 2s. each.
A detailed list to be had on application.

Rivingtons' Direct Method Elementary German Texts.

Edited by D. L. SAVORY, 1s. 6d. each Vol.

Das Gespensterschiff.
By WILHELM HAUFF.

**Die Geschichte des jungen
Herrn Anton.** By HEINRICH SEIDEL.
Krambambuli.

By MARIE VON EBNER-ECHENBACH.

Der Dachs auf Lichtmess.
By W. H. RIEHL.

John Wells.

By FRIEDRICH GERSTACKER.

Johannissegen.

By ERNST MUELLERBACH.

By A. R. LECHNER.

Easy Readings in German. 2s.

**Schrammen's Tales of the Gods
and Heroes of Ancient Greece.** 2s.
**Schrammen's German Heroes
of the Middle Ages.** 2s.

**First Book of German Oral
Teaching.** On the Direct Method,
written throughout in German.
By A. R. FLORIAN, 3s. 6d.

German Prose Composition.
By R. J. MORICH, 4s. 6d.

English Classics for Schools.

Grade I. 6d. each net.
1. Burns, Byron, and Campbell's
Shorter Poems. 2. English Ballads.
(FIRST SERIES). 3. English Ballads.
(SECOND SERIES). 4. Macaulay on
Clive.* 5. Macaulay on Warren Hastings.*
6. Scott's Ivanhoe,* in 2 Vols.,
or in 1 Vol., 10d. net. 7. Scott's Kenil-
worth.* 8. Scott's Lady of the Lake,*
Vols. I. & III. 9. Scott's Lay of the
Last Minstrel,* in 2 Vols., or in 1
Vol., 10d. net. 10. Scott's Talisman.*
11. Wordsworth's Short Poems.

Grade II. 10d. each net.

11. Anson's *Voyage Round the World*.*
2. Byron's *Childe Harold*, Cantos III.
IV.* 3. Cook's Voyages.* 4. Dam-
pier's *Voyage** 5. Defoe's *Plague
of London*.* 6. Longfellow's *Evan-
geline*. 7. Milton's *Paradise Lost*,* in
2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 1s. 6d. net. 8. Pope's
Iliad,* in 3 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 2s. net.
9. Prescott's *Conquest of Mexico*,*
in 2 Vols., or in 1 Vol., 1s. 6d. net.

* The text of these books has been reduced.

Grade III. Five Vols.

A detailed list to be had on application.

London : 34, King Street, Covent-Garden, W.C.

SECOND LATIN BOOK

BEING THE SECOND YEAR OF A TWO YEARS'
COURSE PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

BY

C. A. WILLIAMS, M.A.

SOMETIME SCHOLAR OF QUEENS' COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
FORMERLY CLASSICAL MASTER AT HULME GRAMMAR SCHOOL, OLDHAM,
AND AUTHOR OF 'FIRST LATIN BOOK'

RIVINGTONS
34 KING STREET, COVENT GARDEN
LONDON

1910

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

FIRST LATIN BOOK. 2s.

BEING THE FIRST YEAR OF A TWO YEARS' COURSE
PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

'The author is to be congratulated upon the thorough and workmanlike manner in which he has treated his subject. There is no doubt that pupils who have worked through this course and that which is to follow it will be able to attack "Caesar" with understanding and facility.'—**Schoolmaster.**

'The plan is a great advance on the old-fashioned method of beginning with "Caesar," a grammar, and a dictionary, and Mr. Williams has worked it out with admirable skill. We envy the pupils who get their introduction to Latin by such a plan.'—
Secondary School Journal.

'A capital little book for pupils who are entering upon the study of Latin.'—**Scotsman.**

'To the notice of teachers of Latin by modern methods we commend this volume.'—**Educational News.**

'The lessons are admirably arranged. There is an excellent Latin-English Vocabulary. We commend this volume to the notice of teachers.'—**The Teacher.**

'Mr. Williams has planned his book with great skill, and worked out the plan as skilfully. We cordially recommend it to those in search of an introduction to Latin.'—**Aberdeen Journal.**

'The book will be a favourite one. It is thorough.'—**School Guardian.**

'It is neatly and attractively got up, the matter is well selected and judiciously introduced, and the book can be recommended to any teacher who desires a reliable and interesting introduction to the language.'—**Secondary Education.**

LONDON : RIVINGTONS

P R E F A C E

THIS book is a continuation of my **First Latin Book**, and is planned throughout on the same lines. Thus it contains sentences for translation from Latin into English, and from English into Latin, Free Composition, Easy Continuous Prose, Recapitulatory Exercises, and passages for reading (*Lectiōnēs*). The latter are taken entirely from Caesar's *Gallic War*, adapted to suit the requirements of pupils, and chosen, as far as possible, to illustrate rules of Syntax given in the previous part of the Lesson. At Lesson 46 a Continuous Narrative is introduced, comprising the matter of Caesar, *B. G.* v. 39-48.

As in my *First Latin Book* great stress is laid on **Oral Work**. The Examiners in Classics under the Scotch Secondary Education Board 1908 report as follows — 'the extent to which systematic oral practice is calculated to impress ordinary forms and constructions on the mind of the learner is not sufficiently appreciated.'¹ And

¹ Report of Secondary Education (Scotland) 1908, p. 16.

again—‘nor should the introduction of written composition involve *ipso facto* the discontinuance of oral.’²

This view is supported also by the Classical Association in their report of the Curricula Committee upon a Four Years Latin Course for Secondary Schools, presented at the general meeting of the Association, 11th January 1910. On p. 8 of that report it is suggested that ‘the conversion of English sentences into Latin (during the first year) should be done orally in class before they are reproduced in writing.’ There seems no reason why this plan should not be continued after the First year.

The same report recommends that the Subjunctive Mood and Passive Voice should be mastered in the Second not the First year.

In accordance with suggestions in the Scotch Report³ Continuous Passages for reading, not meant to be literally translated, but read rapidly in Latin, have been added as an Appendix.

It is recommended that throughout the book all Latin to be translated, whether in the form of

² *Ibid.* p. 38.

³ *Ibid.* pp. 35 and 37.

sentences or *Lectiōnēs*, be read first in Latin. 'One great object of reading Latin is to bring the pupil to the point at which translation may in ever increasing measure be dispensed with.'¹

The book has purposely been made full. If some Lessons are found to be rather long, it is intended that teachers should make their own selection as to what to omit, e.g. those who prefer not to use the continuous prose passages may confine themselves to the detached sentences.

Only constructions that occur with frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War* have been given, and the author may claim that pupils who have worked through this and the First Book ought to be able to attack Caesar with understanding and facility.

The book begins with the Passive Voice and includes Passive and Deponent Verbs (all Moods)—Infinitive and Subjunctive Moods ~~and~~ Active Verbs—Imperative Mood of Passive and Deponent Verbs—Participles—Supines—The Gerund and Gerundive—Frequentative, Inceptive, Impersonal,

¹ Report of Secondary Education (Scotland) 1908, p. 37.

and Defective Verbs—Compound Nouns—Diminutive and Distributive Numeral Adjectives—Indefinite Pronouns—Prepositions—Uses of the Cases—The Ablative Absolute—Time and Place, including the Locative Case—Uses of the Subjunctive in Independent and all kinds of Dependent Clauses—Sequence of Tenses—Indirect Statement, Command, and Question.

In the Latin-English Vocabulary words are in most cases given in their setting. French derivatives in common use have in many cases been added for purposes of comparison. No proper names have been included in it, except such as differ much from the English forms, *e.g.* Belgae, Cantium, Hibernia.

The Grammar has been collected and summarised at the end of the book.

In conclusion, I have to thank the Rev. F. Conway, M.A., of Merchant Taylors' School, E.C., to whom I am indebted for many valuable suggestions and for his great help in the correcting of proofs.

C. A. WILLIAMS.

EASTBOURNE, April 1910.

C O N T E N T S

	PAGE
PRONUNCIATION,	xii
ABBREVIATIONS,	xiv
MARKING OF QUANTITIES,	xv

PART I., pp. 1-250.

LESSONS 1-58.

	PAGE
LESSON	
1. Passive Voice. Introductory. <i>Lectiō: Frāter frātrī succurrit,</i>	1
2. Passive Voice. Present Tense (1st and 2nd Conj.). <i>Lectiō: Rhēnus flūmen,</i>	4
3. Passive Voice. Future and Imperf. Tenses (1st and 2nd Conj.). <i>Lectiō: Oppidī obsidiō,</i>	7
4. Passive Voice. Pres. Fut., and Imperf. Tenses (3rd and 4th Conj.). <i>Lectiō: Caesar per dolum litterās mittit,</i>	11
5. Deponent Verbs. The verb fīō ,	15
6. Deponent Verbs (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō: Rōmānī in itinere oppugnantur,</i>	19
7. The Present Participle. <i>Lectiō: Rōmānī cum Britannīs proelium committunt,</i>	23
8. The Supines and Future Participle. <i>Lectiō: Nostrī Germānōrum metū adficiuntur,</i>	27
9. The Perfect Participle,	33

LESSON	PAGE
10. Recapitulatory,	37
11. The Perfect Participle (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō</i> : Rōmānī in summō perīculō versantur ,	40
12. Frequentative and Inceptive Verbs. <i>Lectiō</i> : Britannia . The verb consuescō ,	45
13. The Ablative Absolute,	49
14. The Ablative Absolute (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō</i> : Caesar cum Britannīs bellum gerit ,	54
15. Indefinite Pronouns; 'double <i>alius</i> ',	58
16. Indefinite Pronouns (<i>continued</i>). The Relative quīcumque . <i>Lectiō</i> : Gallī aggerem Rō- mānum incendunt ,	61
17. The Gerund,	65
18. The Gerundive. <i>Lectiō</i> : Quae ducī agenda sunt ,	70
19. The Gerundive (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō</i> : Germānī ā Caesarē fugantur ,	74
20. Recapitulatory,	79
21. The Infinitive Mood (all Voices). coeptus sum , followed by the Passive Infinitive,	81
22. Indirect Statement (<i>ōrātiō obliqua</i>). <i>Lectiō</i> : Caesar bellum contrā Suēvōs parat ,	88
23. Indirect Statement (<i>continued</i>). Predicative Dative,	93
24. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Lectiō</i> : Gallōrum dei ,	98
25. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Gerund and Ger- undive in Indirect Statement,	102
26. Nouns. <i>Lectiō</i> : Caesar in Britanniam pro- ficiōtur ,	107

LESSON	PAGE
27. Adjectives. Distributive Numeral and Diminutive,	111
28. Prepositions governing the Acc. Case, idiomatic uses of. <i>hōc(eō) . . . quod.</i> <i>Lectiō: Caesar in Britanniam contendit,</i>	116
29. Prepositions governing the Abl. Case, idiomatic uses of. <i>accēdit quod,</i>	122
30. Recapitulatory,	127
31. The Subjunctive Mood. Introductory,	129
32. The Subjunctive Mood (2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.). The Perfect Subj. used to express prohibitions,	135
33. Subjunctive Mood of some Irregular Verbs. <i>Lectiō: Indutiomari mors,</i>	140
34. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Sequence of Tenses. Historic Present. <i>Lectiō: Rōmānī Gergoviam oppugnant,</i>	144
35. The Locative Case. Place and Time,	149
36. The Subj. in Subordinate Clauses in <i>ōrātiō obliqua.</i> <i>Lectiō: Ambiorix victoriā sublātus Nerviōs sollicitat,</i>	154
37. The Subj. in Subordinate Clauses in <i>ōrātiō obliqua (continued),</i>	158
38. Indirect Command and Petition. <i>Lectiō: Orgetorix Helvētiīs, ut ē finibus suis exeant, persuādet,</i>	162
39. <i>quīn</i> and <i>quōminus,</i>	166
40. Recapitulatory,	170

LESSON	PAGE
41. Final Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Rōmānī cum Belgīs configunt,</i>	172
42. Final Clauses (<i>continued</i>),	177
43. Consecutive Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Prīmipīlus,</i>	180
44. Indirect Question. <i>Lectiō: Quōmodo Venerōrum nāvēs factae sunt,</i>	185
45. Some uses of the Genitive Case. <i>Lectiō: Qui prīmō irrīdent postrēmō maerēbunt,</i>	190
46. Causal Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Cicerō in Nerviīs obsidētūr,</i>	195
47. Causal Clauses (<i>continued</i>) <i>Lectiō: Quōmodo sē dēfendit Cicerō,</i>	199
48. Temporal Clauses, <i>Lectiō: Colloquium inter Nerviōs et Cicerōnem,</i>	203
49. Temporal Clauses (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō: Quae ab hostibus parantur,</i>	208
50. Recapitulatory,	212
51. Conditional Clauses. <i>Lectiō: Quae septimō diē facta sunt,</i>	214
52. Conditional Clauses (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō: Oppugnātiō gravior fit,</i>	219
53. Some uses of the Dative Case,	223
54. Concessive Clauses. Verbs of Fearing. <i>Lectiō: Caesār, litteris commōtus, auxilia undique arcessit,</i>	228

¹ A continuous narrative begins here, and is continued to the end of the book.

LESSON	PAGE
55. Some uses of the Ablative Case. <i>Lectiō</i> : Labiēnus, Trēverōs veritus, Cicerōnī suc- currere nōn potest,	232
56. Some uses of the Ablative Case (<i>continued</i>). <i>Lectiō</i> : Caesar ad Cicerōnem pervenit : Nerviī obsidiōnem relinquunt,	238
57. The Imperative Mood of Passive and Deponent Verbs. Defective Verbs. <i>Lectiō</i> : Cicerō obsidiōne liberātūr: Caesaris grātulātiō,	243
58. Recapitulatory,	248

PART II

LATIN PASSAGES,	251
GRAMMAR SUMMARISED,	260
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY,	283
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY,	336

PRONUNCIATION.

THE following hints on Pronunciation are taken by permission of the Committee of the Classical Association from their pamphlet, *The Pronunciation of Latin*. (London: John Murray. 1908. Price 3d.)

Vowels:

ā (*fātum*), as a in *father*.

ă (*dăbit*), as a in *aha*.

ē (*poēta*), as e in *prey*.

ĕ (*lĕnent*), as e in *fret*.

ī (*Dīdo*), as ee in *feel*.

ĭ (*sīmĭlis*), as i in *fit*.

ō (*hōra*), as o in *flown*.

ŏ (*quōta*), as o in *not*.

ū (*tūto*), as oo in *shoot*.

ŭ (*ăbi*), as u in *full*.

Diphthongs:

The two vowel sounds composing the diphthong should be rapidly run together.

ae (*portae*) = *a* + *e*, nearly as **ai** in *Isaiah*.

au (*aurum*) = *a* + *u*, as **ou** in *hour*.

oe (*poena*) = *o* + *e*, nearly as **oi** in *boil*.

ui (*huic, cui*) = *u* + *i*, as Fr. *oui*.

eu (*Europa*) = *e* + *u*, nearly as **ew** in *new*.

ei (*Pompēi*, vocative of Pompeius) = *e* + *i*, as **ey** in *grey*.

Consonants:

c, g, and t are always hard, even before i.

qu (*qui, quod*), as **qu** in *queen*.

gu (*unguere*), as **gu** in *anguish*.

i and u consonantal.

i (j), e.g. *iacio*, as **y** in *you*.

u (v), e.g. *volo*, practically as **w** in *we*. ⁱ

Double consonants, e.g. *vac-ca*, are pronounced separately, as English **book-keeper**.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl., ablative.	fut., future.	opp., opposed.
abl. absol., ablative absolute.	gen., genitive.	p., page, pp., pages.
acc., accusative.	hist. pres., historic present.	part., participle.
act., active.	i.e., id est (that is).	pass., passive.
adj., adjective.	imper., imperative.	perf., perfect.
adv., adverb.	imperf., imperfect.	pers., person.
aor., aorist.	impers., impersonal.	pl., plural.
cf., confer (compare).	indef., indefinite.	pluperf., pluperfect.
compar., comparative.	indic., indicative.	predic., predicative.
condit., conditional.	infin., infinitive.	pres., present.
conj., conjugation or conjunction.	l., line, ll., lines.	rel., relative.
constr., construction.	Less., Lesson.	sc., scilicet (namely).
dat., dative.	lit., literally.	sent., sentence or sentences.
dep., deponent.	loc., locative.	sing., singular.
e.g., exempli grātiā (for example).	m. or masc., masculine.	sqq., and following.
etc., et cetera.	milit., military, in military affairs.	superl., superlative.
f., or fem., feminine.	n. or neut., neuter.	subj., subjunctive.
foll., followed.	nom., nominative.	superl., superlative.
Fr., French.	n.b., notā bene (note well).	vide, or v., see.
		viz., namely.
		vocab., vocabulary.

MARKING OF QUANTITIES.

A long vowel is denoted by the sign (-), a short vowel by the sign (◦).

In the following pages:—

- (a) vowels long 'by nature,' *e.g.* **ācrēs**, **ēdūcō**, **Rōmānī**, are marked.
- (b) vowels short 'by nature,' *e.g.* **bōnus**, **incōlā**, **tēnēt**: vowels short 'by nature' but long 'by position,' *e.g.* **rēspicio**, **dūx**, **īpellere**: and vowels long 'by nature and position,' *e.g.* **dēstringo**, **ūllus**, are not marked.
- (c) diphthongs, *e.g.* **ae**, **au**, **eu**, *etc.*, and the rare diphthong **-ui**, as in **cui** and **huic**, are not marked.
- (d) Some doubtful vowels, are marked, *e.g.* the **i** in the 2nd pers. sing., and 1st and 2nd pers. pl. of the fut. perf. indic. act. and the perf. subj. act., *e.g.* **fuerīs**, **fuerīmus**, **fuerītis**.
- (e) Where the word **-que**, 'and,' is hyphened to a word, the last vowel of such word, if long 'by nature,' has been marked, *e.g.* **īngentēs-que**, **barbarīs-que**, but only in the first few Lessons. Where **que** is joined without a hyphen to such endings, they are left unmarked.

(f) The compounds of **iaciō**, are peculiar. The **i** before the **c** representing both the consonantal **i** at the beginning of this verb, and also the following **a**, is vocalic, because it makes a separate syllable with the **c**; but it is also sufficiently consonantal to lengthen a short vowel followed by a consonant in front of it. In all such cases the vowel thus lengthened has been marked; *e.g.* **cōnicio**, **dīsicio**, **īnicio**. **ābicio** is an exception. In the supine the **i** is purely consonantal, and the lengthened vowel in front is, therefore, left unmarked, in accordance with rule (b).

(g) The **e** of the 5th declension has for uniformity been marked long in the gen. and dat. sing., though it was usually short in **rēi**, **fidēi**, **spēi**. There is much uncertainty about the pronunciation of the **ei**, and possibly it was often treated as a diphthong.

LESSON 1.

PASSIVE VOICE—Introductory.

<i>turrēs aedificātur</i> , a tower is built.	<i>fossa complētur</i> , the trench is filled.
<i>turrēs aedificantur</i> , towers are built.	<i>fossae complentur</i> , trenches are filled.
<i>tēlum cōnicit</i> , a weapon is thrown.	<i>oppidū mūnit</i> , the town is fortified.
<i>tēla cōniiciunt</i> , weapons are thrown.	<i>oppida mūniunt</i> , towns are fortified.

1. *turris ā Rōmānīs aedificātur.*
2. *turrēs ligneīs trabibus aedificantur.*
3. *fossa sarmentīs complētur.*
4. *fossa lāta ā mīlitibus dūcitur.*
5. *tēla in nostrōs ā barbarīs cōniiciuntur.*
6. *oppida mūrīs altīs mūniuntur.*
7. *urbs ab incolīs fortiter dēfenditur.*
8. *locus nātūrā atque opere ēgregiē mūnītr.*

We saw in Lesson 19 of my First Lat. Bk.¹ that 'by' when it precedes a personal agent is translated by *ā* or *ab* followed by the ablative (*abl. of Agent*): *cf.* sent. 1, 4, 5, 7, above.

• ¹ This refers to *First Latin Book*, by C. A. Williams. Rivingtons. 2s.

In all other circumstances the ablative alone is used (*abl. of Instrument*).

e.g. *miles a barbaro occiditur.*

the soldier is killed by the native.

but *miles saxo occiditur.*

the soldier is killed by a stone.

Vivā Vōce:

1. *a quibus aedificatur turris?*
2. *quibus rēbus cōmpletur fossa?*
3. *in quōs tēla cōniciuntur?*
4. *quōmodo urbs mūnitur?*
5. *quālis fossa dūcitur?*
6. *quid ēgregiē mūnitur?*
7. *quālibus trabibus aedificantur turrēs?*

In sequentibus quod dē-est suppeditātē¹:

1. *agrī ab agricol— arant—.*
2. *agricol— agrī arātr— arantur.*
3. *aciēs nostr— in fugam nōn dat—.*
4. *nāv— vent— in portū tenētur.*
5. *agmen nostr— viār— difficultat— impedīt—.*
6. *milit— animī ducis verb— confirm—.*

Latīnē reddite:

1. The top-of the hill is-held by a garrison.
2. The muscles of the Germans are-strengthened by hunting (*pl.*) from-childhood (*a parvulīs*).
3. The fleet is-hindered by contrary winds.
4. The natives are-put-to-flight by the weapons of the Romans.
5. Our-men are-kept in camp for-several days (*acc.*) by the storms.
6. Soon all the cavalry (*equitātus, ūs, m.*) of the enemy is-put-to-flight.

¹ 'In the following supply what is wanting.'

7. In-spring the fields are-ploughed by the farmers.
8. The town is-blockaded by outwork, mantlets, (and) towers.

VOCABULARY.

I put-to-flight, *fugō*. 1 ; *in fugam dō*. 1.

outwork, *agger*, *eris*, m. The 'agger' was a mound erected before the walls of a besieged city. On it were placed the siege-engines, and it was gradually extended towards the walls.

LECTIō.

Frāter frātrī succurrīt.

In eō proeliō cum Germānīs commissō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, *in* hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, cūiis avus in cīvitātē suā regnum obtinuerat, *amicus* ab senātū nostrō *appellātus*.

Forte Pīsōnis frāter ab hostībus *interclūditur*. Huic Pīsō auxilium fert, ex-que perīculō ēripit. Ipse tamen equō vulnerātō dēicitur, atque sīc impedītus ab hostībus circumdatur, multa-que vulnera accipit.

Tum dēmum frāter equum incitat, hostībus *sē offert*, atque fortissimē *pugnans* interficitur.

in, amongst.

amicus appellātus, called friend (said of a foreigner who was in alliance with Rome).

interclūdō, I cut-off (*milit.*).

tum dēmum, then at last, or not till then.

sē offert, offers himself ; i.e. rushes at.

pugnans, fighting.

LESSON 2.

PASSIVE VOICE—Present Tense (First and Second Conj.).

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.
colloc(a)-or, I am put, posted, (milit.).	contine-or, I am kept, de- tained, enclosed.
collocā-ris	continē-ris
collocā-tur	continē-tur
collocā-mur	continē-mur
collocā-mini	continē-mini
colloca-ntur	contine-ntur

Similarly conjugate:

confirmor, I am strengthened.	terreor, I am frightened.
vulneror, I am wounded.	dēleor, I am destroyed.

1. exercitus in hībernīs collocā-tur.
2. vīcus altissimīs montibus continē-tur.
3. ferōci Germānōrum impetū nōn perturbā-mur.
4. barba^ōrum cōpiae in insidiīs colloca-ntur.
5. nonne vōs, militēs, disciplinā atque ūsū belli
confirmā-mini ?
6. militēs sub pellibus ā duce diūtius nōn contine-
ntur.
7. immāni-ne ferae magnitūdine terrē-ris ?

Put the verbs in the following sentences into the Plural, and make other necessary changes:

- 1. ego tēlō vulner-or.
- 2. tū, mīles, in statiōne collocā-ris.
- 3. ille ab audācī Gallō vulnerā-tur.
- 4. ea cohors in Alpibus collocā-tur.
- 5. tū ducis cohortatiōne incitā-ris.
- 6. incola in captā urbe continē-tur.

Make sentences orally with the pres. tense of the verb *collocor*, and the words *legiō*, *cohors*, *auxilia*, *impedimenta* (introducing adjectives suitable to each), and the *Personal pronouns*.

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

- 1. Helvētiī undique loc— nātūrā continen—.
- 2. ūn— pars Galliae Garumna flūm— continētur.
- 3. nōs in castr— tempestāt— contin—.
- 4. hostium ordin— facile ā nostr— perturb—.
- 5. fossa — complēt—.

When a sentence is turned into the Passive from the Active voice, the Object becomes the Subject, and the Subject is put into the ablative (with or without a preposition).

e.g. **agricolae agrōs arant** (act.).

becomes **agrī ab agricolis arantur** (pass.)

Turn the five sentences in 'Quod dē-est' into the Active form.

LECTIO.

Rhēnus flūmen.

Rhēnus *oritur* ex *Lēpontiīs*, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per multārum gentium sīnēs *fertur*. Ubi ūceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffliuit partēs, et multās ingentēs-que insulās efficit. Hārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīs-que nātiōnibus *incolitur*, ex quibus *sunt* quī piscibus atque ūvis avium vivere existimantur. Deinde flūmen multīs *capitibus* in ūceanum influit.

oritur, rises.

• **Lēpontiī**, a people near the modern St. Gothard.

fertur, is carried, *i.e.* flows.

incolitur, is inhabited.

sunt qui, there are (some) who.

capitibus, mouths. What is the nom. sing.?

Vīvā Vōce:

1. ex quō populō oritur Rhēnus?
2. quālī cursū fertur?
3. ubi diffluere incipit?
4. quae tum efficit?
5. ā quālibus nātiōnibus hae insulae incoluntur?
6. quō cibō hārum insulārum incolae vīvunt?

LESSON 3.

*PASSIVE VOICE—Future and Imperfect Tenses
(First and Second Conj.).*

FUTURE TENSES.

circumda- bor , I shall be sur-	obsidē- bor , I shall be be-
rounded.	sieged.
circumda-beris(bere)	obsidē-beris (bere)
circumda-bitur	obsidē-bitur
circumda-bimur	obsidē-bimur
circumda-biminī	obsidē-biminī
circumda-buntur	obsidē-buntur

IMPERFECT TENSES.

excitā-bar, I was being	terrē-bar, I was being
roused.	frightened.
excitā-bāris (bāre)	terrē-bāris (bāre)
excitā-bātūr	terrē-bātūr
excitā-bāmūr	terrē-bāmūr
excitā-bāmīnī	terrē-bāmīnī
excitā-bāntūr	terrē-bāntūr

LECTIō.

Oppidī obsidiō.

Gallōrum oppidum a Rōmānīs iam diū obsidēbātūr. Nostrī mūrōs undique circumdederant, neque iam incolis ulla spēs salūtis relinquīt. Agger quoque *in diēs* propius mūrōs agitūr. Nihilō minus tamen Gallī fortiter resistunt. Mox dux Rōmānus diem oppugnatiōnī dīcet. Mīlitum animī ad pugnandum excitābāntūr.

Et iam ante id tempus cōpia magna eōrum quae ad oppugnatiōnem ūsuī sunt comparābātur, et commeātīs ex agrīs comportābāntur. Interim hostēs nōn torrentur. Frustrā tamen resistent, et mox tōtum oppidum ā nostrīs expugnābitur. Post victōriam dux, propter longam dēfensiōnem īrātus, gravissimō suppliciō eōs adficiet. Nam omnia aedificia vastābuntur, omnia bona ā victōribus exportābuntur.

in diēs, day by day.

pugnāndū, ī, fighting (gerund, *v. Less. 17*).

ūsuī, useful.

bona, ūrum. n. pl., goods or belongings.

Latīnē reddite:

A. Connected. The race of the Suēvī is by-far the largest and most warlike of all the German races. They (*hī*) are-said to have a hundred cantons, from which every-year warriors (*armātī, ūrum*) go-out for the-sake-of fighting. The rest, who remain (*perf.*) at-home, support themselves and the warriors. Thus neither agriculture nor the theory and practice of war is-interrupted.

The Suēvī do not live much on-corn (*abl.*) but chiefly on-milk and cattle, and are much occupied in hunting (*pl.*).

In the coldest places they wear (*say 'have'*) no clothing except skins, owing-to the scantiness of which a large part of (the) body is exposed.

VOCABULARY.

are said, <i>dicuntur</i> .	chiefly, <i>marimam partem</i> .
fighting, <i>bellandum</i> , <i>i.</i> , (gerund, <i>v. Less. 17</i>).	to be much occupied in, <i>multum esse in</i> (abl.).
theory and practice, <i>ratiō atque ūsus</i> .	exposed, <i>apertus, a, um</i> .

B. Detached.

1. Four cohorts were-being-posted on the left wing.
2. We-shall-be-besieged in a badly (*male*) fortified city.
3. At-night the soldiers will-be-roused from (*ē*) sleep by the sound of the trumpet.
4. Will-you (*sing.*) -be-frightened by the arrival of the enemy? (No.)
5. Corn will-be-carried into the city from the fields.
6. Our-men were-being-wounded in-all-directions by the enemy's weapons.
7. After several days our town will-be-stormed, and we ourselves (shall) surrender (*in dēditiōnem venire*. 4.).
8. Everything (*n. pl. of omnis, e*) will-be-lain-a-waste. • by-fire-and-sword (*ignī ferrō-que*).
9. By the advice of Cato (-ōnis) Carthage is-destroyed by the Romans.
10. The Helvētiī are-enclosed on-all-sides by natural barriers (*say 'by the nature of the place'*).

Translate the following orally and insert (where needful) an appropriate subject:

vastābuntur.	expugnāmur.
vulnerābimini.	incitabere.
arabitur.	dēlēbitur.
confirmābatur.	perturbābantur.
in fugam dabor.	comparābitur.
complēbantur.	obsidētur.

Conjugation of **nōlō**, I do not wish, and **mālō**, I prefer.¹

Present Indic.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult, nōlumus, nōn \\ \quad vultis, nōlunt. \\ mālō, māvis, māvult, mālumus, māvultis, \\ \quad mālunt. \end{array} \right.$
Future Indic.	nōlēs, nōlet ; mālēs.
Imperfect Indic.	nōlē-bam, etc. ; mālē-bam, etc.
Perfect Indic.	nōlu-ī, etc. ; mālu-ī, etc.
Fut. Perfect Indic.	nōlu-erō, etc. ; mālu-erō, etc.
Pluperfect Indic.	nōlu-eram, etc. ; mālu-eram, etc.
Imperative Mood.	nōli (2nd sing.), nōlite (2nd pl.). ²
Present Infin.	nolle, malle.
Present Part.	nōlens, (<i>wanting</i>).

For Subj. Mood *v. Less. 33.*

¹ For reference.

² *mālō* has no Imperative Mood.

LESSON 4.

*PASSIVE VOICE—Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses
(Third and Fourth Conjugations).*

PRESENT TENSE.

3rd Conj.

dūc-ōr, I am led.
dūc-e-ris(re)
dūc-i-tur
dūc-i-mur
dūc-i-minī
dūc-u-ntur

4th Conj.

inveni-or, I am found.
inveni-ris(re)
inveni-tur
inveni-mur
inveni-minī
inveni-u-ntur

FUTURE TENSE.

mitt-ar, I shall be sent.
mitt-ē-ris(re)
mitt-ē-tur
mitt-ē-mur
mitt-ē-minī
mitt-e-ntur

pūni-ar, I shall be punished.
pūni-ē-ris(re)
pūni-ē-tur
pūni-ē-mur
pūni-ē-minī
pūni-e-ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

capi-ē-bar,¹ I was being impedi-ē-bar, I was being
captured hindered.
capi-ē-bāris(bāre)
capi-ē-bātūr
capi-ē-bāmūr
capi-ē-bāmīnī
capi-ē-bāntūr

imperi-ē-bāris(bāre)
imperi-ē-bātūr
imperi-ē-bāmūr
imperi-ē-bāmīnī
imperi-ē-bāntūr .

¹ Verbs like capior (*e.g.* rapior, conspicior, iaciōr, *etc.*) drop the *i* of the stem before *ē*. Thus the pres. tense of conspicior is conspici-or, conspic-e-ris, conspici-tur, conspici-mur, conspici-minī, conspici-u-ntur.

Conjugate similar tenses of:

arcess-or. 3., I am sent for. conscrib-or. 3., I am enrolled.
 conspici-or. 3., I am seen. audi-or. 4., I am heard.

1. nulla tēla ā nostrīs frustrā mittuntur.
2. agmen nostrum ā multitūdine cālōnuīn impediēbātur.
3. ex hostibus complūrēs capientur.
4. in mediterrāneis Britanniae regiōnibus plumbum album (sic narrat Caesar) invenītur.
5. omne frūmentum in agrīs succidēbātur.
6. vōs, explorātōrēs, ab hostibus conspiciēmini.
7. auxilia ā Britannis arcessentur.
8. cōpiae in ūnum locum cōgēbantur.

Turn the fut. and imperf. tenses in the above sentences into the pres.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

mittunt— (pres. pass.) ad Caesar— confestim ab Cicerōne litter—, sed quoniam omn— viae obsidēb— (imperf. pass.), nuntii intercipi— (pres. pass.). Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitōn— causā compōstāv— (3rd pl. pluperf. act.), turrēs admodum cxx excitant— (pres. pass.) incrēdibil— celeritāte. Hostēs posterdiē mult— māiōres cōpi— cōgunt, castra oppugn—, fessam compl—.

Put the verbs in the following sentences into the Passive form, and make other necessary changes:

1. nostri crēbrās arborēs succidunt.
2. dux praesidium castris relinquit.
3. Caesar vicōs aedificiaque incendit.
4. barbari saxīs nostrōs petēbant.
5. dux duās legiōnēs in Galliā citeriōre conscribit.
6. Rōmānī corpora scūtīs prōtegēbant.

LECTIō.

Caesar per dolum litterās mittit.

Dum Cicerō, ūnus ē lēgātīs Caesaris, ā Nerviīs obſidetur, Caesar litterās ad eūn mittere vult. Itaque *cuidam* ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiīs *persuādet* ut ad Cicerōnēm epistulam *dēferat*.

Hanc epistulam Graecīs litterīs scribit, proptereā quod consilia sua ab hostibus *cognoscē* nōn vult. Tum nuntiō ‘sī adīre nōn poteris’ inquit ‘epistulam ad trāgulae āmentum *dēligātam* intrā mūnitionēs abice !’

Gallus perīculum veritus, sī propius *accesserit*, trāgulam procul mittit.

Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs *bīduō* animadvertisit. Tertiō autem diē ā *quōdam* milite conspicitur, atque ad Cicerōnēm dēfertur.

Ille epistulam in conventū militū recitat, omnēsque maximā laetitiā adſciuntur.

cuidam, dat. of }
quōdam, abl. of } quīdam (*v. Less. 15*).

persuādet . . . ut déferat, persuades to take.

cognoscī, to be known (pres. infin. pass. of *cognoscō*).

dēligātam, tied (agreeing with *epistulam*).

accesserit, what tense and why?

bīduō, for two days.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quis erat Cicerō?
2. ā quibus obsidēbātur?
3. quid Caesar facere vult?
4. quō dolō epistulam
mittit?
5. cūr hanc Graecis litteris scribit?
6. quae
iuſſa nuntiō dat?
7. quid trāgulae accidit?
8. quid
fēcit miles qui trāgulam conspexit?
9. ubi dux
epistulam recitat?
10. quōmodo mīlitēs adficiuntur?

LESSON 5.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs are Passive in form, but Active in meaning.

Thus :—

cohortor. 1., I encourage.	proficiscor. 3., I set-out, start.
proelior. 1., I fight.	experior. 4., I try.
polliceor. 2., I promise.	potior.¹ 4., I get possession of
vereor. 2., I fear.	(<i>abl.</i> or <i>gen.</i>).
ūtor. 3., I use (<i>abl.</i>).	

Deponent verbs are conjugated like the Passive voices of their respective conjugations (*vide* Less. 2, 3, 4) except in the Infinitive mood (*vide* pp. 83, 84).

1. priusquam proelium committit, dux suos cohortatur.
2. legiō undecima ingentī virtūte proeliābatur.
3. Aeduī Caesarī frumentum pollicēbuntur.
4. num vōs, comitēs, itineris pericula verēminī?
5. mediā circiter nocte ē castrīs proficiscimur.
6. nostrī hostium impedimentīs castrīs-que potiuntur.
7. mīlites, eandem bellī fortūnam ūnā experiēmur!
8. Germānī importātīs iūmentīs nōn ūtuntur.

¹ The pres. indic. has 3rd sing. *potiatur*, and 1st pl. *potiuntur*.

Latīnē reddite:

A. Connected.—L. Fabius, a centurion, and those who had climbed the wall along-with-him, having been killed, (*interfectus, a, um*) were being thrown from the wall. M. Petrōnius, a centurion of the same legion, tries to cut-down the gates, but is overwhelmed by numbers (*multitūlō, inis, f.*). To the soldiers who were following him he cried (*inquit*) 'Since I cannot save myself along-with-you (*ūnā vōbīs-cum*) I will provide-for the safety of you whom I have led into danger. Do you look-to yourselves.' At-the-same-time he bursts into the middle of the enemy, kills two of them, and moves the remainder a-little from the gate. To his comrades, who were trying to help him, he says 'It is useless for you to try (say 'in vain you are trying') to help me. Go-away, and while you may, (say 'while there-is a chance') retreat to the legion.' Thus fighting after-a-little-while (*post paulum*) he fell, and saved his comrades.

VOCABULARY.

soldier, *manipulāris, is, m.*

I provide-for, *prospiciō. 3. (dat.)*

I look to myself, *mihi consulō. 3.*

I move, *sum-moveō. 2. -mōvi.*

fighting, *pugnans.*

B. Detached.

1. The Germans were encouraging each-other (*inter
sē*) to battle.
2. In cavalry (*adj.*) skirmishes the Suēvī often leap-down from their horses, and fight (*proelior. 1.*) on-foot (*pl.*).
3. The enemy will send to Caesar the corn which they promised (*imperf.*).
4. We shall start to-morrow about the third watch.
5. Almost all the higher ground* (*locā, n. pl.*) was held (*imperf.*) by a multitude of armed-men (*armati, orum, m. pl.*).
6. Soldiers, we will make a sortie, and try (our) last resource (*auxilium, ilī, n.*).
7. Caesar gets possession-of a large number of men and cattle (*pecus, oris, n.*).
8. Instead-of coins (*sing.*) the ancient Britons used (*imperf.*) either bronze, or iron bars (*tālea,
ae, f.*) weighed to (*ad*) a fixed standard (*say
'weight'*).
9. The Suessiōnēs had (*say 'used'*) the same laws and the same rights (*iūs, iūris, n. sing.*) as (*say 'which'*) the Rēmī.
10. The general sent-forward scouts because he feared (*imperf.*) an ambush.

The verb **fīō**, *I become, am made*, is used as the Passive of **faciō**.

Present Tense. **fīō, fīs, fīt, fīunt.**

Future „ **fīam, fīēs, fīet, fīēmus, fīētis, fīent.**

Imperfect „ **fīē-bām, -bās, -bat, -bāmus, -bātis, -bānt.**

Present Infinitive. **fīe-rī.**

Imperative Mood. **fī!** (2nd sing.)

e.g. *Marius septiēs consul fīet.*

Marius will be made consul seven times.

id tūn facile fīēbat.

this was easily done then.

ab hīs consilium fīt.

a plan is made by them.

quis dīves fierī nōn vult?

who does not wish to become rich?

also very common in the phrase '**certior fīō**' (passive of **certiōrem facere** (*v. First Lat. Bk. Less. 57*)).

e.g. *litterīs Labiēnī Caesar certior fīt.*

Caesar is informed by Labiēnus' letter.

LESSON 6.

DEONENT VERBS—Continued.

Learn the following verbs:

cōnor. 1., I try.	loquor. 3., I speak.
moror. 1., I stop, linger.	col-loquor. 3., I converse
vagor. 1., I wander.	confer (cum).
versor. 1., I take part, busy myself.	patior. 3., I suffer, allow.
videor. 2., I seem.	queror. 3., I complain (of).
gradior. 3., I go.	sequor. 3., I follow.
ag-gredior. 3., I attack.	con-sequor. 3.)
con-gredior. 3. (cum), I contend.	in-sequor. 3. { I follow up, per-sequor. 3. } on.
ē-gredior. 3., I go out.	prō-sequor. 3.)
in-gredior. 3., I go in, enter.	sub-sequor. 3.)
prō-gredior. 3., I advance.	orior. 4., I arise.
re-gredior. 3., I retire.	ad-orior. 4., I attack.
trans-gredior. 3., I cross.	co-orior. 4., I arise (of storms, war, etc.).

N.B.—videor is also used regularly as the Passive of video.

e.g. • hōc mihi mīrum vidētur.
this seems to me wonderful. •

hostium cōpiae in summō iugō vidēbantur.
*the enemy's forces were seen on-the-top-of a
ridge.* •

LECTIŌ.

Rōmānī in itinere oppugnantur.

Illic Caesar paucōs diēs propter frūmentī inopiam **morātūr**,¹ deinde magnis itineribus in hīberna **proficis-**
citur. At hōstēs eum itinere prohibēre, **cōnantur**,
atque aliquōs, quī lātius frūmentī causā **vagābantur**,
subitō ex insidiis **adoriuntur**. Simul aliā ex parte
clāmor fromitus-que **oriēbatur** cōrum quī nostrōs ā
sinistrō cornū **aggredī** **conābantur**.

Quod fieri dux nōn **patitur**, sed ipse cum equitātū
barbarōs **insequitur**. Hī perterritī fugae sē mandant,
et complūrēs ab equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur.

Post hōc proelium Caesar cum hostium duce **collo-**
quitur, et magnum obsidum numerum eī imperat.

aggredi, pres. infin. of aggredior.

quod, *lit.* 'which thing'; translate 'this.'

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quārē Caesar illīc morātūr?
2. quō (adv.) deinde proficīscitur?
3. unde hōstēs eum prōhibēbant?
4. quōrum clāmor oritur?
5. cum quō dux barbarōs insequitur?
6. utrum nostri an hostēs in fuga sē convertunt?
7. quid post proelium dux Rōmānus faciet?
8. cui obsidēs imperābit?

¹ Words in black type are Deponent verbs.

Latīnē reddite:

- 1. P. Considius, who was-considered (*imperf.*) very-skilful in-military matters (*what case?*), is sent-forward with the scouts.
- 2. Amongst the Gauls the common-people (*plebs, f.*) are considered (*sing.*) almost in-the light (*use 'locus'*) of slaves.
- 3. A sudden war breaks-out (*coorior. 4.*) in Gaul.
- 4. The women and those who owing-to (their) age seemed (*imperf.*) useless for (*ad*) fighting (*say 'battle'*) are sent to the marshes for (*causa*) safety.
- 5. Caesar's allies were promising a large supply of ships.
- 6. We shall stop for-a-while (*paulisper*) near that town, and ravage (*dēpopulor. 1.*) the territory of the Rēmī.
- 7. A very-great storm will arise at-night.
- 8. Some-men take-part in (*in. abl.*) state-matters (*sing.*), others in war (*rēs mīlitāris*).
- 9. The Britons are compelled to give hostages, and to obey the sway of the Roman people.
- 10. The soldiers hidden (*abditus, a, um*) in their tents were either complaining-of their fate, or bewailing (*miseror. 1.*) the common danger.
- 11. At-that spot (*abl.*) the ascent to the enemy's fortifications seemed (*imperf.*) least (*minimē*) steep.
- 12. I was enjoying (*say 'using'*) the hospitality of my friends for-a few days (*acc.*).

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. T. Labiēnus cum legiōnibus trib— hostēs subse~~z~~
quēb—.
2. nostrī magnoper— perturbāb— (fut.).
3. quartā vigil— nōs ē castrīs ēgrediē— (fut.).
4. dux suōs long— oratiōn— cohortāb— (imperf.).
5. id fie— nōn potest.
6. principēs Britanniae inter — colloqu— (pres.).
7. discessus fug— similis vidēbāt—.
8. nāvēs paul— facit lātiōrēs quam quibus (those
which) in nostr— mar— ūtim— (pres.).
9. Rōmānī saepe in pericul— versā— (imperf.).
10. fūmī incendi— proc— vidēbantur.

discessus, ūs, m., departure.

fūmus, ī, m., smoke.

incendium, dī, n., fire

LESSON 7.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The Present Participle of verbs is formed by adding **-ns** to the Verb stem, and corresponds to the English participle in **-ing**. Thus:—

Active verbs

pugnā-ns. 1., fighting.	pete-ns. 3., seeking.
iaccē-ns. 2., lying.	cupi-e-ns. 3., desiring.
audi-e-ns. 4., hearing.	

Deponent verbs

arbitrā-ns. 1., thinking.	pati-e-ns. 3., allowing, suffering.
tuē-ns. 2., watching.	proficisce-ns. 3., setting-out.
experi-e-ns. 4., trying.	

Note :—(1) In verbs of the 4th conj. and in those of the 3rd conj. ending in **-iō** (capiō, cupiō, iaciō,¹ etc.), **-e** is added to the Verb Stem before adding the termination **-ns**.

- (2) Deponent verbs have present participles, but
- (3) There is no present participle passive.
- (4) The verb *sum* has no present participle.

¹ Often called 'Mixed' verbs.

Present Participles are 'Adjectives of one Termination' (v. First Lat. Bk., Less. 47).

cf. the following examples:—

SINGULAR.

Nom. fortissimē **pugnans** occiditur.
 Acc. cōquitātum **persequētēm** vīdi.
 Gen. **fugientis** exercitūs clāmōrēs.
 Dat. comitī **labōrantī** succurrit.
 Abl. **despērante** exercitū (the army being in despair;
 v. Less. 13).

PLURAL.

Nom. hōc **flentēs** petiērunt.
 Acc. dux hostēs transīre **cōnāntēs** prohibuit.
 Gen. multitudinē **fugientium** conspeximus.
 Dat. dux **cupientibus** signum dat.
 Abl. **insequentibus** nostrīs (as our men were following;
 v. Less. 13).

Meaning of the Present Participle.

The present participle denotes an action of the same time as that of the Principal verb.

e.g. Cotta cohortēs adhortans vulnerātūr.

Cotta is wounded in the act of exhorting the cohorts.

barbarī nostrōs ē nāvī cōgredientēs conspēxērunt.
The natives caught-sight-of our-men in the act of disembarking.

Note :—Many present participles are used as adjectives :—

e.g. **absens**, absent. **potens**, powerful.

praesens, present. **imprudens** (=imprōvidens), not expecting.

Thus :—**sē absente**, in his absence.

sē praesente, in his presence.

hostibus imprudētibus, the enemy not expecting (it). *cf.* Less. 13.

LECTIŌ.

Rōmānū cum Britannīs proelium committunt.

Pugnātum est ab utrisque āriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa *subsequi* poterant, magnopere perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō omnia vada cognōvērunt, et *ubi* ex litore singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs *conspexerant*, impeditōs *adoriēbantur*. Quō *vīsō* Cāesar scaphās longārum nāvium mīlitibus *complērī* iussit, atque subsidia *eīs* submittēbat, quōs labōrantēs *conspexerat*. Nostri, *simul* in ārido constitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugām dedērunt.

subsequi, pres. infin. of *subsequor*.

ubi conspexerant . . . adoriēbantur, whenever they saw . . . they attacked.

quō vīsō, seeing which (*lit.* ‘which (thing) having been seen,’ *v.* Less. 13).

complērī, pres. infin. pass. of *compleō*, ‘to be filled.’

eīs, antecedent of **quōs**, ‘to those whom.’

simul, as soon as.

Latīnē reddite :

1. All *weeping*¹ fling themselves at Caesar's feet (*sqy* 'to Caesar at (ad) his feet.'
2. Caesar *departing* for (*in. acc.*) Britain had left the Morini pacified (*pacātus, a, um*).
3. The enemy were trying to surround us as we were *fighting*.
4. They were standing-on (*in-stō*. 1.) their *prostrate* (*say 'lying'*) comrades (*dat.*).
5. The reserves (*auxiliaris, is, m.*) lent (*praeb-eō*. 2. -*ui*) an appearance of *fighting*-(men).
6. The enemy were hurling weapons at our men as they advanced (*veniō*. 4.)
7. When they stoutly resisted (*say 'to them stoutly resisting'*) Caesar brought up (*ago*. 3., *ēgi*) mantlets and towers.
8. This method of fight(ing) brought (*in-ferō, -ferre, -tuli*) the same danger to *pursuers* (*insequens, ntis*) and *pursued* (*cēdens, ntis*).

¹ Words in *italics* are to be put in the present participle.

LESSON 8.

THE SUPINES AND FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

THE SUPINES.

The Supine is in form a noun of the 4th Declension, found only in the accusative and ablative (or dative) case singular.

Thus :

postulā-tum, to demand.	dic-tū, for or in saying.
cohortā-tum, to exhort.	fac-tū, for or in doing.
ius-sum, to order.	vi-sū, for or in seeing.

Supine in -um.

The Supine in **-um** is used after verbs of Motion or verbs implying Motion, to express *Purpose*.

e.g. Aeduī lēgātōs mittunt **rogātum** auxilium.

the Aeduī send ambassadors to ask-for assistance.

principēs Caesarem **grātulātum** vēnērunt.

the chiefs came to congratulate Caesar.

Supine in -ū.

The Supine in **-ū** is used with *adjectives* and is confined to a few phrases :—

e.g. **perfacile, optimum factū**, very-easy, best to do, (*in the doing*).

mirābile dictū, wonderful to relate (*in the relating*).

With few exceptions, all Active and Dependent verbs have supines, and from the supines are formed:—

(a) the Future Participle (act. and dep.), *v. below.*

(b) the Future Infinitive (act., pass., and dep.),
v. Less. 21.

(c) the Perfect Participle (pass. and dep.),
v. Less. 9, 11.

N.B.—Latin has no Future Participle Passive (*v. Less. 18*) or Perfect Participle Active (*v. Less. 9*).

The following tables show various formations of the supine:—

A. Active verbs.

Verb.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Tense.	Supine.
port-ō, I carry. 1.	portā-re	portā-v-ī	portā-tum
iuv-ō, I help. 1.	iuvā-re	iūv-ī	iū-tum
mane-ō, I remain. 2.	manē-re	man-s-ī	man-sum
move-ō, I move. 2.	movē-re	mōv-ī	mō-tum
tend-ō, I stretch. 3.	tende-re	tetend-ī	ten-tum or ten-sum
rapi-ō, I seize. 3.	rape-re	rap-u-ī	rapi-tum
mūni-ō, I fortify. 4.	mūni-re	mūni-v-ī	mūni-tum
inveni-ō, I find. 4.	inveni-re	invēn-ī	inven-tum
sentī o, I feel. 4.	senti-re	sens-ī	sen-sum

B. *Deponent verbs.*

Verb.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Tense.	Supine.
vast- or , I devastate. 1.	vastā- rī	vastātus sum (<i>I have devastated</i>)	vastā- tum
verē- or , I fear. 2.	verē- rī	veritus sum (<i>I have feared</i>)	veri- tum
loqu- or , I speak. 3.	loqu- ī	locūtus sum (<i>I have spoken</i>)	locū- tum
pati- or , I suffer. 3.	pat- ī	passus sum <i>I have suffered</i>	pas- sum
adori- or , I attack. 4.	adori- rī	adortus sum (<i>I have attacked</i>)	ador- tum

The supines in -um of all verbs are given in the Vocabularies after the perfect tense.

THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE

can be formed from the supine by changing the -um into -ūrus, a, um, etc.

The Meaning of the future participle can be seen from the following examples:—

frūmentum quod hostēs **portātūrī** erant.

the corn which the enemy were about to (intended to) carry.

loca ubi dux bellum **gestūrus** erat.

the places where the general was about to wage war.

legiō quae **ventūra** est.

the legion which is on its way (about to come).

Anglice reddite:

1. si Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs libertātem ēreptūrī (*ēripiō*. 3.) sunt.
2. Sabīnus interpretem ad Ambiorigem mittit interrogātum.
3. Divitiacus 'ad senātūm' inquit 'vēnī auxilium postulātūm.'
4. Rōmānī, Germānōrum metū permōtī, signa lātūrī (*ferō*. 3.) nōn sunt.
5. hostēs magnā manū castra oppugnātūm vēnerant.
6. dē quartā vigiliā castra dux mōtūrus est.
7. tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum castra oppugnātūm mīsit.
8. barbarī in insidiīs latēbunt nostrōs impedītōs oppugnātūrī.
9. ea rēs nōn modo vīsū foeda (*shocking*) sed etiam auditū erat.
10. dux quinque cohortēs frūmentātūm in proximās segetēs mīsit.

LECTIō.

Nostrī Germānōrum metū adficiuntū.

Dum pācōs diēs Caesar ad *Vesontiōnēm* rēi frūmentārīasā morātur, summus subitō timor omnē exercitūm occupābat, proptereā quod Germānī ingentī

magnitūdine, incrēdibili virtūte esse à Gallis mercātōribus-que dīcēbantur. Omnia vērō mentes animi-que magnopere perturbābantur.

Hic timor p̄imum à tribūnīs mīlitum et praefectīs reliquīs-que, quī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant, *ortus est*.

Hī neque *vultum fingere* neque interduin lacrimās tenēre poterant. Abdītī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur, aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcībus ac timōre paulātim etiām eī, quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur.

Vesontiō, ūnis, m. the modern Besançon.

ūsus, ūs, m. experience.

ortus est, 3rd sing. perf. tense of orior. Its subject is *timor*.

vultum fingere, to compose their countenances.

Explain the ablatives *ingentī magnitūdine*, *incrēdibili virtūte*. Can you give other instances?

Vīvā Vōce:

1. cūius causā Caesar ad Vesontiōnēm morātūr
2. quō tūm Rōmānī occupantur? 3. à quibus hīc timor ortus est? 4. quōmodo Rōmānī timērem significābant? 5. ubi sēsē abdēbant? 6. quid querēbantur? 7. quid miserābantur? 8. quae obsignābantur?

Latīnē dicite:

1. We are about-to-come.
2. A storm is about-to-arise.
3. I have come to-find (*supine*) my friend.
4. Were you (*sing.*) not about-to-speak?
5. She intends-to-warn (*fut. part.*) us.
6. Hope in (*say 'of'*) the army (that is) about-to-set-out.
7. We shall come to-attack (*supine*) the enemy.
8. Fear is about-to-seize the soldiers.
9. Come and-help (*say 'to help'*) me!
10. The soldiers are about-to-fortify the camp.
11. The dangers which we are about-to-undergo (*sub-eō, -īre, -īt, -ītum*).
12. The eagerness (*alacritās, ātis, f.*) of soldiers about-to-fight.
13. The army is about-to-storm the town.
14. The defeat that the army is about-to-receive.
15. The words, that I am about-to-speak (*loquor. 3.*), are few.

In sent. 14 and 15 'that' is the relative pronoun.

LESSON 9.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

We saw in the last Lesson that Perfect Participles are formed from the Supine Stem of verbs.

The formation consists in changing the *-um* of the supine into **-us**, **a**, **um**, *etc.*

Thus:

in-ductus }
ad-ductus } (having been) influenced, moved.

com-mōtus }
per-mōtus } (having been) aroused, excited.

N.B.—Only Passive and Deponent verbs have Perfect Participles.

Perfect Participles Deponent have, as a rule, an Active meaning (*v. Lessons 5 and 6*), but some few are used Passively, *e.g.* **oblītus**, forgetting *or* forgot; **meritus**, deserving *or* deserved.

Thus:

aggressus (*aggre

d

dīor*), having attacked.

locūtus (*loquor*), having spoken.

cohortātus (*cohortor*), having encouraged.

nactus (*nanciscor*), having met with, obtained.

The difference in use and meaning between the perf. part. pass. and the perf. part. dep. is shown by the following examples:

Passive:

Helvētiī, militum concursū **repulsi**, sē recēpērunt.

The Helvētiī, having been repulsed (pass.) by the soldiers' onset, retreated.

Deponent:

T. Labiēnus, hostium castrīs **potitus**, subsidium mīsit.

T. Labiēnus, having got-possession-of (act.) the enemy's camp, sent reinforcements.

Why cannot 'Having defeated the enemy, Caesar broke down the bridge,' be translated

Caesar, hostes **victus**, pontem rescidit?

We shall learn later on how to translate such a phrase.

1. Helvētiī, hīs rēbus **adducti**¹ et auctōritātē Orgetorix **permōtī**, bellum parāre constituērunt.
2. regnī cupiditātē **inductus** coniūratiōnem fēcit.
3. frūmentī comineātūs-que inopiā **permōtus** in prōvinciam contendit.
4. hostēs, nostrōs **disiectōs** *adortī*, proelium renovārunt (=renovāvērunt).
5. hīs litterīs **commōtus** Caesar duās legiōnēs conscripsit.

¹ For the remainder of this Lesson perfect participles passive are printed in black type, perfect participles deponent in italics.

6. Helvētiī suppliciter *locūtī* flentēs pācēm petunt.
7. eōs **impeditōs** et inopīnantēs *aggressus* magnām
partem eōrum concīdit.
8. dux suīs, novitāte pugnae **perturbatīs** (*what case?*),
tempore opportūnissimō auxilium tulit.
9. Caesār, idōneam tempestātem *nactus*, tertiā ferē
vigiliā solvit.
10. Germānī, supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum *veritī*,
apud Caesarem remanēre māluērunt (*preferred*).

Latīnē reddite:

The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions had taken-up-a-position on the left wing. They quickly drove towards (*in. acc.*) the river from the higher ground the Atrebatēs (who were) weakened (*exanim-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātūm*) by-running and weariness and exhausted (*con-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī*, *-fectūm*) by wounds. Having followed them up (as they were) trying (*pres. part.*) to cross, they killed a great number of them thus distressed (*imped-iō*. 4. *-īvī*, *-ītūm*).

They-themselves did not hesitate to cross the river, and having advanced to (some) uneven ground put-to-flight the enemy (who were) again resisting (*pres. part.*).

VOCABULARY.

I follow-up, *in-sequor*. 3. *-secūtus*.

I advance, *prō-gredior*. 3. *-gressus*.

Quod dē-est *suppeditūtē* :

1. hostēs diūturnitā— pugnae **dēfatīgāt**— proeliō excēdēb—.
2. lēgātūs fidis ūsus duc— ad oppidum pervēn—.
3. hostēs hōc proel— **sublātī** nostrōs lacess— coepēr—.
4. nostrī tamen tot incommodis **conflictāt**— resistēbant.
5. Rōmānī, paulisper apud oppid— *morāt*—, agros que hostium *dēpopulāt*—, castra posu—.
6. quibus rēb— Caesar vehementer **commōt**— mātūr— constituit.
7. Caesar dē tertī— vigili— ē castr— *profectus* ad flūmen —.
8. dux Britannus dēfectiō— cīvitātis permō— lēgātōs ad Caes— mittit.
9. dux suōs nōn long— ūrātiō— *cohortātus* pugnae signum —.
10. tum dēm— Liscus, ūrāti— Caesaris **adduc**—, loquitur.

LESSON 10.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Decline in Sing. and Pl. the phrase vir pugnans.*
2. *Correct mistakes in, and then translate:*

signifer vulneratī.	castra circumdatī.
urbs mūnitum.	barbarī nostrōs aggressae.
vōcēs audita.	militēs vulneribus confectus.
3. *Give the Gen. Sing., Abl. Pl., and Meaning of fossa, sarmentum, urbs, portus, agger, incola, cohors, vīcus, frāter, caput, aestās, supplicium.*
4. *How do Deponent differ from other verbs? What participle have they which Active verbs lack? How is this an advantage?*
5. *Give the other degrees of comparison of lātus, fortissimē, facile, altissimus, male, māior, propius.*
6. *Make up two sentences each containing an abl. of Agent and an abl. of Instrument; and one sentence containing an abl. of Quality.*
7. *Conjugate in full the pres. pass. of iacō; the fut. of videor, prōgredior, fīō; and the imperf. pass. of instruō, capiō.*

8. *Latīnē dīcite:*

wonderful to-relate.

the general intends-to-attack the town to-morrow.

they follow-up (*consecutō. 1.*) the retreating cavalry.

he complies (*veniam dare. 1.*) with their request,
(say 'to them asking' (*petō. 3.*).

with-swords drawn (*perf. part. pass. of dē-stringō. 3.*
-strinxī, -strictum).

with-eyes strained (*perf. part. pass. of in-tendō. 3.*
-tendī, -tentum).

with-strength renewed (*perf. part. pass. of redintegrō.*
1. -āvī, -ātum).

9. *Make up a sentence in which videor is used as the passive of videō, and another in which it is a Deponent verb.*10. *Anglicē dīcite:*

fiēbam.	proficisci-mi-nī.	dēfendēmus.
locūta.	interfici-entur.	dēfendēmūr.
adortum (<i>supine</i>).	prohibe-ōr.	terrēris-ne?
secūtūrī suimus.	commōtus.	ratiō atque ūsus
lacrimans.	virī despēranti-s.	belī,
convocabūn-tur.	tempestās co- oriēbātur.	conscrībēn-tur.
	multum in vēnatiōnibus esse.	
	comitibus labōrantibus spiccurrēmus.	

11. *Latīne reddite:*

1. Sabīnus, having-been-ordered to throw-away his arms, does what-is-ordered (*imperātum*, n.).
2. Meanwhile they discuss-terms (*dē condiciōnibus inter sē agere*. 3.).
3. A long speech is designedly begun (*instituō*. 3.) by Ambiorix (-*igis*).
4. Sabīnus, having been gradually surrounded, is killed.
5. Then L. Cotta fighting bravely is killed with most (*maxima pars, rtis*) of the soldiers.
6. The remainder retreat to the camp.
7. Of them (*say 'whom'*) the standard-bearer, having-been-surrounded by a multitude of enemies, throws the standard (*aquila, ae, f.*) within the stockade, (and) himself is killed fighting bravely (*superl.*) in-front-of the camp.
8. A few having-escaped (*perf. part. of lābor.* 3. *lapsus*) from the battle reach (their) winter-quarters, and inform T. Labiēnus, the brigadier, of what-has-happened (*rēs gestue, f. pl.*).

LESSON 11.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE—(Continued).

Perfect Tenses of Verbs (Passive and Deponent).

The Perfect Participle is used with tenses of the verb *sum* to form the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect tenses of Passive and Deponent verbs.

Thus the perf. tense of **vulneror** (I am wounded) is as follows:—

vulnerātus, a, (um)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum, I have been, or I was} \\ \text{es, thou hast been, or thou} \\ \quad \text{wast} \\ \text{est, he, she, (it) has been, or} \\ \quad \text{was} \end{array} \right\} \text{wounded.}$
vulnerātī, ae, (a)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus, we have been, or were} \\ \text{estis, you have been, or were} \\ \text{sunt, they have been, or were} \end{array} \right\}$

Form perfect tenses with the following words, and repeat orally with the meaning of each person:—

visus, a, um, seen.

interfектus, a. ~~unus~~ killed.

iussus, a, um, ordered.

auditus. a. um. heard.

locūtus, a, um. spoken

ēgressus, a. um, gone out

(dep.).

(dep.).

factus. a. **um**, made (perf. part. of **fiō** *v.* Less. 5).

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

missus, a, (um)	erō, I shall have been	sent.
	eris, thou wilt have been	
	erit, he, she, (it) will have been	
missi, ae, (a)	erimus, we shall have been	
	eritis, you will have been	
	erunt, they will have been	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fugātus, a, (um)	eram, I had been	put to flight.
	erās, thou hadst been	
	erat, he, she, (it) had been	
fugātī, ae, (a)	erāmus, we had been	
	erātis, you had been	
	erant, they had been	

1. hostēs ab nostris vīsī sunt (*videō*).
2. litterac ā duce missae erant (*mittō*).
3. lēgātus oppidum mūnīre iussus erat (*iubeō*).
4. noctū ex nōbīs plērīque vulnerātī erimus.
5. urbs obsessa est (*obsideō*).
6. castra iam mūnīta erant.
7. ancorae dē nāvibus iactae sunt (*iaciō*).
8. num vōs, mīlitēs, hostium clāmōribus territī erātis (*terreō*)?
9. bārbarōrum cōpiae iam fugātæ erunt.
10. agmen iūmentīs impedītum est (*impeditio*).
11. castra sub colle posita erant (*pōnō*).
12. tēla ē locō superiōre in nostrōs coniecta sunt (*cōniciō*). •

LECTIŌ.

Rōmānī in summō periculō versantur.

Iamque amplius hōris sex continenter *pugnābātur*, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrīs dēficiēbant, atque hostēs ācrius instābant, *rēs-que erat* iam ad *extrēmum perducta cāsum*, cum P. Sextius Baculus, quem *Nervicō proelio* complūribus confectum vulnēribus *diximus*, et item C. Volusēnus, vir et consiliī magnī et virtūtis ad ducem accurrrunt atque unam spēm salūtis in ēruptiōne *consistere dēmonstrant*. Itaque centuriōnēs celeriter convocāti *militēs* hīs verbīs certiōrēs facere iussi sunt—‘paulisper intermittite proelium, ac *tantummodo* tēla missa excipite, vosque ex labōre reficite, post datō signō ex castris ērumpite, atque omnem spēm salūtis in virtūte pōnite!’

pugnābātur, the battle had lasted, *lit.* ‘it was being fought’ (*v. Less. 25*).

rēs erat ad extrēmum . . . cāsum, matters had reached a crisis, *lit.* ‘the matter had been brought to the last emergency.’

Nervicum proelium, the battle with the Nervi.

diximus, we have mentioned (*dicō. 3. dixī, dictum*).

consistere dēmonstrant, show to consist (*v. p. 88*).

militēs, acc. case.

tantummodo, merely.

Perfect Participle and Verb = Two Verbs.

The perf. part. is often used with a verb where in English we use **two verbs**.

This is because Latin prefers Subordinate (*or* Dependent) sentences to Co-ordinate (*or* Principal) sentences, and has generally only one Principal verb in a sentence.

Thus 'he took and burnt the city' is expressed in Latin—

urbem captam incendit

*i.e. 'he burnt the captured city, *or* the city having-been-captured.'*

Similarly :—

nostrī hostēs **perterritōs** in fugam cōniciunt.

our men terrify the enemy and put them to flight.
(lit. 'put to flight the terrified enemy.')

postquam Belgārum cōpiās **coactās** ad sē **venīre**¹ vīdit.¹

when he saw the forces of the Belgae collected and coming to him.

(lit. 'the forces of the Belgae having-been-collected coming.')

hostēs cōpiās ex castrīs **ēductās** instruxerant.

the enemy had led-out their forces from camp and drawn them up.

(lit. 'had drawn up their forces having-been-led-out.')

¹ *lit. 'saw to come': v. p. 88.*

Anglicē transferte:

1. quī prīmī flūmen transierant ab equitiōbjs circumdatī interficiuntur.
2. dux ipse equō dēiectus fortissimē, quoad potuit, restitit.
3. hostēs Commītū ē nāvī ēgressum comprehēdērunt.
4. Gallī interdum uxōrēs ignī tormentis-que excruciatās interficiēbant.
5. hostēs in fugam coniectī silvās petiērunt.
6. Britannōrum manūs, multitudine nāvium perterritae, ā lītore discesserant.
7. ea legiō ūna ex tribus erat, quās proximē conscriptās Caesar ex Ītaliā trāduxerat.
8. nuntiī ad Caesarem mittēbantur, quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur.

LESSON 12.

FREQUENTATIVE AND INCEPTIVE VERBS.

Frequentative verbs are those which express repeated *or* intenser action. Thus from

veniō. 4., I come, is formed **ventit-ō.** 1. -āvī, I come often, keep coming.

terreō. 2., I frighten, is formed **territ-ō.** 1. -āvī, I keep frightening.

occulō. 3., I cover, is formed **occult-ō.** 1. -āvī, I hide, secrete.

concurrō. 3., I run-together, is formed **concurs-ō.** 1. -āvī, I rush about, hither and thither.

All Frequentative verbs are of the First Conj.

Inceptive (or Inchoative) verbs are those which express the beginning of an action. Thus:

mātūrō. 1., I ripen ; **mātūrescō.** 3., I begin to ripen.

inveterō. I make old ; **inveterascō.** 3., I grow old, become established.

Inceptive verbs end in **-sco** ; are of the Third Conj. ; and Intrānsitive.

1. Dumnorix saepe clāmitans interficitur.

2. omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō consultābant.

3. Titūrius trepidāre et concursāre incipit.

4. mercātōrēs ad Suēvōs multum ventitāre solēbant.
5. Cassivellaunus locīs impeditis sēsē occultābat.
6. iam in agrīs frūmentum mātūrescere incipiēbat.
7. tempore inveterasunt consuētūdinēs.
8. vīnō relanguescunt animī.
9. Belgae exercitum Rōmānum in Galliā inveterascere nōjuērunt.
10. noctū hostēs in silvīs dēlituerant (*dēlitescō*. 3).

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quid faciens Dumnorix occīditur?
2. quā parte ānnī mātūrescunt frūmenta?
3. ubi Cassivellaunus sēsē occultat?
4. quī ad Suēvōs ventitābant?
5. quōmodo inveterasunt mōrēs?
6. nonne vīnō relanguescit animus?
7. ubi hostēs dēlitescunt?
8. nonne fābulae liberōrum mentēs saepe territant?

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. vīnō remolles—— hominēs.
2. aestāt—— frūmenta mātūresc—— sol—— (*pres.*).
3. mīlītēs aegrī in castrīs relict—— mox convalesc—— (*fut.*).
4. pars hominum in castr—— ventitā——, pars in agrīs remanēbat.
5. Ambjorigis cōpī—— in insidiīs sēsē occultāv—— (*pluperf.*).
6. Caesar, postquam ad sē princip—— cīvitātis ēvocāvit, aliōs territ—— (*pres.*), aliōs cohortāt—— (*pres.*).

LECTIō.

Britannia.

*Caesār quintō suō dē bellō Gallicō librō dē Britanniā sīc scribit—‘insula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad (*in*) Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quingenta. Alterum (latus) vergit ad Hispāniā atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia dīmīdiō minor, *ut existimātur*, quam Britanniā, sed parī spatiō transmissus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniā. *In hōc mediō cursū* est insula quae appellātur *Mona*. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut *fert* Britannōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīlium. Tertium (latus) est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nulla est obiecta terra; sed ēius lateris angulus maximē ad Germāniā spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū vīcīēs centum mīlium passuum.

ut existimātur, as it is thought.

transmissus, ūs, m., a crossing; translate ‘the crossing (from Ireland to Britain) is the same distance as that from Gaul to Britain.’

in hōc mediō cursū, in the middle of this voyage.

Mona, the Isle of Man.

fert, asserts.

Explain the abl. *dīmīdiō*. How far is Caesar’s geography in the above account accurate?

The verb consuescō.

consuescō, *I accustom myself*, is principally used in the Perfect tenses with a Present meaning.

Thus **consuēvī**, 'I have accustomed myself, *i.e.* 'I am accustomed' (*cf. cognōvī*, perf. of *cognoscō*).

In the tenses of the Perfect Stem a syncopated (*short*) form is used :

consuestī *for* consuēvistī.

consuestis „ consuēvistis.

consuērunt „ consuēvērunt.

consuērō „ consuēverō.

consuēram „ consuēveram.

perf. infin. consuesse „ consuēvisse.

consuescō (like *solecō*) takes the Infin. mood.

1. victōrēs victīs stipendium impōnere consuērunt.
2. lūna plēna aestūs maximōs efficere consuēvit.
3. Britannī essedāriīs atque equitātū in proeliīs ūtī consuērunt.
4. dux nāvēs paulō facit humiliōres quam quibus (*those which*) ūtī consuēvimus.
5. Cōrus ventus in Morinōrum finibus magnam partem omnis temporis flāre consuēvit.
6. Gallī liberōs suōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt (*adolescō*. 3.), ad sē palam adire nōn patiuntur.

LESSON 13.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The construction known as the 'Ablative Absolute' is one of the commonest in Latin.

A phrase is said to be 'absolute' when it is not affected by the construction of the remainder of its sentence, or when the sentence is complete without it.

Most languages have an 'absolute' case.

In *English* the nominative is the 'absolute' case.

e.g. *He being present, I felt safe.*

The weather being fine, we started early.

In *French*, too, the nominative¹ is the 'absolute' case.

e.g. *Le général étant arrivé, la revue commença.*

the general having arrived, the review began.

In *Greek* the genitive is the 'absolute' case.

In Latin the ablative is the 'absolute' case, and the abl. absol. construction has many shades of meaning, expressive of **time**, **cause**, **manner**, **accompaniment**, *etc.*, which will best be understood from the examples overleaf.

¹ Or perhaps the accusative.

Temporal (Time)

diē constitūtā.

when a day had been appointed (on the appointed day).

omnibus rēbus comparātīs.

when everthing had been made ready (everything having been made ready).

quiētā Galliā.

when Gaul was quiet (Gaul being quiet).

M. Messallā et M. Pīsōne consulibus.

when Marcus Messalla and Marcus Pīsō were consuls (in the consulship of M. Messalla, etc.).

N.B.—There is no verb in the last two examples. Why not? v. p. 23, note (4).

Causal (Cause, Reason):

tot dētrimentīs acceptīs.

because so many losses had been experienced.

sinistrā impeditā.

as their left hands were encumbered.

languidiōribus nostrīs.

as our-men were more weary.

Manner:

destrictis ensibus, *with drawn swords.*

equō admissō, *at full-speed (with horse let-go).*

iactīs ancorīs, *lying at anchor (with anchors dropped).*

Accompaniment:

sē praeſente, in his presence.

•eō•dēprecātōre, with him as intercessor.

petentibus Rēmīs, at the request of the Rēmī (the Rēmī requesting).

Conditional (*if*):

data facultātē, if an opportunity were given.

interceptā epistulā, if the letter were intercepted.

Sēquanīs invitīs, if the Sēquani were unwilling.

It will be seen from the above examples that the ablative absolute construction consists of a noun or pronoun with another word in agreement.

This word is usually either (1) a participle (perf. part. pass. very common); or (2) an adjective; or (3) another noun.

Note also in how many different ways it is possible to translate the abl. absol. according to context:

e.g. quō factō, after this (lit. 'which having-been-done').

fōrentissimīs rēbus, in a time of prosperity (lit. 'matters (being) very flourishing').

rēbus•despēratis, in despair (lit. 'matters having-been-despaired-of').

despērātā salūte, despairing of safety.

eā rē impetrātā, permission being given (lit. 'this thing having-been-obtained by request').

*Verbo*¹ reddite:

1. corn having-been-collected (*comparō*. 1.).
2. a shelter (*testūdō, inis*, f.) having-been-made:
3. our ranks having-been-thrown-into-confusion.
4. when all Gaul had been pacified (*say 'all Gaul having been pacified,' pācō*. 1.).
5. at the beginning of summer (*say 'summer having been-entered-upon,' in-eō, -īre, -iī, -iūm*).
6. when he had found-out this (*say 'these matters having-been-found-out,' cog-noscō. 3. -nōvī, -nitum*).
7. as this matter had been settled (*say 'this matter having - been - settled,' con-stituō. 3. -stituī, -stitūtum*).
8. having accomplished a long march (*say 'a long march having-been-accomplished,' con-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum*).
9. when the mountain had been taken (*say 'the mountain having-been-taken'*) and our-men were coming-up (*pres. part. of succēdō. 3.*).
10. when mantlets had been brought-up (*ago. 3. ēgī, actum*) to the walls, an outwork thrown-up (*iaciō. 3.*) and towers built (*con-stituō 3.*) (*say 'mantlets having-been etc., an outwork having-been. etc., towers having-been, etc.'*).

Anglicē reddite:

1. Caesar prīmum (equum) suum, deinde omnium equōs ex conspectū remōvit.

¹ Verbally, orally.

2. sīc omnīum perīculū aequāvit, et spēm fugae sustulit (*tollō*. 3.).
3. tum cohortātus suōs proelium commīsīt.
4. mīlītēs ē locō superiōre pīlā mīsērunt, et facile hostiū phalangēm perfrēgērunt.
5. postquam eam (*i.e.* phalangēm) disiēcērunt (*dis-iciō*. 3.), gladiōs destrīnxērunt, et in hostēs impētūm fēcērunt.

Observe how Caesar combines the above sentences by means of ablatives absolute.

‘Caesar pīmūm *suō*, deinde omnīum *equīs* ex conspectū *remōtīs*, omnīumque *perīculō* sīc *aequātō*, et *spē* fugae *sublātā*, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsīt. Mīlītēs ē locō superiōre *pīlīs missīs* facile . . . perfrēgērunt. *Eā disiectā gladiīs destrictīs* in hostēs . . . fēcērunt.’

How many *Principal* verbs are there in the above? Which are they?

Translate in more than one way:

1. oppidīs vīcīs-que exustīs (*er-ūrō*. 3.).
2. paucīs mūrūm dēfēndēntibūs.
3. oculīs intentīs.
4. trāditīs (*trādō*. 3.) armīs.

LESSON 14.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—(Continued.)

LECTIō.

Caesar cum Britannis bellum gerit.

Equitēs hostium essedārii—que āriter proeliō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere *conflixērunt*. Nostrī tamen omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt, atque eōs in silvās collēs—que *compulērunt*.

Hostium **complūribus** **interfectī**¹ nostrī cupidius insecuri nonnullōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At *illī*, **intermissō** **spatiō**, **imprūdentibus** **nostrīs** atque **occupātīs** in mūnitionē castrōrum, subitō sē ex castrīs ēīēcērunt. **Impetū** **factō**, **nostrīs**—que novō genere pugnae **perterritīs**, per mediōs audācissimē *perrūpērunt*.

Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militū, interficitur. Illī **plūribus** **submissīs** **cohortibus** repelluntur.

conflixērunt, 3rd pers. plur. perf. of *configō*. 3.

compulērunt, „ „ „ **compeñlō**, 3.

illī, *i.e.* hostēs as opposed to nostrī.

perrūpērunt, the subject is *illī* (understood from the previous sentence).

¹ Ablatives absolute are printed in black type.

Vīvā Vōce!

1. inter quōs haec pugna facta est? 2. quī victōrēs fuērunt? 3. ex nostrīs quot periērunt? 4. quamobrem nostrī imprūdentēs erant? 5. quā in rē occupāti sunt? 6. unde hostēs sēsē ēiciunt? 7. cūr nostrī tum perterritī sunt? 8. quī tribūnus interficitur? 9. quōmodo dēnique hostēs repelluntur?

Verbō transferte:

1. bellō Helvētiorum con- fectō.	9. L. Domitiō Ap. Clau- diō consulibus.
2. eā rē permīssā.	10. quībus rēbus perfectīs.
3. Marcō Crassō consule.	11. occupātō oppidō.
4. timentib⁹ nostrīs.	12. insciente Caesare.
5. sē invītō.	13. conciliō dīmissō.
6. clāmōre sublātō.	14. mē duce.
7. hāc orātione ab Divit- iacō habitā.	15. eīs hortantibus.
8. rē dēlīberātā.	16. brevī spatio inter- iectō.

In the following exercise where words are printed in *italic* type, the ablative absolute construction is to be used.

Latīnē reddite:

The Britons, *having learnt the Romans' plan and having sent forward cavalry and charioteers*, followed-up with the rest of their forces.

This method (*genus, eris, n.*) of fighting they are-accustomed to-use (*utī*) in battle (*pl.*).

Our-men were hampered by this (fact), namely—that (*quod*) the ships owing-to their size could not be-formed (*constitūi*) except in deep-water (*altum, ī, n.*).

Also they were fighting in-places unknown (to them), *with-their hands hindered*, and *weighed-down* by the heavy burden of their armour.

The enemy on-the-other-hand either from the dry-land (*āridum, ī, n.*) or having-advanced a-little into the water, *with-all their limbs unencumbered*, *in-places quite-familiar* (*superl. of nōtus, a, um*) boldly hurled their weapons.

Accordingly our-men did not display (*say 'use'*) the same keenness and zeal as (*say 'which'*) they were accustomed to display in foot skirmishes.

In the following exercise words in black type are to be put in the ablative absolute.

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. Eōdem ferē temp— P. Crassus in Sontiātēs¹ proficiscit—.
2. Bellum in e— locīs gestūrus erat ubi pauc— ante ann— (*abl. of Time*) L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercit— puls— interfectus erat, atque unde L. Mallius prōconsul impediment— āmiss— prōfūg— (*pluperf.*).
3. Itaque ī— frūmentāri— prōvīs—, auxili— equitātū-que compar—, in Aquītāniā conten—.

¹ The Sontiātēs were a people of Aquītānia.

4. Cūius **advent**— **cognit**—, **hostēs**, **magnīs cōpi**—
coact—, in itin— agmen nostr— adortī sunt.

5. Prīnum proeli— equestr— committēbant, sed
equitāt— **puls**— atque **insequent**— (pres.
part. of *insequor*) **nostrīs** subitō pedestr—
cōpiās, qu— in insidiīs collocāv— (pluperf.)
ostendērunt.

6. Hī nostrōs disiect— adortī proclium renovāvērunt.

Parse gestūrus in sent. 2.

LESSON 15.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Substantival Form.	Adjectival Form.
aliquis. m. and f., somebody	{ aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,
aliquid. n., something	some
quis. m. and f., somebody	{ same as substantival, but
quid. n., something	very rare, some
quidam. m., quaedam. f., a certain one	{ quīdam, quaedam, quod-
quiddam. n., a certain thing	dam, a certain
quisquam. m. and f., any one.	
quicquam (quidquam). n.	{ same as substantival, any anything

For the declension of the above, see Grammar at end of Book. Generally speaking they are declined like **quis** or **qui**.

Of them **quis** is the *least*, **quidam** the *most* definite.

aliquis is as a rule only used in *affirmative* expressions.

quis is generally found after **sī**, **nisi** (*unless*), **num?** **nē** (*lest, that . . . not, v.* Less. 38 and 41).

quisquam is used in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences.

nēmō, no one, is used in the sing. only and is declined thus:—Nom. **nēmō**, Acc. **nēminem**, Gen. **nullius**, Dat. **nullī** or **nēminī**, Abl. **nullō**, **ā**, **ō**.

1. Caesar aliquem ē lēgātīs suīs mittit.
2. aliquid novī consili (something of a new plan, i.e. some new plan) ā barbarīs initum est (in-eō).
3. sī quid gravius acciderit, nōs recipere cōgēmur.
4. num quis Cicerōne fācundior erat?
5. Suēvī nihil vestītūs (nothing of clothing, i.e. no clothing) praeter pellēshabent.
6. loca, pōrtūs, aditūs Britanniae—haec omnia Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs (i.e. mercātōribus) quicquam praeter orām maritimā nōtum est.
7. idōneum quemdam hominem dēlēgērunt.
8. quōsdam dē hostium exercitū habēmus captīvōs.
9. refractīs portīs (abl. absol.) nēmō oppidum diūtius dēfendēbat.
10. nēmō mēcum sine perniciē suā contendet (will strive).

Latīnē reddite:

1. The scouts caught-sight-of some squadrons of the enemy's cavalry.
2. A certain Q. Iūnius from Spain was sent to-discuss (*supīne of agō*. 3. *dē*) terms.
3. Why do you expect any-help (*say 'anything of help'*) from us? *
4. If any one having-received-a-severe-wound (abl. . *absol.*) fell (*pluperf.*) from his horse, his comrades surrounded (*imperf.*) him.

5. Although (*etsī*) no one follows (*fut.*) me, yet I will-go (*fut. part. with esse*) with one legion only.
6. Caesar will persuade a certain soldier to-take (*ut dēferat*) a letter to Cicerō.

The 'double alius' construction.

alius followed directly by another **alius** is used as follows:—

alius aliam causam inferēbat.

one man alleged one reason, another another (i.e. *various reasons were alleged, or different men alleged different reasons*).

aliae alia in parte legionēs resistunt.

some legions stand their ground in one part (of the field), some in another.

alius aliī subsidium ferunt.

one man succours one, another another (i.e. *all are helping each other*).

Verbō transferte:

1. in senibus aliquid bonī consili plērumque in-est.
2. quīdam ē tribūnī occīsus erat.
3. aliquid calamitatis acceptum est.
4. num quis vestrum locūtus est ?
5. nēmō resistēbat.
6. aliūs aliā ex nāvī ēgrediēbantur.
7. nihil privātī agrī apud Suēvōs erat.
8. aliī aliam in partem perterritī fūgērunt.
9. iamque nōn multum aestatis super-erat.

LESSON 16.

INDEFINITE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite pronoun **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque** (**quicque**), *each*, *every*, *everybody*, is declined as follows:—

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quisque	quaeque	quodque (<i>adj.</i>)
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quicque (<i>subst.</i>)
Gen.		cūiusque (<i>all genders</i>)	
Dat.		cuique (<i>all genders</i>)	
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque

The plural is like that of **quis** with the suffix *-que* added.

quisque is most commonly used in close connection with (1) the possessive adj. *suum*, *a*, *um*, and (2) the reflexive pronoun.

N.B. **suus** and **sibi** generally stand next to **quisque**.

e.g. **sua quisque** miles circumspiciēbat.

each soldier was looking over his belongings.

testēs stuae quisque virtūtis habuit.

every man had a witness of his own bravery.

Helvētiī cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

the Helvētiī order each man to take from home a food supply for himself.

¶ latrōcinia, quae extrā fīnēs cūiusque cīvitatis fīunt,
 nullam apud Germānōs habent infāmiam.
robberies, which are committed outside the boundaries of each state, are accounted no disgrace amongst the Germans.

quisque with the superlative is used in universal statements:—

e.g. **doctissimus¹ quisque**, each (most) learned man,
i.e. all the (most) learned men.

antiquissimum quodque tempus, all the (most) ancient times.

sapientissimī cūiusque opera, the works of all the wise(st) men.

Note the phrases:

prō sē quisque, each for himself.

decimus quisque, every tenth man.

e.g. vix decimus quisque miles sine vulnere relinquitur.

Relative.

The Relative **quīcumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, whoever, every one who, is declined like **qui** with the addition of the suffix *-cumque*.

e.g. **omnibus, quīcumque** bellum inferunt, resistimus.

we resist whoever wage war on us.

ite quascumque in partēs vultis!

go wherever (into whatever directions) you wish!

¹ *N.B.*—The superlative always stands first.

Quod dē- est suppeditāte :

1. nostrī omni—, quaecumque hostēs in castrīs
• reliqu— (pluperf.), potiuntur.
2. domum su— quisque revertī (pres. infin. of
revertor. 3.) coepit.
3. Caesar hostēs, quibuscumque rēb— poterat,
coerc— statuit.
4. summūm honōr— locum s— quisque petit.
5. quaecumque ad oppugnatiō— opus sunt, noctū
compar— (pres. pass.).
6. dux obsidēs nōbilissimī cūius— poscit.

LECTIO.

Gallī aggerem Rōmānum incendunt.

Rōmānī, quī Avāricum, Gallōrum oppidum, obsidēbant, singulārī incolārum sollertiā atque virtūte iamdiū tardābantur. Tandem nostrī continentī labōre diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx altum pedēs lxxx exstruxērunt. Iamque *is* hostium mūruin paene contingēbat, et Caesar consuētūdine suā ad opus *excubābat*, cum paulō ante tertiam vigiliam hostēs *cunīculō* aggerem succendunt.

Eōdem tempore tōtō mūrō *clāmōre sublātō* ab utrōque latere ~~tūrīum~~ ēruptiō fiēbat. Aliī facēs atque āridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquās-que rēs, quibus ignis excitātur, fundēbant. Nostrī prīmō perturbatī *trepidāre et concursāre*, post paulum, quia duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs

excubabant *plūrēs*-que erant in opere, aliī ēruptiōnibus resistere aliī aggerem *interscindere* coepērunt.

is, *i.e.* agger.

trepidāre et concursāre, *sc.*

excubō. 1., I keep watch.

coepērunt.

cuniculus, **ī**, **m.**, a mine (*milit.*).

plūrēs, many, several.

clāmōre sublāto, what constr.?

interscindere, to break

down, cut gaps in.

Vivā Vōce:

1. quod oppidum ā nostrīs obsidēbatur?
2. quibus rēbus nostrī tardābantur?
3. ubi Caesar excubābat?
4. quotā hōrā et quōmodo hostēs aggerem succendunt?
5. nonne facibus et pice excitātur ignis?
6. quot legiōnēs prō castrīs excubabant?
7. quārē nostri pīmō perturbātī sunt?

LESSON 17.

THE GERUND.

The Gerund is a verbal noun (neuter) ending in **-ndum**, and corresponds to English verbal nouns ending in **-ing**.

It governs the same case as the verb from which it comes.

Thus:

orandum (*örō*. 1.), asking.

loquendum (*loquor*. 3.), speaking.

mittendum (*mittō*. 3.), sending.

capiendum (*capiō*. 3.), taking.

The Gerund is formed from the Present Stem of verbs by adding **-ndum**. Verbs of the 4th and 'Mixed' conjugations affix **e** to the Present Stem before adding this ending.

Thus:

Verb.	Verb Stem.	Gerund.
pugnō. 1.	pugnā-	pugna-ndum
moneō. 2.	monē-	mone-ndum
sequor. 3.	seque-	sequēndum
faciō. 3. ('Mixed')	faci-	faci-e-ndum
orior. 4.	orī-	ori-e-ndum

Declension of the Gerund.

The nominative of the Gerund, except in the meaning of necessity (*see below*) is supplied by the Present Infinitive;

e.g. currere iūcundum est, running is pleasant.

The oblique (*other than nominative*) cases of the Gerund are verbal nouns, as shown in the following table:—

Acc. **ad loquendū** aptus, *clever at speaking.*

Gen. **loquendī** facultas, *an opportunity of speaking.*

Dat. **loquendō** student, *they apply themselves to speaking.*

Abl. **loquendō** impetrant, *they gain their request by speaking.*

Uses of the Gerund.

The nominative of the Gerund has the meaning of *necessity*, and in Classical Latin is confined to Intransitive verbs.¹ The Agent is put in the *dative* case.

e.g. nostrīs mīlitibūs (dat.) et dē nāvibūs dēsiliendū, et in fluctibūs cōsistendū, et cum hostibūs pugnandū erat.

our soldiers had to jump down from the ships, and stand in the breakers, and fight the enemy (lit. ‘there was jumping down and standing and fighting for our soldiers’).

¹ Or Transitive verbs used absolutely, *e.g. timeō, exspectō, v. Less. 25.*

THE OBLIQUE CASES OF THE GERUND.

(1) *The Gerund depending on Nouns:*

- mittendī causa, *the reason of sending.*
- ōrandī finis, *an end of beseeching.*
- praedandī spēs, *hope of getting booty.*
- pugnandī tempus, *fighting time.*

(2) *The Gerund depending on Adjectives:*

- bēllandī cupidus, *fond of war.*
- nāvigandī insuētus, *unused to sailing.*

(3) *The Gerund governed by a Preposition:*

ad:

- ad pugnandum alacer, *eager to fight.*
- animus ad dīnicandū parātus, *spirits ready for battle.*

in:

- militēs in metendō occupātū, *soldiers busy reaping.*
- in quaerendō reperiēbat, *in (the course of his) search, he found out.*

(4) *Gerund after causā:*

militēs cohortandī causā profectus est, *he set out for the sake of exhorting the soldiers.*

praedandī, pābulandī causā, *for the sake of getting booty, forage.*

• *Gerundial phrases are printed in black type.*

- ad celeritātem onerandī nāvēs paulō humiliōrēs factae sunt.
- nulla nostrīs facultās aut nāvēs administrand aut auxiliandī dabātur.

3. nox **finem oppugnandī fēcit.**
4. hāc ūratiōne multō māius **studium pugnandī**
exercitū iniectum est.
5. dux **loquendī finem** facit.
6. ille locus nēquāquam **ad ēgrediendum idōneus**
erat.
7. Suēvis longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō **incolendī**
causā nōn licuit (*licet. 2.*).
8. eī, quī **frūmentandī causā** trans Mosam ierant,
nondum red-iерant.

Latīnē reddite :

1. Galba was ordered to leave a legion to-winter (*causā with gen. of gerund*) in those parts.
2. A large part of the cavalry had been sent across the Mosa some days (*abl.*) before to-get (*causā*) booty (*gerund of praedor. 1.*) and forage (*gerund of frūmentor. 1.*).
3. Our cavalry drove the enemy headlong, and gave them no chance (*say 'nor gave them chance'*) either of standing-their-ground (*consistō. 3.*) or of jumping from their chariots.
4. Next-day according-to his custom Caesar drew-up his army (*aciēs, ēt, f.*), and gave the enemy a chance of fighting. “
5. The t̄me was unsuitable for (*ad*) harassing the enemy, and engaging-battle.
6. Caesar discovered the causes of the conspiracy (*gerund of coniūrō. 1.*). “

7. When-the-camp-had-been-fortified (*abl. absol.*) the general began to bring-up (*agō*. 3.) mantlets, and to collect what (*say 'those-things which'*) was useful (*ūsuī*) for (*ad*) a siege (*gerund of oppugnō*. 1.).
8. The enemy by their hesitation and appearance (*opīniō*, *ōnis*, f.) of fear made our soldiers more-ready (*alacer*, *cris*, *cre*) for the fray.
9. Ropes, anchors, and the rest-of their tackle (*armāmenta*, *ōrum*, n. pl.) having been lost (*abl. absol.*) the ships were useless for (*ad*) sailing.
10. As no interval (*spatium*, *tū*, n.) was given (*abl. absol.*) for (*say 'of'*) taking arms the Germans were thrown into great confusion.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē :

1. pugnand- causā restitit nē—.
2. dux explorāt— speculand— causā praemīs—.
3. spatium pīla in hostēs cōnici— nōn dabātur.
4. eques quīd— Rōmānus colloquendī — mittitur.
5. dat— sign— (*abl. absol.*) et sublāt— ancor— (*abl. absol.*) tertiā ferē vig— nāvēs solvit.
6. cālōnēs praed— causā ēgress— sunt.
7. nōbīs potestātem lēgāt— intend— date !
8. Caesār pābula— causā trēs legiōn— cum Cāiō Trebōniō lēgāt— mīs— (*pluperf.*)•

For the Gerund used after such verbs as *existimō*, *arbitror*, *statuō*, etc., *vide* Less. 25.

LESSON 18.

THE GERUNDIVE.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and is formed, like the Gerund, from the Present Stem of verbs by adding **-ndus, a, um, etc.**

Only Transitive verbs have a Gerundive (*v. Note p. 75*).

In all its uses the Gerundive is Passive, as opposed to the Gerund, which is Active.

Nominative of the Gerundive expressing Necessity.

The meaning of the Gerundive in the nominative case is *Necessity* or *Obligation* (*cf. nom. of the gerund*).

e.g. ille vir laudandus est.

*that man is praiseworthy, or deserving of praise,
or to be praised.*

illa silva vitanda est.

that forest is (ought) to be avoided.

haec carmina legenda sunt.

these poems are worth reading (to be read).

The Agent is put in the *dative case* (*cf. gerund*).

e.g. nōbīs hōc flūmen transeundum est.

we have to cross this river (lit. 'this river is for us to-be-crossed').

Caesari omnia erant agenda.

Caesar had to do everything (lit. ‘*everything was for Caesar to-be-done*’).

When to use the Gerundive in preference to the Gerund.

Instead of the oblique cases of the Gerund, with an object in the acc. case, the Gerundive is usually substituted with the same meaning as the Gerund would have had. The object is put in the case in which the Gerund would have been, and the Gerundive, being an adjective, agrees with the object in gender, number, and case.

Gerundive.

Gerund.

ad eās rēs conficiendās.

for completing those things (lit. *(not found in Classical Latin)*).

‘*for those things to be completed*’).

in consiliis capiendīs.

in forming plans.

dē recipērandā libertātē.

about recovering liberty.

pācis petendae causā.

to sue for peace.

testūdō mīlitib⁹ tegendīs.

a shelter for protecting soldiers. (not found in Classical Latin).

ad eās rēs conficiendum.

(not found in Classical Latin).

in consilia capiendō.

(very rare in Classical Latin).

dē recipērandō libertātem.

(very rare in Classical Latin).

pācem petendī causā.

testūdō mīlitēs tegendō.

LECTIÖ.

Quae duci agenda sunt.

Caesarī **omnia** ūnō tempore erant **agenda**¹: **vexillum**, quod erat insigne, **prōpōnendum** (erat); **signum** tubā **dandum** (erat); **militēs** ab opere **revocandī** (erant); **ei**, quī paulō longius **aggeris** **petendī** **causā** prōcesserant, **arcessendī** erant; **aciēs** **instruenda** (erat); **militēs** **cohortandī** (erant).

Tum necessāriis rēbus imperātīs ad **cohortandōs** **militēs** dēcucurrit. Eōs nōn longā orātiōne cohortātus proelī **committendī** **signum** dedit. Nōn modo ad **insignia** **accommōdanda** sed etiam ad **galeās** **induendās** scūtīs-que **tegimenta** **dētrūdenda** tempus dē-erat.

vexillum prōpōnere, to raise the flag (displayed on the general's tent as a signal for battle).

insignia, the ornaments or badges of distinction (worn probably on the helmet).

tegimenta dētrūdere, to remove the covers.

Latīnē vertenda:

1. Sabīnus by-night secretly sets-out for-the-sake-of bringing help to Caesar.
2. The general chose a spot in-front-of the camp suitable by nature for drawing-up his army (*ad with gerundive*).
3. All (kinds of) torture (*pl.*) were to-be-endured (*perfērō*. 3.) by-the Sēquani (*what case?*).
4. Caesar set-out for hither Gaul to hold (*agō*. 3.) the assizes.

¹ Gerundival phrases are printed in black type.

5. In forming plans (*in with abl. of gerundive*) the Gauls are changeable (*mōbilis, e.*).
6. While Caesar stays (*moror. 1.*) in these places to prepare (*causā with gerundive*) ships, ambassadors come to him from-all-sides.
7. No one wished to waste (*dīmittō. 3.*) fighting-time (*say 'time of fighting'*) by looking-for (*in with abl. of gerundive of quaerō. 3.*) his own standard (*pl.*).
8. The general left (behind) all the corn which he had brought-down (*dē-vehō. 3. -verī*) thither to support (*causā with gerundive*) the winter.

Verbo transferre:

1. ad dūcendum bellum.
2. in commemorandā calamitāte.
3. comineātūs petendī causā.
4. in pāce petendā.
5. mihi idem faciendum est quod tibi.
6. bellī inferendī causā.
7. parātī ad perīcula subeunda sumus.
8. in hīs administrandīs rēbus.
9. dīmissīs per agrōs nuntiīs.
10. dux sibi quemque consulere iussit.
11. occāsiō ylcliscendī Rōmānōs.
12. quibūscumque rēbus possum, officiō meō fungor.

LESSON 19.

THE GERUNDIVE (*continued*).

The Gerundive depending on Nouns:

(1) *in the genitive.*

tempus committendī proelī, time for (of) engaging battle (lit. ‘time of battle to-be-engaged’).

consilium bellī renovandī, a plan of renewing the war.

praedae faciendae facultās, a chance of getting booty.

spēs regnī obtipendī, hope of maintaining the throne.

occāsiō suī liberandī, an opportunity of freeing themselves.

(2) *in the dative:*

tempus collocandī rēbus, time for arranging matters.

diēs hibernī oppugnandī, the day for attacking the winter quarters.

Anglicē transferenda:

1. nostrī subitā ēruptiōne factā hostibus suī colligendī facultātem auferunt.
2. Caesar bellī gerendī facultātem propter anni tempus nōn habuit.
3. dux signum proelī intermittendī dedit.
4. nostrīs dēfessīs nē locī quidem relinquendī facultās erat.

¹ Not *liberandōrum*, because where the case of the noun would be gen. pl., Latin prefers the Gerund. This is perhaps due to a desire to avoid the repetition of a long termination (-ōrum), as in sent. 5 below, where *retinendī lēgātōs* would be more usual Latin.

5. ab his fit initium retinendōrum lēgātōrum.
6. occāsiō negōtī bene gerendī āmittenda nōn erat.
7. propter lātitūdinem rapiditātem-que flūminis diffi-
cultās faciendī pontis summa erat.
8. in hōc proeliō mīlitum virtūs admodum laudanda
fuit.

Gerundive with cūrō, I see-to, attend to, cause to be done.¹

Caesar pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.

Caesar causes a bridge to be built over the Arar.

Sabinus hostium manūs distinendās cūrat.

Sabinus sees to the hostile bands being kept apart.

exercitūm longīs nāvibus transportandum cūrāverat.

*He had caused the army to be transported in the
men-of-war.*

Note.—The Gerundive is properly found only of such Transitive verbs as govern an accusative case (*v. p. 70*).

Thus such instances as *spēs oppīlī potiundi*, *spēs casīrōrum potiundōrum* are exceptional, and due to the fact that *potior* occasionally governs the acc., as well as the abl. and gen.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. propter tempestāt— mīlitēs itineris faciend—
facultāt— nōn habuērunt.
2. nonne *in bellō locus virtūtis su— cuique
proband— est?
3. haec rēs ad negōtium confici— opportūnissima
erat.

¹ Cf. the use of dō with gerundive on p. 251, l. 5.

- 4. in tantō rērum discriminē summa diligentia duc—
adhibend— erat.
- 5. ad labōr— ferendum vīnō remollesc— hominēs.
- 6. nihil nōbīs temerē agen— est.
- 7. moriendum est omn—.
- 8. nostrīs sui recip— facultās dē-erat.

Latīnē reddenda:

- 1. I must think-over (*cōgitō*. 1.) this matter (*say 'this matter is to-be-thought-over by me'*).
- 2. Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue (*consector*. 1.) the fugitives (*ad with gerundive*).
- 3. Nothing ought-to-be-entrusted to those who are unstable in forming plans (*in with abl. of gerundive*).
- 4. The arrogance of Ariovistus seemed unbearable (*say 'not to be borne'*).
- 5. We must not lose an opportunity of freeing ourselves for-ever (*in perpetuum*) (*say 'an opportunity is not to-be-lost,' etc.*).
- 6. Aquitānia is to-be-reckoned (*aestimō*. 1.) as (*ex*) a third part of Gaul.
- 7. They promised a large supply of ships to transport the army (*ad with gerundive*).
- 8. In-a long (*longinquus, a, um*) siege famine is to-be-feared.

For the Gerundive used in Indirect Discourse after such verbs as *putō, intellegō, arbitror, statuō*, *vide* Less. 25.

LECTIŌ.

Germānī ā Caesare fugantur.

Militēs nostrī pristinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in Germānōrum castra irrūpērunt. *Quō locō* quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, proeliō inter carrōs impedimenta-que commissō, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt. At reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus *suīs* domō exierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs consecrandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt. Postquam ad confluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnērunt, fugā despērātā magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt.

Nostrī *ad* ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnērātīs sē in castra recipiunt.

Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdēndī potestatēm fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūs-que Gallōrum *veritī*, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre apud eum māluērunt.

Quō locō, *i.e.* in castrīs.

sui, órum. m. pl., their families.

ad ūnum, to a man.

veritī, fearing.

māluērunt, preferred (mālō, malle, māluī, *v. p. 10*).

- How many ablatives absolute are there in this passage? Name them.

Responsa verbōdanda:

1. quā rē nostrī incitātī sunt?
2. quī paulisper restitērunt?
3. quō locō hī proelium committunt?
4. cur mulierēs puerīque ūnā cum virīs proeliō interfūerant?
5. quac Germānī abiciunt?
6. quac relinquunt?
7. quam in partem fūgērunt?
8. num ex nostrīs multī vulnerātī sunt?
9. quibus Caesar discēdendī potestātem fēcit?
10. quā dē causā hanc potestātem recūsāvērunt?
11. quōrum agrōs vexāverant?
12. quid facere māluērunt?

LESSON 20.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Give Gen. Sing., Acc. Pl., Gender, and Meaning of* ***vīnca, mūnitiō, annus, rēs, genus, pellis, calamitās, vestītus, vīs, insigne, discrīmen.**
2. *Conjugate (orally or on paper) the perfect tenses of* **fiō, cōniciō, orior;**
and the pluperfect tenses of **cons̄escō, frūmentor, ēgredior.**
3. *State two ways by which Latin avoids co-ordinate sentences. If possible give instances.*
4. *Decline in the singular* **aliquis, quīdam;** *and in the plural* **quīcumque.**
5. *Transferte:*

proelium intermittere.	expeditis membrīs.
initā aestāte.	vīneās agere.
mōres malī inveter-	epistula mihi scribenda
ascunt.	est.
nihil vīni.	audācissimus quisque.
iussus est mīlitēs	alius aliud amant.
certiorēs facere.	
6. *What is meant by a Frequentative verb? Form such verbs from* **veniō, concurrō.**

Mention any Inceptive verbs you know.

7. Give the Principal Parts (infinitive, perf. tense, and supine) of ērumpō, compellō, exstruō, quaerō, dēvehō; and the Principal Parts (infinitive, and perf. part.) of the Deponent verbs praedor, proficiscor, sequor.

8. What shades of meaning has the Ablative Absolute? Give one instance of each and translate it.

9. In linguam Latīnam vertite:

- matters had reached a crisis (*Less. 11*).
- in the consulship of Messalla and Pīsō (-ōnis).
- to put all hope of safety in valour (*Less. 11*).
- he is about-to-wage war.
- I envy no-one.
- every tenth man.

10. Explain agger, testūdō, turris, vallum.

11. What meaning has the nominative of the Gerund and Gerundive? Give one instance of each.

12. When is the Gerundive in the oblique cases to be used in preference to the Gerund?

13. Parse audācissimē, cōgēmūr, quemquam, potītū eritis, cuique, frūmentātūm, ūsūrus.

14. Give the other degrees of comparison of diū, celeriter, maximus, gravis, multum, plūs, plēnus, alacrior, summus, humilis.

LESSON 21.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

We saw in Less. 23 of my First Lat. Bk. that many Latin verbs, like their English equivalents, are followed by the Infinitive mood (*Complementary Infinitive*).

Such are

possum , I am able, can.	coepī , I began.
dēbeō , I ought.	constituō , I determine.
soleō , I am accustomed.	audeō , I dare.

Thus we say both in Latin and English

dēbēmus rectē facere, we ought to do right.

potes-ne illud vidēre, are you able to (can you) see that?

Other similar verbs are

volō , I wish.	consuescō , I am accustomed
nōlō , I do not wish.	(<i>v.</i> Less. 12).
mālō , I prefer.	iubeor , I am ordered.
cōnor , I try (<i>v.</i> Less. 6).	dīcor , I am said.

Exempla verbō transferenda:

1. id quod constituī facere cōnābor.
2. dux hostēs post tergum relinquere nōlēbat.
3. Suēvī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur.
4. prīmā lūce hostēs flūmen transīre cōnātī sunt.
5. nōlīte (*imperative of nōlō*) eōs dēserere, quī vestrāe salūtis causā sūm perīculum neglexērunt!

- 7. lēgātī obsidēs Caesārī dare constituunt.
- 7. in eō locō diūtius remanēre nōn ausī sumus.
- 8. hominēs in libertāte, quamvis dūrā, permanēre quam servitūtem perferre mālunt.

Some of these verbs take an accusative with the Infinitive:

e.g. dux **fabrōs** pontem reficere iussit.

the general ordered the engineers to repair the bridge.

si **vōs** interfici nonvultis, arma pōnite!

if you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms!

Caesar **lēgātōs** discēdere vetuerat.

Caesar had forbidden the officers to depart.

All the above verbs are used as the corresponding verbs in English, but there are many others (mostly of **saying, knowing, perceiving, and the like**) followed in Latin by the accusative and infinitive, which in English take a different construction.

e.g. **eōs ad-esse** vīdit.

He saw that they were present (lit. ‘*them to be present*’).

sciō mē hōc facere posse.

I know that I can do this (lit. ‘*myself to be able to do*’).

vide Less. 22 *sqq.*

The following tables of the Infinitive mood should now be studied.

• • *Verb comparō, I get together.*

	Active.	Passive.
Pres. Infin.	comparāre , to get together.	comparārī , to be got together.
Perf. Infin.	comparā(vi)sse , to have got together.	comparātus esse , to have been got together.
Fut. Infin.	comparātūrus esse , to be about to get together.	comparātum īrī , to be about to be got together.

ACTIVE VOICE.

doceō. 2. dūcō. 3. | iaciō. 3. mūnīo. 4. loquor. 3.

Pres.	esse	docēre	dūcere	iaccere	mūnīre	(deponent)
Perf.	fuisse	docuisse	duxisse	iēcisse	mūnīvisse	
Fut.	futūrus	doctūrus	ducturus	iactūrus	mūnītūrus	

esse, or
fore

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres.		docērī	dūcī	iaci	mūnīrī	loquī
Perf.		doctus	ductus	iactus	mūnītus	locūtus
		esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
Fut.		doctum	ductum	iactum	mūnītum	locūtūrus
		īrī	īrī	īrī	īrī	esse

Formation of the Tenses of the Infinitive mood.¹

From the Present Stem are formed (a) the pres. infin. act.
 (b) the pres. infin. pass.
 (c) the pres. infin. of
 Deponent verbs.

From the Perfect Stem is formed the perf. infin. act.

From the Supine Stem are formed (a) the fut. infin. act.
 (b) the fut. infin. pass.
 (c) the perf. infin. pass.

From the Perf. Part. are formed the perf. and fut. infin.
 of Deponent verbs.

N.B.—(1) the pres. infin. of all Passive and Deponent verbs ends in **-i**.
 (2) Deponent Verbs have the Active Form of the fut. infin.
 (3) the '*esse*' of the perf. pass. and fut. act. infin. is often omitted.
 (4) the fut. infin. pass. is made up as follows:—
 the first part is the supine in **-um**, the second the pres. infin. pass. of **eō**, I go.

e.g. **militēs ēductum īrī prōnuntiāvit.**

he announced that the soldiers would be led out (lit. '*he announced that it is being gone to-lead-out² the soldiers*').

spērāvit cōpiās iam comparātum īrī.

he hoped that forces would soon be got ready.

¹ This page is intended more for reference than to be learnt by heart.

² Supine in **-um** expressing purpose after a verb of motion, *v.* Less. 8.

But this construction is not common, *futūrum ut* or *fore ut* followed by the Subjunctive being often used instead, and necessarily so in the case of verbs having no supine.

Verbō transferenda:

Supply **iubet** or **iussit** before each sentence in the following:—

1. obsidēs ad sē addūcī.
2. lēgātōs retinērī. •
3. agmen sē subsequī.
4. classem convenīre.
5. nāvēs longūs aedificārī.
6. nautās gubernātōrōs-que comparārī.
7. prīmam aciem in armīs esse.
8. fabrōs ex continentī arcessī.

Latīnē reddite:

1. He did not wish (*imperf.*) these matters to be discussed (*iactō. 1.*) in-public (*plūrībus prae-
sentībus*).
2. The Sēquani allow (*patiōr. 3.*) the Hēlvētiī to go through their territory.
3. The general forbade his-men to follow-up the fugitives (*pres. part. of fugiō. 3.*).

4. He ordered the cavalry to advance (*prōgredior*. 3.) to the harbour and to go-on-board (*nāvem con-scendō*. 3.) and to follow him.

5. He ordered two legions to be posted on the top-of the ridge (*iugum, ī, n.*), and the whole-of the mountain to be occupied (*say 'filled with men'*) and the baggage to be carried (*conferō*. 3.) to one spot.

6. Do you not, soldiers, dare to attack (*adorior*. 4.) so (*tam*) small (*exiguus, a, um*) a band ?

7. Next-day he hastens (*mālūrō*. 1) to leave (*say 'set-out from'*) the city.

8. Seeing this (*say 'which having been seen,' abl. absol.*) he ordered the natives to be dislodged (*summōvō*. 2.) with slings and arrows.

coeptus sum followed by the Passive Infinitive.

The verb 'began' followed by the pass. infin. is translated not by *coepī*, but by the passive, **coeptus sum**.

e.g. *lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt* (*not coepērunt*).
stones began to be hurled.

pons instituī coeptus est (*not coepit*).
a bridge began to be built.

Similarly māteria comportarī coepta erat.
rēs agī coeptae sunt.

Verbo reddite:

He orders:—

1. the bridge to be-pulled-down (*rescindō*. 3.).
2. the cavalry to be recalled (*revocō*. 1.).
3. the camp to be fortified with a taller stockade.
4. the gates to be blocked (*obstruō*. 3.).
5. the warships to be removed a-little from the transports (*nāvēs onerāriac*, f. *pl.*),
6. and to be rowed-on (say 'urged-on by oars').
7. the line-of-battle to be drawn-up.
8. the brigadier to set-out at the fourth watch.

LESSON 22.

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*ÖRÄTIÖ OBLIQUA*).

The following is a list of common verbs which are followed by the Infinitive mood, the **subject** of the Infinitive being put in the **accusative** case:—

videō. 2., I see.	putō. 1., I think.
intellegō. 3., I perceive.	existimō. 1., I think.
sentiō. 4., I perceive, feel.	arbitror. 1., I think.
animum advertō. 3. } I per-	dicō. 3., I say.
animadvertisō. 3. } ceive.	negō. 1., I say no, deny.
cognoscō. 3., I get to know.	respondeō. 2., I reply.
sciō. 4., I know.	nuntiō. 1.
reperiō. 4., I find out, discover.	prō-nuntiō. 1. } I announce,
inveniō. 4., I find out.	re-nuntiō. 1. } report.
dēmonstrō. 1., I point out.	crēdō. 3., I believe.
polliceor, 2., I promise. ¹	statuō. 3., I determine.
certiōr-em (-ēs) faciō. 3., I inform.	
certior fiō, I am informed.	

The above list should be committed to memory.

örätiō recta et obliqua.

Speech (*örätiō*), whether Direct (*recta*) or Indirect (*obliqua*), must take one of three forms, *viz.* either Statement, Command, or Question.

e.g. *Direct Speech.*

You are doing this (Statement).

Do this! (Command).

Are you doing this? (Question).

¹ Usually followed by the future infinitive.

Indirect Speech.

- I see that you are doing this (Statement).

- I tell you to do this (Command).

- I ask whether you are doing this (Question).

Indirect Statement is expressed in Latin by one of the above (or similar) verbs followed by the 'accusative and Infinitive.'¹

Thus: *videō tē hōc facere.*

I see that you are doing this (lit. 'you to be doing').

videō is called the **Principal Verb**.

facere „ „ **Dependent** „ „

Translate the sentences in the following table, and refer those in the '*Anglicē reddenda*' to their appropriate columns:—

Principal Verb with Subject.	Dependent Verb.		
	pres. infin. with subject.	perf. infin. with subject.	fut. infin. with subject.
lēgātī negant	sē coniūrāti-ōnem facere (act.)	sē coniūrāti-ōnem fēcisse (act.)	sē coniūrāti-ōnem factū-rōs (esse) (act.)
hostēs intelle-gēbant	sē ā nostrīs circumdārī (pass.)	sē ā nostrīs circumdatōs (esse) (pass.)	sē ā nostrīs circumdatum irī (pass.)
barbarī vīdē-runt	nostrōs prō-gredi (dep.)	nostrōs prō-gressōs (esse) (dep.)	nostrōs prō-gressūrōs esse (dep.)

¹ For Indirect Command, *v. Less. 38*; for Indirect Question, *v. Less. 44*.

Anglice reddenda:

1. speculātor ad ducem accurrit, dīcit-que mōn̄tem ab hostibus tenērī.
2. Caesar reperiēbat plōrosque Belgās ortōs esse ab Germānīs, Rhēnum antīquitus trāductōs esse, Gallōs-que expulisse.
3. dux hostēs in castrīs nostrīs versārī vīdit.
4. cōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte consēdisse.
5. coniūrātiōnis principēs dēmonstrant sēsē nihil nisi communī consiliō actūrōs (esse).
6. Caesar suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertis.
7. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūruīn esse negat.
8. prōnuntiat dux posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtum īrī.
9. lēgātī pollicitī sunt sē obsidēs datūrōs, atque imperāta factūrōs (esse).
10. Caesar ex captivīs inveniēbat Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse.

Write in Latin any five of the above sentences in the form of Direct speech.

e.g. in no. 1. the scout says 'mons ab hostibus tenētur.'

in no. 7. Cotta says 'ad armātum hostem nōn ībō.'

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. Crassus animadvertisit hostem vagār— et viās obsid— (pres. *infīn. act.*).
2. lēgātī dixēr— nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāv— (perf. *infīn. act.*), nulla hostibus auxili— mīs— (perf. *infīn. act.*).
3. Caesar litterīs Labiēnī certior si— (imperf.) omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūr— (pres. *infīn. act.*).
4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium consul— occis— esse, exercitum-que cīus ab Helvēti— puls— esse et sub iugum — (perf. *infīn. pass. of mittō*).
5. dēmonstrat sē bellō cīvitāt— persec— esse (fut *infīn. of persecuor*).
6. dux hostēs nostrōs insequ— (pres. *infīn.*) animum-advertit.

N.B.—Sentence 6 can be translated in two ways. What are they?

Notice that *animum-advertō* governs an acc. case, as if it were a single word. What does it mean literally?

LECTIŌ.

Caesar bellum contrā Suēvōs parat.

Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnēs in unum locum cōpīas cōgere atquē nātiōnibus sibi *veetīgālibus* auxilia peditatūs equitatūs-que imperare. His cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiōs pecora dēducere

sua-que omnia ex agrīs in oppida conferre iubet, spērans hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs *inopīā cibāridrūm adductōs ad iūiquām pugnandī condiciōnem* posse dēducī.

Interim explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs *missī*, paucīs diēbus intermissīs, renuntiant Suēvōs omnēs cum omnibus suīs sociōrum-que copiīs *penitus* ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse: silvam esse ibi infīnītā magnitūdine, hanc longē *introrsus* pertinēre: ad cīus initium silvae Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre constituisse.

nātiō, ūnis, f., a tribe.

vectīgālis, e, adj., tributary.

sua, ūrum, n. pl., their belongings.

inopīā . . . dēducī, impelled by lack of provisions could be brought to fight on uneven terms.

missī, perf. part. pass. agreeing with explōrātōrēs.

penitus, adv., deeply, far within.

introrsus, adv., inwards.

Point out the *ablatives absolute* in this passage.

What case is *nātiōnibus*, and why?

What kind of ablative is *infīnītā magnitūdine*?

What sort of Infinitive is *exspectāre*?

Translate *iūiquām pugnandī condiciōnem* literally.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. ā quibus Caesar certior fit?
2. quibus Šuēvī equitēs peditēs-que īperābant?
3. quibus rēbus adductōs barbarōs ad pugnandum posse dēducī existimābat?
4. quid explōrātōrēs renuntiant?
5. ubi Suēvī Rōmānōs exspectāre constituerant?

LESSON 23.

*INDIRECT STATEMENT—continued.**PREDICATIVE DATIVE.*

In order to use the correct Tenses of the Infinitive, put each sentence *mentally* into the Direct form before translating.

Latīnē vertenda:

1. The Aeduī informed Caesar (that) they could not easily avert the enemy's violence from (their) towns.
2. The messengers reported (that) Arioistus' forces were twenty-four miles distant.
3. We perceived (that) the enemy's forces had been drawn-up.
4. On-enquiry (*in with abl. of gerund*) he found (that) the Suēvī had betaken themselves to the forests.
5. The Rēmī denied (that) they had conspired (*consentiō. 4. -sensī*) with the rest-of the Belgae, and that they were preparing war against the Roman people.
6. The ambassadors pointed-out to-Caesar (that) nothing was left (*nihil with gen. of reliquus, a, um*) to them except the soil (*solum, ī, n.*) of (their) fields (*sing.*).

7. The enemy thought (that) owing-to the fewness of our-men they would fight in-safety (*uitō*); nevertheless they considered (it) safer, (*neut. sing.*) to get (*potior. 4.*) the victory without any wounds (*sing.*).

8. The scouts reported (that) the camp was occupied (*teneō. 2.*) by a large-number of the enemy, (that) the legions were hard-pressed (*premō. 3.*) and almost surrounded, (that) the camp-followers, cavalry, and slingers were dispersed and fleeing (*say 'having been dispersed were fleeing'*) in-all-directions.

9. Caesar thinking (*pref. part. of arbitrō. 1.*) (that) that war could be quickly finished-off (*conficiō. 3.*), led (his) army thither.

10. The ambassadors said (that) they would take-back (*re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lītum*) this-message (*say 'these-things'*), and would return to Caesar when - the - matter - had - been - deliberated (*abl. absol.*).

To see if you understand *orātiō obliqua*, turn the following passage into Indirect Statement *in English*.

Notice carefully what changes are necessary in (a) the Pronouns, (b) the Tenses of Verbs.

‘Ariovistus gave the following reply to the members of the embassy:—“If I had wanted anything of Caesar, I should have gone to him; therefore if he wants any-

thing of me, he ought to come to me. Moreover I dare not go without an army to those parts of Gaul which Caesar holds, nor can I collect an army without great exertions. Besides I question what business either Caesar or the Roman nation has in this part of Gaul, which I have conquered in fair fight."

Turn the following into Direct Statement *in English* :—

‘Ariovistus briefly replied—that he had crossed the Rhine, not of his own accord, but because he had been invited by the Gauls; that it was not without great hopes of benefit that he had left both home and kindred; that settlements in Gaul had been granted to him by the Gauls themselves of their own free will; that by the laws of war he took the tribute which conquerors were accustomed to impose on the conquered; that he had not waged war on the Gauls, but they on him; that all the states of Gaul had come to attack him; and that he had routed and conquered them all in one engagement.’

Note.—In Latin *ōrātiō oblīqua* the introductory verb of saying or telling, *etc.*, is frequently omitted, and has to be supplied from the context.

e.g. *Iccius Remus nuntium ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.*

Iccius Remus sends a messenger to Caesar, (and says) that he cannot hold out any longer.

THE PREDICATIVE DATIVE.

The dative case of nouns is frequently used with parts of the verb *esse* (and some other verbs) in a predicative sense. In other words the noun in question serves as a predicate.

e.g. Ario*vistī* mors **magnō** erat Germānīs **dolōrī**.

*the death of Ario*vistus* was (for) a great grief to the Germans.*

cohortēs **praesidiō** castrīs relictæ sunt.

cohorts were left for a protection to (to protect) the camp.

N.B.—(1) The person or thing affected (*Germānīs, castrīs*) is also put in the dative case.

(2) This construction is limited in use. Only a few nouns occur at all frequently as predicative datives. The dative is never plural.

(3) Only adjectives denoting quantity can be used with predi. datives.

1. dux tertiam aciem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit.
2. omnīū rērum, quae ad bellū ūsuī sunt, summa in oppidō erat facultās.
3. duac legiōnēs praesidiō impedimentīs relictæ sunt.
4. ea rēs mihi cūrāe erit.
5. dux omnēm equitātūm suīs auxiliō mīsit.
6. disciplīna magnō ūsuī hominībus est.
7. ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet.
8. Caesār sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mīsit.

Note the phrase receptū canere, to sound the signal for retreat.

Latinē transfeſte :—

1. I attended to that (say 'that thing was for-a-care to me').
2. The friendship of the Roman people was (for) an ornament (*ornāmentum, ī, n.*) and protection to conquered races.
3. The general began to get-together everything (*n. pl. of omnis, e*) which was useful (*dat. of ūsus*) for a siege.
4. Caesar sends-up (*submittō*. 3.) the cohorts to help (say 'for-a-help to') the cavalry.
5. T. Labienus seeing (*perf. part. of conspicor*. 1.) this sent the tenth legion to help our-men.
6. He left the fourteenth legion to protect (say 'for-a-protection to') the baggage.
7. All-things were-lacking (*dē-sum, -esse, -fui*) which were useful (*as in 3*) for repairing ships (*ad with gerundive*).
8. The Roman shortness-of-stature was often an object-of-derision (say 'for a scorn,' *contemptus, ūs, m.*) to the Gauls, men (*what case?*) of great stature.

LESSON 24.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those that have the word 'it' as subject, instead of a personal subject.

e.g. **constat.** 1., it is agreed, well known.

praestat. 1. (*dat.*), it is better, preferable.

licet. 2. (*dat.*), it is allowed.

oportet. 2., it behoves, is necessary, proper.

placet. 2. (*dat.*), it is pleasing.

paenitet, 2., it repents (foll. by gen. of thing repented of).

videtur, 2., it seems good (*perf.* *vīsum est*).

Similar expressions are **fās**, **nefās est**, it is right, wrong.

necesse est, it is necessary.

All these are followed by the accusative and Infinitive, except *praestat*, *licet*, and *placet*, which take the dative and Infinitive.

They are conjugated like other verbs of their respective Conjugations, but only in the **3rd pers. sing.**

Tense.	1st. Conj.	2nd Conj.			necesse est.
Present	constat	oportet	placet	licet	necesse est
Future	constabit	oportēbit	placēbit	licēbit	necesse erit
Imperf.	constābat	oportēbat	placēbat	licēbat	necesse erat
Perfect	coñstitut	oportuit	{ placuit placitum est	{ licuit licitum est	necesse fuit
Pres. Inf.	constāre	oportēre	placēre	licēre	necesse esse

e.g. ~~oportet~~ militēs imperāta facere.¹

- *It is proper that soldiers (should) obey commands*
 • *(soldiers ought to, etc.).*

dixit sēsē impedīrī nōn oportēre.

he said that he ought not to be hindered.

tibi donum redīre licet.

you are allowed to (may) return home.

Note the phrase **per mē licet**, it is allowed *as far as I am concerned*, or *for all I care*.

Latīnē reddenda:

1. All agreed that they ought to winter (*say 'it was agreed by-all (dat.) that it ought to be wintered'*) in Gaul.
2. The Britons did not think it-right (*use fās esse*) to taste (*gustō. 1.*) hare or hen or goose.
3. Whether is-it-better to defend the camp or seek safety in-flight?
4. The Gauls often form (*in-eō, -īre*) plans of which they will immediately repent (*say 'of which it-will-repent them'*).
5. The Germans thought it wrong to do-violence-to strangers (*sing.*).
6. All said that they ought (*use oportet*) not to wait (any) longer.
7. Nevertheless the greater number (*pars, rtis, f.*) preferred (*say 'it pleased the greater number'*) to await-the-course-of-events (*rēi ēventum experior. 4.*), and to defend the camp.

¹ Equivalent to 'militēs imperāta facere dēbent.'

8. It-is-better to be killed in battle (*aciēs, ēi, f.*) than not to recover (*reciperō. 1.*) our liberty.

Verbō transferenda:

1. id tibi per mē facere licet.
2. constābat barbarōs ad castra vēnisse.
3. dixit ad castra īrī oportēre.
4. ducem consilī suī nōn paenituit.
5. 'sī vultis' inquit 'hīc considere, vōbis licet.'
6. illō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēbat.
7. multa in silvā Hercyniā genera ferārum nascī constat.
8. dixit illi sēcum colloquī licēre.

Put sentences 3 and 8 into *ōrātiō recta*.

LECTIō.

Gallōrum deī.

Gallī deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Hāius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viāruin atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniacē mercātūrasque habērē *im* maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum *initia*

trādūre, Iovem imperium *caelestium* tenēre, Martem
bella ~~regerē~~.

Hinc, cum proeliō dīmicāre constituērunt, ea quae
bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt,
animālia capta immolant, reliquasque rēs in unum
locum conferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum
exstructōs tumulōs locis consecrātīs conspicārī licet,
nequē saepē quisquam aut *capta* apud sē occultāre
aut posita tollere audet, gravissimūnique ei rēi
supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtū est.

ferunt, they reckon.

quaestus, ūs, m., acquisition.

vim, influence.

initia, beginnings, principles.

caelestēs, ium, m. pl., the heavenly powers.

regō. 3., I direct.

exstructōs, perf. part. pass. of *exstruō*, *q.v.*

capta, n. pl., things captured.

What kind of verb is *occultō*?

What tense is *cēperint*, and why?

LESSON 25.

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS.

Gerund and Gerundive in Indirect Statement.

In many cases where English has a Personal subject Latin prefers an Impersonal subject.

e.g. 'the rival armies fought fiercely' would in Latin be rendered :

āriter ab utrisque (utrimque)	pugnātum est	}
dīmicātur	contendēbātur	

(lit. 'it was fought fiercely by both (on both sides).')

ēādem ratiōne quā pīdiē ab nostrīs resistītūr.

our plan of resistance was the same as on the previous day (lit. 'it was resisted by our-men, etc.').

aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.

with difficulty they held out that day (lit. 'it was held out,' etc.).

nuntiātūr	}	news is brought, it is announced.	imperātūm est, it was ordered.
renuntiātūr			cognitūm est, it was discovered.
prōnuntiātūr			(per)ventūm est, they came.

Anglice transfeſte:

1. ubi ad rīpam flūminis ventum est, fugientēs sēsē
• praecipitāre coepērunt.
2. commodissimum vīsum est (v. p. 98) aliquem
linguae Gallicae perītum mittere.
3. circiter quindecim diēbus in hīberna perventum est.
4. Caesar lēgatiōnī quae visum est respondit.
5. ēquitum praefectī, ut erat imperātum, cohortēs
integrās ēduxērunt.
6. posterō diē ad locum ventum est egregiē nātūrā
atque opere mūnītum.
7. magnō clāmōre ab utrisque concursum est.
8. inopia cibāriōrum, cui rēi parum diligenter
prōvīsum erat, Gallōs ad hōc consilium hortābātur.
9. nullō responsō datō (abl. *absol.*) hostēs, ubi vīsum
est, sēsē recēpērunt.
10. post diem quartum in Britanniā ventum est.

Verbs that govern the *dative* in the Active voice are used impersonally in the Passive.

Thus : **mihi nocētur**, I am injured.

tibi nocētur, thou art injured.

illī (eī) nocētur, he, she, it is injured.

etc.

Similarly : **urbī appropinquātum est**.

• **mihi persuādēbātur**.

nullī persuādēri potuit.

rēi frūmentāriae prospiciendum est.

nōbīs ignoscētūr.

dīvitibus saepe invidērī solet.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT.

Anglicē reddite:

1. conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnēm negōtī bene gerendī amittendam nōn esse.
2. Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, neque sine causā timendūm (esse) putāvit.
3. hanc rem cōgitandam mihi āc suscipiendam p̄tō.
4. quibus rēbus commōtus dux mātūrandūm sibi arbitrātus est.
5. quam plūrimās nāvēs poterat aedificandās cūrāvit (v. p. 75).
6. dux magnopere sibi praecavendum existimāvit.
7. Caesar neque lēgātōs sibi audiendōs neque condicōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur.
8. rēi frūmentāiae prospiciendum (esse) statuit.

Put any four of the above into *ōrātiō recta*.

Latinē reddite:

1. He decided (*statu-ō*. 3. -ī) that the enemy ought-to-be-punished.
2. They did not think that his advice ought-to-be-neglected.
3. He thought that he ought to conceal (*dissimulō*. 1.) his intentions (*say 'his intentions ought-to-be-concealed by¹ him'*).

¹ Remember that 'by' is translated by the dative case after the gerund and gerundive.

4. He attended-to (*cūrō*, with gerundive) the repair-of
the old (*vetus, eris*) ships.

5. When-the-German-war-was-concluded (*con-ficiō, -ficērī, -fecī, -fectum, abl. absol.*) Caesar for (*dē, abl.*) many reasons decided that he ought to cross the Rhine (*say 'that the Rhine ought-to-be-crossed by him'*).

6. He thought that the brigadier ought not to fight (*say 'it ought-not-to-be-fought by the brigadier'*) except (*nisi*) on-equal-terms (*aequō locō*).

In sentence 5 note that the Gerundive of (*trans*)*cō* is (*trans*)*eundus*, a, um.

Insert a suitable Impersonal verb in each of the following:

1. hostēs iter facere conārī — .
2. montis *ascensum* facilem esse — — .
3. Arioivistum ad occupandum oppidum contendere — .
4. — agmen prīma lūce itūrum (esse).
5. — Caesari hostium equitēs proprius castra accessisse.
6. num tē *factī* — ?
7. sōlem ex *orientē* orīrī — .
8. morī quam *indignitātēs* perferre — .

•

ascensus, ūs, m., ascent.

ac-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, I approach.

factum, ī, n., deed.

oriens, ntis, m., the East.

indignitās, ātis, f., insulting treatment.

Verbō reddenda:

1. ad arma concussum est.
2. prō castrīs pugnābātur.
3. as had been commanded (*imperō*. 1.).
4. thither, as had been arranged (*dicō*. 3.), they came to a parley.
5. ab quartā ferē hōrā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnātum est.
6. ā nostrīs inīquō locō pugnārī nōn dēbuit.
7. ambassadors came to him, as had been agreed-upon (*constituō*. 3.).
8. subsidiō (*predic. dat.*) reliquīs venīrī nōn poterat.
9. hīc sine perīculō nōn manētur.
10. consurgitur ex consiliō.

LESSON 26.

NOUNS.

iūs iūrandum,¹ n., *an oath*, and **senātūs consultum**, n., *a decree of the senate*, are thus declined:—

Nom and Acc.	iūs iūrandum	senātūs consultum
Gen. . .	iūris iūrandī	„ consultī
Dat. . .	iūrī iūrandō	„ consultō
Abl. . .	iūre iūrandō	„ consultō

senātūs consulta is found in the nom. and acc. pl.

In **iūs iūrandum** both parts of the noun are declined (cf. *rēs publica*, First Lat. Bk., Less. 54).

māteria, ae, f., timber, has also 5th decl. forms in the nom. and acc. sing. **māteriēs, māteriem**.

bīdūm, ī, n., a two-days space.

trīdūm, ī, n., a three-days space.

bienniūm, nī, n., a two-years space.

1. **Divitiacus sēscī iūreiūrandō tenērī negābat.**

2. **Caesar *senātūs consultō certior factus dēlectum habēre instituit.**

3. **nostrī omne māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostēs collocābant.**

¹ Also written, **iūsiūrandum, iūrīsiūrandī**, etc.

4. datō iūre iūrandō ab conciliō discēditur.
5. bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit.
6. Caesar magnam Germānōrum manū trīduō adfore (*fut. infin. of ad-sum*) reperiēbat.
7. ipse hostib⁹ tūtum iter sē datūrum (es̄e) iūre iūrandō confirmāvit.
8. bīduō intermissō hostēs insequī coepit, et per eōrum fīnēs trīduī viam fēcit.
9. iamque ab Labiēnō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum (*when*) duās vēnisse legiōnēs cognoscunt.
10. quae gravissimē afflictæ erant nāvēs, cārum māteriā atque aere (*aes, aeris, n.*) ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad cās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat.

In sentence 10 note that the relative precedes its antecedent. This is a common construction, and is used for *emphasis* or *variety*. The sentence would ordinarily be: 'māteriā cārum nāvium ūtēbātur quae gravissimē afflictæ erant.

Quod dē-cst suppeditate:

1. diēs circ— in cō locō commorā— (1st pers. pl. *imperf. indic.*).
2. dux host— iusiūr— poposcit.
3. aliquantum itin— (gen.) prōgressi sum—.
4. captiv— a victōre ignoscētur.
5. ex senāt— consult— Caesar triumphum ēgit.
6. alter alterī auxili— (*predic. dat.*) fuit.

Latīnē vertite:

1. The Aeduī were compelled to bind (their) state by
• an oath (that) they would neither claim (*re-petō*).
3. -*petīvī*, -*petītūm*) their hostages, nor ask
(*implōrō*. 1.) aid from the Roman people.
2. Dumnorix and Orgetorix give a pledge (*fīlēs*, *ēī*, *f.*)
• and oath to-one-another.
3. Though (*ut*) the spirit (*animus*, *ī*, *m.*) of the Gauls
is eager (*alacer*, *erīs*, *ere*) and ready (*promptus*,
a, *um*) to-undertake-wars (*ad with gerundive*
of *sus-cipiō*. 3.), yet (*ita*) their mind is weak
(*mollis*, *e*) and little-resolute (*minimē resistens*)
to-endure calamities (*ad with gerundive*).
4. Caesar in (his) 'Gallic War' says (that) there is
timber of all (*quis-que*) kinds (*sing.*) in Britain
except the beech and fir.
5. Amongst the Suēvī nothing is considered (*habeō*. 2.)
more disgraceful or more unmanly (*iners*, *rtīs*)
than to use housings (*ephippium*, *ptī*, *n.*).
6. For accomplishing (*ad with gerundive*) these
things they thought (*dūcō*. 3.) two-years would
be sufficient.
7. In-less (*minus*) than-three hours (*abl.*) the enemy
completed a circumvallation (*mūnitiō*, *ōnis*, *f.*)
of 15 miles in circumference (*circuitus*, *ūs*, *m.*).
8. Then with a loud shout as-if (*sīcut*) victory-were-
already-won (*explōrō*. 1. *abl. absol.*), they began to
bring-up (*agō*. 3.) towers and mantlets, and to climb
the stockade with ladders (*scālē*, *ārum*, *f. pl.*).

LECTIÖ.

Caesar in Britanniam proficiscitur.

Hīs rēbus gestīs et Labiēnō in continente relictō, ipse ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī *Africō* prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius *dēlātus* aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rēmīs eam partem insulae *capere* cōnātus est, quā optimūm esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque in ēo locō hostis est vīsus, sed, *ut* posteā Caesar ā captīvīs cognōvit, magnae *manūs*, quae eō convēnerant, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā litorē discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Africus, ī, m. (ventus), the south-west wind.

dēlātus, a, um (perf. part. pass. of *dē-ferō*, -tulī, *vlātūm*), carried down.

capere, to reach, make.

ut, as.

manūs, is the subject of discesserant and abdiderant below.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quis in continente relictus est?
2. quālī ventō Caesar prōvehitur?
3. quā parte noctis hīc ventus intermissus est?
4. cūr cursum tenēre nōn potuit?
5. quōmodo. tum insulam *capere* cōnābātur?
6. num prīmō hostēs vīsī sunt?
7. cūr nōn vīsī sunt?
8. quot nāvēs classī Rōmānae erant?
9. quō barbarī sē abdiderant?

LESSON 27.

ADJECTIVES.

Distributive Numeral Adjectives.

singulī, ae, a, one each.	octōnī, ae, a, eight each.
bīnī, ae, a, two each.	novēnī, ae, a, nine each.
trīnī (ternī), ¹ ae, a, three each.	dēnī, ae, a, ten each.
quaternī, ae, a, four each.	undēnī, ae, a, eleven each.
quīnī, ae, a, five each.	duodēnī, ae, a, twelve each
sēnī, ae, a, six each.	vīcēnī, ae, a, twenty each.
septēnī, ae, a, seven each.	centēnī, ae; a, a hundred each.
	etc.

Distributive Numeral Adjectives answer the question '*How many each, or at a time?*', and are declined like the plurals of adjs. in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

They are used instead of cardinal numbers (1) where a statement is made of an action happening more than once, (2) with nouns pl. in form but sing. in meaning:

e.g. **trīna castra**, three camps.

sēnae litterae, six letters (*epistles*).²

singulis puerīs singula pōma dedit.

He gave one apple to each boy.

hāc viā vix singulī carri dūcī poterant.

scarcely one cart at a time could travel by that path.

¹ For difference, *v. note on p. 115.*

² But **sex litterae**, six letters (*of the alphabet*).

• cum singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant,
mīlites transcendere in hostium nāvēs contende-
dēbant,
*whenever two or three ships surrounded one, the
soldiers would endeavour to board the enemy's
ships.*

Diminutive Adjectives.

These end usually in *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*.

e.g. **tantulus**, *a*, *um*, so small (*tantus*).

parvulus, *a*, *um*, very little, trifling (*parvus*).

adulescentulus, *a*, *um*, very young (*adulescens*).

hostēs proeliis parvulīs cum nostrīs contendēbant.

*The enemy were engaging in trifling skirmishes with
our-men.*

erat magnī periculi rēs tantulīs cōpiīs dīmicāre.

*It was a very dangerous matter to fight with such
small forces.*

tantus . . . **quantus**, as great . . . as.

quantō . . . **tantō**, by how much . . . by so much.

Anglicē reddenda :

1. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs prae-
fēcit.
2. hostēs tantō spatiō nostrōs secūti sunt, quantum
cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt.
3. dux locum nōn-parvulō dētrīmentō relinquī posse
vidēbat.

4. nostrī tantam hostium multitūdinem interfēcērunt,
quāntum fuit diēī spatium.
5. Caesar quōs labōrantēs conspexerat, hīs subsidia
• submittēbat.
6. apud Gallōs nonnullī annōs vīcēnōs in disciplinā
permanent.
7. tantum repentinī periculī acciderat quantum nōn
exspectāverāmus.
8. Caesar• quōrum operā (*means*) Tasgetium inter-
fectum cognōverat, hōs comprehensōs ad sē
mittī iubet.

In sentences 5 and 8 the relative is placed before the antecedent, *v. Less. 26.*

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. hostēs locī praesid— frētī in palūd— confūgērunt.
2. hīs rēbus gest— fit Gallia paul— quiēt—
(*compar.*).
3. mult— māior alacritās exercit— (*dat.*) iniecta est.
4. quam max— manūs possunt cōgunt.
5. h— rēbus quam mālūrrimē occurrendūm putā—.
6. Suēvī Ubiōs vectīgūl— sibi fēcēr—, ac mult—
humili— (compar.) redēgērunt (*reduced*).
7. constābat (*impers.*) Bellovacōs plūr— inter
Belgās val—.
8. Caesar Dumnorigem cupid— rērum nov—,
cupid— imperī magnae inter Gallōs auctōritā—
esse cognōverat.

Latīnē reddite :

After-several-towns-had-been-stormed (*abl. absol.*), when Caesar saw (*say 'Caesar, when he saw'*) that all his great exertions (*sing.*) were spent in-vain, and that the enemy's flight could not be checked on-the-capture-of-their-towns (*abl. absol.*), nor they themselves injured (*say 'it be injured to them,' v. Less. 25*), he determined to await the fleet (*say 'that the fleet should-be-awaited,' gerundive, v. p. 104, sent. 2*).

When it came (*say 'which, when (it) came'*) and was first seen by the enemy, about 220 of their ships fully-equipped (*superl.*) set-out from harbour and took-up-their-position (*say, 'having set-out took up' etc.*) opposite to-our (ships).

The contest was one of (superior) valour (*say 'the contest was placed in valour'*), in-which our-men easily prevailed, and on-this-account (*eo*) the-more because the engagement took place (*say 'the matter was being carried-on'*) in the sight of Caesar and the entire (*omnis*) army, for all the hills and higher ground (*pl.*), whence there was a prospect over (*in. acc.*) the sea, were occupied (*say 'held'*) by the army.

VOCABULARY.

I see, <i>intel-legō</i> . 3. <i>-lectū</i> ,	I check, <i>re-primō</i> . 3. <i>-pressū</i> ,
<i>-lectum.</i>	<i>-pressum.</i>
exertion, <i>labor, -ōris</i> . m.	equipped, <i>ornātūs, a, um.</i>
I spend, <i>sūm-ō</i> . 3. <i>-psi</i> ,	opposite, <i>adversus, a, um.</i>
<i>-ptum.</i>	I prevail, <i>superō</i> . 1.
	prospect, <i>despectus, ūs, m.</i>

Verbo transferenda:

1. adulescentulō duce.
2. parvulīs equestrībus proeliīs factīs.
3. magnī ponderis saxa cōniciunt.
4. hominēs tantulacē statūracē.
5. ancipitī (*anceps, ipitis*) proeliō pugnābātur.
6. Germānī ab parvulīs labōrī student.
7. trīnīs hibernīs hiemāre constituit.
8. nonnullae nāvēs tempestātē dēperierant.
9. collis tantum in lātitūdinein patēbat quantum locī aciēs instructa occupātūra erat.
10. tantum Cassivellaunō ā Rōmānīs nocēbātur quantum mīlītēs efficere poterant.

Note.—With nouns that have no singular (*e.g. castra, insidiae, etc.*), *ūni* not *singulī*, and *trīnī* not *ternī* are used.

Thus: *ūna castra, one camp.*

trīnae insidiae, three ambushes.

LESSON 28.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE
CASE.

The prepositions given in this and the next Lesson are not a complete list, but purposely limited to some that are used *idiomatically* by Caesar. Their ordinary meanings, being by this time familiar, are not always given, nor does the list include many other familiar prepositions, *e.g.* **ante**, **contrā**, **in**, **inter**, **propter**, **a(b)**, **sub**, **sine**, *etc.*

ad, to, up to :

ad multam noctem, *till late in the night.*

ad numerum milium v, *to the number of 5000.*

ad unum omnēs incolumēs, *all safe to a man.*

preceded by usque :

usque ad vesperum, *until evening.*

usque ad castra hostium accessit.

circiter, about (*of time, not place*) :

circiter meridiem, *about midday.*

¹ It is suggested that in this and the next lesson pupils should learn by heart at least the shorter examples of the different meanings of the various prepositions.

as an *adv.* is more frequent.

e.g. *circiter* ccc nāvēs, *about 300 ships.*

circiter pars quarta, *about a fourth part.*

equitēs *circiter* quadringtonēs colligit.

citrā (cis), on this side of (*opposite of ultrā*):

citrā flūmen Ararim, *on this side of the river Arar.*

cis Rhēnum, *on this side of the Rhine.*

ergā, towards (*of feeling, conduct, etc.*):

perpetua ergā populum Rōmānum fidēs, *undying loyalty towards the Roman people.*

voluntās ergā Caesarem tōtiū prōvinciacē, *the good feeling of the whole province towards Caesar.*

per, on account of, for the sake of:

per mē (licet), *as far as I am concerned (you may)*, v. p. 99.

cunt primum per annī tempus potuit, *directly the time of year allowed him.*

praeter, except:

nihil vestitūs praeter peltēs, *no clothing except skins.*

praeter caput, *except the head.*

besides, in addition to:

praeter sc̄ dēnī, *ten-each besides themselves.*

past, beyond:

praeter castra cōpias duxit, *he led his forces past the camp.*

contrary to:

praeter opīniōnem, *contrary to expectation.*

secundum, by, along :

secundum flūmen paucae equitum statiōnes visae, sūpt.

along the river a few pickets of cavalry were seen.

next to, after (*in rank, value*) :

secundum ea, multae rēs eum hortābantur.

after this many things urged him.

sub, up to (*with verbs of motion*) :

sub aciem succēdere, *to come up to the line.*

towards (*of time*) :

sub noctem, vesperum, *towards night, evening.*

Notice the phrase **hōc (eō)** . . . **quod**, by this (*on this account*) . . . because (*namely that*) :

e.g. hōc facilius quod ; eō minus quod, by this the more easily, because ; on this account the less, namely that.

*hōc māiōre spē quod, etc., with the greater hope on this account, namely that, etc.*¹

In translation the **hōc (eō)** is best rendered by 'the,' or omitted altogether :

e.g. id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit quod . . .

he persuaded them to this the more easily, beatusq . . .

eōrum fortūna quam reliquōrum hōc erat miserior quod sōlī querī nōn audēbant.

their lot was worse than (that) of the rest, inasmuch as they alone dare not complain.

¹ Why could it not be translated 'with this greater hope, etc.' ?

Anglice vertite:

1. usque ad castra hostium accessum est.
2. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum Belgīs coniunixerant.
3. ea quae ūsuī erant prōvident, hōc māiōre spē quod multum (*adv.*) nātūrā locī confidēbant.
4. Menapiī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs habēbant.
5. castra hōc erant angustiōra quod sine impedimentī Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.
6. hāc ūratiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant.
7. nostrī inter sē cohortātī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.
8. Helvētiī omne frūmentūn, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt.
9. hostēs eō facilius sēsē recipiēbant quod nostrāo nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur.
10. Caesar praesidium utrisque castrīs, quod (*rel.*) satis esse vīsum est, reliquit.
11. hostēs sub ipsōs urbis mūrōs aciem instruxērunt.
12. sex legiōnēs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen ductae sunt.
13. secundum deōs hominēs hominibus maximē ūtilēs esse possunt.
14. tua ergā mē voluntās grātissima mihi est.

Parse *portātūrī* in sentence 8.

LECTIŌ.

Caesar in Britanniam contendit.

Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, cohortibus x et equitibus eēc *praesidiō* nāvibus relictīs, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus vēritus *nāvibus* quod in litorē mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinquēbat, et *praesidiō* nāvibus Q. Atrium praeſēcit.

Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostiūm cōpiās cōspicātus est.

Illi equitātū¹ atque essedis¹ ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coēpērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum *nactī* ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitūm, unde rārī prōpugnābant nostrosque intrā mūnitōnēs ingredi prohibēbant.

At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eosque ex silvīs expulserunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, *et* quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, *et* quod magnā parte diēi consumptā mūnitōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

praesidiō, predīc. dat. **rārī**, in small detachments.
nāvibus, for the ships (*dat.*). **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
nactī, perf. part. of nanciscor, *q.v.*

Point out all the ablatives absolute in this passage.

¹ For explanation of this ablative, *v. p. 234.*

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quālem locum castrīs cēpit?
2. quā dē causā equitēs relinquit?
3. quotā hōrā in hostēs profectus est?
4. quālī in lītore nāvēs relinquerēbat?
5. num eīs verēbātur?
6. cūr nōn verēbātur?
7. quem nāvibus praeſificit?
8. quot mīlia passuum prōgressus hostēs conspicātus ēst?
9. cūius legiōnis mīlitēs hostēs ex silvīs expulērunt?
10. cūr Caesar hostēs longius prōsequī vetat?

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. mīlitēs fidem ergā imperāt—— conservāb—— (fut.).
2. prae— mercātōrēs nēm— ad Britanniam venti-
tābat.
3. reliquam part— exercitūs nōn exspectandam
statuit.
4. Caesar cum Ariovist— colloquī nōlēbat — magis
quod insidiās verēb—— (imperf.).
5. Caesar per explōrāt—— certior — quartam hos-
tium part— citrā Rhēn— reliquam esse.
6. trīd— viam prōgressī rursus revert——.

LESSON 29.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE
CASE.¹

cum, with, to :

magnō cum suō periculō, with great danger to himself.

magnō cum periculō exercitūs impedimenta reliquit, to the great danger of the army he left the baggage behind.

dē, during, in the course of :

dē tertiā vigiliā, during, in the third watch.

Compounded with adjectives to form adverbial expressions :

dē integrō, anew.

eo dē imprōvisō ventum est, thither they came suddenly.

e(x), from, after :

gravius ex commutatiōne rērum dolēre.

to grieve more heavily from a change in circumstances.

facilia ex difficillimīs, easy from (being) difficult.

ex calamitātē nōmen capere, to acquire a name from a disaster.

ex consulātū profectus est ad Galliam, after his consulship he set out for Gaul.

in accordance with, following :

ex consuētūdine cotidiānā, following his daily practice.

ex ūsū accidere, to happen advantageously (in accordance with profit).

ē rēpublicā, for the good of the State.

¹ See paragraph at beginning of Lesson 28.

in, considering (*lit. in the midst of*):

- in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī, *considering the mighty empire of the Roman people.*
- in tantā rērum iniquitāte, *considering the disadvantages of their position.*

prae; compared with:

brevitās nostra prae illōrum magnitūdine, *our shortness of stature in comparison with their great size.*

prō; instead of, for:

pellēs prō vēlis, *skins for sails.*
aes prō nummō, *bronze as money.*

in proportion to, according to, in comparison with:

consilium prō tempore et prō rē capere, *to form plans according to the time and circumstances.*

prō multitūdine hominum, *in comparison with their numbers.*

prō suā clēmentiā, *in accordance with his clemency (with his usual clemency).*

in return for:

prō ēius meritīs, *in return for his services.*

ea mūnera prō magnīs officiīs tribuī consuērant.

those presents were usually bestowed in return for great services.

accēdit quod . . .

In this phrase *accēdō* is used *impersonally*; ‘*there came in addition* (i.e. *was added*) *this (reason), namely that . . .*’

e.g. *accessit (perf.) quod equitēs nondum redierant.*

there was added the reason (consideration) that the cavalry had not yet returned.

or ‘*an additional reason was that*,’ etc.

or simply ‘*moreover the cavalry*,’ etc.

accēdēbat hūc quod Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum dēferrī.

moreover Dumnorix had said that the crown was being offered him by Caesar.

Anglicē reddenda :

1. hostium equitēs tēla cōniciunt et magnū cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant.
2. dē quartā vigiliā ē castrīs ex-ītur.
3. dux submittit cohortēs equitibus praesidiō.
4. Germānī celeriter ex consuētūdine suā phalangem fēcērunt.
5. barbarī coactīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriuntur.
6. in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum id sibi ēt rēpublicae esse vīsum est.
7. nuntius, timōre perterritus, quod nōn vīderat prō vīsō (*as seen*) renuntiat.
8. id proelium nōbīs ex ūsū accīdit.

9. Caesar Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō collaudat.
 10. Helvētiī prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā
 belli angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.
 • •

Latinē vertite:

A. Connected.—The influence of the state of the Venetī is by-far the greatest (*amplus, a, um*) of all the sea-board of those districts, because they both have very-many ships in-which they are accustomed to sail to Britain, and they surpass their neighbours (*say 'the rest'*) in-the knowledge and practice of seamanship. Moreover (*use 'accēdit quod'*) only a few harbours, which they themselves control (*say 'hold'*), are situated-at-intervals on (*in. abl.*) that violent and open sea. Accordingly they have (as) tributaries almost all (those) who are accustomed to use that sea.

With these (*i.e. the Venetī*) originated the plan (*say 'by these is made the beginning'*) of detaining the officers who had been sent (to them) by Caesar, because they thought that by-this-means (*say 'in-such a way'*) they would recover their own hostages.

VOCABULARY.

sea-board, <i>ōrē maritima</i> . f.	situated-at-intervals, <i>inter-</i>
I surpass, <i>ante-cēdō</i> . 3. -cessi.	<i>iectus, a, um.</i>
practice, <i>ūsus, ūs</i> , m.	violent, <i>turbidus, a, um.</i>
seamanship, <i>rēs nauticae</i> , f. pl.	I detain, <i>re-tineō</i> . 2. -tinui.
I recover, <i>reciper-ō</i> . 1. -āvī, -ātum.	

B. Detached.

1. Caesar marches unexpectedly into the territory of the Nervii.
2. The Veneti used (*imperf.*) skins for sails.
3. The general determined to-make-preparations-for (*parō*. 1.) war in-proportion-to the magnitude of the danger.
4. Gallic funerals, in-proportion-to (*pro*) the civilisation of the Gauls, are splendid (*magnificus*, *a*, *um*) and costly (*sumptuosus*, *a*, *um*).
5. To this was added (the consideration) that they lamented-for (*doleō*. 2.) their children torn (*abstractus*, *a*, *um*) from them in-the name of hostages.
6. Caesar with his usual clemency (say 'in-accordance-with his clemency') determined to spare the enemy.
7. Gaul (being) quiet (*abl. absol.*), Caesar set-out for (*in. acc.*) Italy to hold (*agō*. 3.) the assizes (*ad* with gerundive).
8. The Gauls perceived (that) that matter had turned-out (*ac-cidō*. 3. *-cidē*) not less advantageously (*ex iusū*) for-Gaul (*gen.*) than for the Roman people (*gen.*).
9. The general thought he would send ambassadors with great danger to himself.
10. He wished this the less on-this-account namely—that he did not think he ought to fight (say 'it ought to be fought by him') in the absence of the commander-in-chief (say, 'the commander-in-chief being absent').

LESSON 30.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. Give the *Dat. Sing.*, *Acc. Pl.*, and *Gender* of agmen, rēmus, coniūratiō, pecus, aes, ūsus, frāter, iter, aestus, rēspublika, Apollō (*sing. only*). Decline the *Adjective* lēnis, e in *Sing.* and *Pl.*
2. What is meant by a *Complementary Infinitive*? Give some verbs which are followed by such Infinitives.
3. Give the *Principal Parts* of vetō, audēō, conferō, dēpellō, caedō, poscō, vērō, polliceor, prōgredior, nascor, nanciscor, potior.
4. Correct this sentence—māteria comportārī coepit.
5. Write out the *Infinitive mood* (*pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut. tenses*) *active and passive* of the verbs relinquō, audiō; also of the *deponent verbs* cōnor, sequor; and of the verb sum.
6. Give examples showing *idiomatic uses* of the following *prepositions*—ergā, sub (*acc.*) cum, prō.
7. Latinē *transferte*:
 - a forest of vast (*infinitus, a, um*) size.
 - owing-to the fewness of our-men.
 - men of little (*tantulus, a, um*) stature.
 - I do not repent of my deed (*factum, ī, n.*).
 - we must (*use oportet*) do what (*id quod*) is right (*fās*).
 - I am persuaded.

eight cohorts were left to-guard (*predic. dat.*)
the camp.

on this side of the river.

to go a three-days' march.

with a very-young man (as) general (*abl. absol.*).

after three days (*say 'the fourth day'*) they
came (*impers.*) to Britain.

8. Give six Impersonal verbs with their meanings.
9. *What is meant by ōrātiō recta and ōrātiō obliqua?*
Write down a Direct statement in Latin, and
then by prefixing a suitable verb turn it into an
Indirect statement.
10. *Anglicē vertenda:*

nautae, nāvem	conscendite!	per mē licet.
paucis	diēbus intermissis.	in rē publicā vessor.
Venetī	plūrimum valent.	lēnī Africō prōvectus.
eōs	vectīgālēs sibi fēcerant.	victōriā potīrī.
rē dēlīberātā.		eō bellō confēctō.
ubi eō ventum est.		
Iovēni	caelestium imperiū tenēre putant.	

11. *When are Distributive Numeral Adjectives used instead of Cardinal Numbers?* Give instances.
12. *Parse mōtum īrī, aegrē, cūrae, conspicātus, trans-eunda, iūrīiūrandō, nactī.*

LESSON 31.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*Introductory*).

The Subjunctive mood is so called because it is often 'subjoined'¹ to a Principal verb.

This is the Dependent use of the Subj., *e.g.*

Principal verb.	Subjunctive.
ōrō	faciās
<i>I pray (you)</i>	<i>do (it)</i>
imperāvit	aedificārent
<i>he ordered (them)</i>	<i>to build</i>

N.B.—The insertion of the conj. *ut* between the Principal verb and the Subj. mood is more usual (*v. Less. 38*).

The Subj. is also used Independently in various ways.

A. Jussive or Hortatory Subj. (expressing a command).

rectē faciās, *do right (general command)*.

hōc faciat, *let him do this.*

nē hōc faciat, *let him not do this.*

¹ sub-iungō, 3. -iunxi, -iunctum.

B. Deliberative Subj. (expressing a doubt or dilemma).

quid faciat? *what is he to do?*

cūr nōn faceret? *why should he not do it?*

quō īrem? *whither was I to go?*

This use of the Subj. may be regarded as an interrogative form of the Jussive Subj.

C. Optative subj. (expressing a wish).

sīs fēlix! *may you be happy!*

(utinam) nē fēcissēs! *would that you had not done it!*

Observe that in *A* and *C* the negative is generally **nē**, in *B* the negative is **nōn**.

Examples of the Subj. mood in English:

Jussive.

‘pray we likewise for the civil incorporation of this town!’

Optative.

long live the King! God be with you!

Other examples:

were the whole realm of nature mine (*conditional*).

if it *be* proved that he did it (*conditional*).

‘which refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, *charm* he (=though he charms) never so wisely.’¹

We shall learn later how to translate such sentences into Latin.

¹ These uses were common in early English.

TYPES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1st Conj. and the verb **sum**.

Tense.	Active.	Passive.	Deponent.	Verb sum .
Present	laud- em ¹	laud- er	cōn- er	sim
	laud- ēs	laud-ēris(-ēre)	cōn-ēris(-ēre)	sīs
	laud- et	laud-ētur	cōn-ētur	sit
	laud-ē mus	laud-ēmūr	cōn-ēmūr	sīmūs
	laud-ē tis	laud-ēmīnī	cōn-ēmīnī	sītīs
	laud-ē ent	laud-ēntūr	cōn-ēntūr	sīntī
Imperfect	laudā- rem	laudā- rer	cōnā- rer	essem or forem
	laudā- rēs	laudā-ēris(-ēre)	cōnā-ēris(-ēre)	essēs or forēs
	laudā- ret	laudā-ētūr	cōnā-ētūr	esset or foret
	laudā- rēmūs	laudā-ēmūr	cōnā-ēmūr	essēmūs or forēmūs
	laudā- rētīs	laudā-ēmīnī	cōnā-ēmīnī	essētīs or forētīs
	laudā- rent	laudā-ēntūr	cōnā-ēntūr	essent or forent

¹ No meanings of the subj. are given here, as they would be misleading.

TYPES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Continued.

1st Conj. and the verb **sum**.

Tense.	Active.	Passive.	Deponent.	Verb sum .
Perfect	laudā-(ve)rim	laudātus, a, sim	cōnātus, a, sim	fu-erim
	laudā-(ve)ris	sis	sis	fu-eris
	laudā-(ve)rit	sit	sit	fu-erit
	laudā-(ve)rīmus	laudātī, ae, sīmus	cōnātī, ae, sīmus	fu-erīmus
	laudā-(ve)rītis	sītis	sītis	fu-erītis
	laudā-(ve)rīnt	sīnt	sīnt	fu-erīnt
Pluperf.	laudā-(vi)ssem	laudātus, a, essem	cōnātus, a, essem	fu-issem
	laudā-(vi)ssēs	essēs	essēs	fu-issēs
	laudā-(vi)sset	esset	esset	fu-isset
	laudā-(vi)ssēmus	laudātī, ae, essēmus	cōnātī, ae, essēmus	fu-issēmus
	laudā-(vi)ssētis	essētis	essētis	fu-issētis
	laudā-(vi)ssent	essent	essent	fu-isssent

Note (1) the Subj. mood lacks the fut. and fut. perf. tenses. A future Subj. is seldom needed; when required it is formed by the fut. part. and the Subj. of the verb *sum*.

(2) The Subj. mood of Deponent verbs is similar to that of the Passive voices of their respective conjugations.

The Subj. mood of **possum** is as follows:

Present	pos-sim, pos-sīs, pos-sit, etc.
Imperfect	pos-sem, pos-sēs, pos-set, pos-sēmus, pos-sētis, pos-sent.
Perfect	potu-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	potu-issem, issēs, -isset, etc.

*Conjugate*¹ the Subj. mood of the verbs **aedificō**, **parō**, **incitō**, **vagor**, **hortor**.

Anglicē dīcenda:

1. Caesar Divitiacum rogat finem ōrandī **faciat**² (*pres. subj. of faciō*).
2. monuit eum omnēs suspiciōnēs **vītāret**.
3. tribūnī suōs cohortantur equōs **incitent**.
4. imperāvit cīvitātibus frūmentum **comparārent**.
5. prōnuntiat dux nē militēs lātius **vagēntur**.

A good plan is for this to be done *orally*, first by the whole class together, then by individuals.

² Words in black type are in the Subj. mood.

6. monet dux 'vōs, mīlitēs, in pugnandō cauti sītis.'
7. utinam hīc nōn ad-essēs !
8. virōs fortēs laudēmus !
9. cūr virōs fortēs nōn laudārēmus ?
10. Caesar Labiēnō mandat Rēmōs **adeat** (*pres. subj. of adeō*), Germānōs-que **prohibeat** (*pres. subj. of prohibeō*) sī per vim flūmen transīre cōnentur.

Note on the meaning of the Subj. mood.

The Subj. mood is often translated by means of the English auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *let*, *can*, because the English Subj. is not in common use.

Such translations, however, are often misleading, because, *e.g.* 'he may fight' is often not *pugnet*, but *licet eī pugnāre*; 'he can do this,' *potest hōc facere*, etc.

Also Latin uses the Subj. in many places where we use the Indic., *e.g.* in Dependent clauses in *ōrātiō oblīqua* (*v. Less. 36 and 37*); in clauses expressing purpose, result, etc. (*v. Less. 41-43*); in Indirect Questions (*v. Less. 44*), etc.

LESSON 32.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Second, Third, and Fourth Conj.).

Subj. mood of a 2nd conj. verb, **contineō**.Verb Stem, **continē-**.

Tense.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present *contine^l-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.*Imperfect *continē-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.*Perfect *continu-erim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.*Pluperfect *continu-issem, -issēs, -isset, -issēmus, -issētis,
-issent.*

Tense.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present	<i>contine^l-ar, -āris(-āre), -ātur, -āmur, -āminī, -antur.</i>
Imperfect	<i>continē-rer, -rēris(-rēre), -rētur, -rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur.</i>
Perfect	<i>contentus sim, sīs, sit, contentī sīmus, sītis, sint.</i>
Pluperfect	<i>contentus essem, essēs, esset, contentī essēmus, essētis, essent.</i>

¹ Notice that the ē is shortened before a vowel.

‘ Subj. mood of 3rd, ‘mixed,’ and 4th conjugations.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Tense.	3rd Conj. Stem <i>age-</i>	‘ Mixed ’ Conj. Stem <i>rapi-</i>	4th Conj. Stem <i>mūni-</i>
Present	ag- am , -ās, etc.	rapi- am , -ās, etc.	mūni- am , -ās, etc. *
Imperfect	age- rem , -rēs, etc.	rape- rem , -rēs, etc.	mūni- rem , -rēs, etc.
Perfect	ēg- erim , -eris, etc.	rapu- erim , -eris, etc.	mūni(v)- erim , ¹ -eris, etc.
Pluperfect	ēg- issem , -issēs, etc.	rapu- issem , -issēs, etc.	mūni(v)- issem , ¹ -issēs, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Tense.			
Present	ag- ar , -āris (-āre), etc	rapi- ar , -āris (-āre), etc.	mūni- ar , -āris (-āre), etc.
Imperfect	age- rer , -rēris (-rēre), etc.	rape- rer , -rēris (-rēre), etc.	mūni- rer , -rēris (-rēre), etc.
Perfect	actus sim, sis, etc.	raptus sim, sis, etc.	mūnitus sim, sis, etc.
Pluperfect	actus essem, essēs, etc.	raptus essem, essēs, etc.	mūnitus essem, essēs, etc.

¹ In the form mūnierim, mūniissem, etc., the I is shortened before a vowel.

N.B.—The Deponent verbs **patior**, suffer; **morior**, die; **gradior**, go (and its compounds *in-*, *ē-*, *prō-**gredior*, etc.) are conjugated like the pass. of *rapiō*. But **potior**. 4., get possession of, and **orior**. 4., arise, vary between *rapior* and *mūnior*.

Conjugate the Subj. mood of the verbs **compleō**, **pellō**, **capiō**, **pūniō**, **morior**.

Anglice dicenda:

1. Venetī lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt obsidēs **remittat**.¹
2. Ubiī Caesarem ḍrābant exercitum Rhēnum **trans-**
portāret.
3. Caesar C. Volusēnō mandat explōrātis omnibus
rēbus ad sē quam-prīnum (*as soon as possible*)
revertātur.
4. (Helvētiī dixērunt) Caesar **reminiscerēt** et
veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.
5. Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem (*indef.*) peditem ad
colloquium Caesar **addūceret**; uter-que cum
equitātū **venīret**.
6. Caesar ab Ariovistō postulāvit prīnum, nē quam
mūltitudinem hominum trans Rhēnum in
Galliam **trādūceret**, deinde nē obsidēs **redderet**,
nēve Aeduōs **laceſſeret**, nēve illis bellum **in-**
ferret (*imperf. subj. of in-ferō*).

¹ Words in black type are in the Subj. mood.

In the above sentences notice:

(1) that where the Principal verb is in the present tense, the verb in the Subj. is also in the present tense, and that where the Principal verb is in the past-perfect¹ or imperfect tense, the verb in the Subj. is in the imperfect tense;² (2) that the Subj. mood represents the imperative of *ōratiō recta*. Thus in sent. 2 the members of the embassy said to Crassus, 'obsidēs remitte!'; in sent. 5 Arioistus proposed to Caesar, 'cum equitātū venī!'

In linguam Latinam vertite:

1. Let us, my friends, accept (*say 'follow'*) the protection of the Roman people!
2. Caesar writes to-Labiēnus to-come (*pres. subj.*) to him(self) with a legion, and warns him to-march (*pres. subj. of iter faciō*) cautiously and carefully.
3. The enemy begged Caesar to-give (*imperf. subj.*) them three-days (*trīduī spatiū*) to complete the business (*ad with gerundive*).
4. Caesar sent messengers to the Lingonēs (telling them) not to help (*imperf. subj.*) the Helvētiī with corn or other things (*sing.*).
5. If there is any (thing of) spirit (*animus, ī, m.*) in us, let-us-avenge (*persequor. 3.*) the death of those who have most-unworthily perished, and let-us-kill these traitors!

¹ For explanation of past-perfect, *v. p. 144.*

² But see also the rules for Sequence of Tenses in Less. 34.

6. Arioistus demanded of (*ā*) Caesar (that he should) either appoint (*imperf. subj.*) a day for-a conference, or send one (*aliquis*) of (*ē*) his brigadiers to him(self).

In sent. 4 remember to translate the negative by **nē**, and 'or' by **nē-ve**.

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

is used independently in Direct speech to express *prohibitions* in the *second person*.

e.g. *nē hōc fēceris, do not do this.*

nē salūtem despērāverītis, do not despair of safety.

nē vōs, militēs, animō dēmiserītis, soldiers, do not be discouraged!

But in *ōrātiō obliqua* the pres. or *imperf. subj.* with *nē* is regularly used.

e.g. (*ōrat*) *nē salūtem despērent, do not (he entreats) despair of safety.*

(*dixit*) *nē sē animō dēmitterent, do not (he said) be discouraged.*

A commoner and less peremptory way of expressing prohibitions in prose is by

nōlī, sing., nōlīte, pl. (imperative of nōlō) foll. by the Infin.

e.g. *nōlī hōc facere, be unwilling to do this (i.e. do not do it).*

nōlīte, liberī, falsa dicere, do not tell untruths, children.

LESSON 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF SOME IRREGULAR VERBS.

volō, I wish.

Present	vel-im, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -int.
Imperfect	vell-em, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Perfect	volu-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	volu-issem, -issēs, -isset, etc.

Similarly, **nōlō**, I do not wish; **mālō**, I wish rather, prefer.

Present	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nōl-im, -is, -it, \text{etc.} \\ māl-im, -is, -it, \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$
Imperfect	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} noll-em, -ēs, -et, \text{etc.} \\ māll-em, -ēs, -et, \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$
Perfect	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nōlu-erim, -eris, -erit, \text{etc.} \\ mālu-erim, -eris, -erit, \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$
Pluperfect	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nōlu-issem, -issēs, \text{etc.} \\ mālu-issem, -issēs, \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$

eō, I go.

Present	e-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Imperfect	ī-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.
Perfect	ī(v)-erim, ¹ -eris, -erit, etc.
Pluperfect	ī(v)-issem, ¹ -issēs, -isset, etc.

¹ In the form ierim, iissem, etc., the I is shortened before a vowel.

fiō, I am made, become.

Present **fi-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.**
 Imperfect **fi-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.**
 Perfect **factus sim, sis, sit, etc.**
 Pluperfect **factus essem, essēs, esset, etc.**

ferō, I carry, bring.

Present **fer-am, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant.**
 Imperfect **fer-rem, -rēs, -ret, -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.**
 Perfect **tul-erim, -eris, -erit, etc.**
 Pluperfect **tul-issem, -issēs, -isset, etc.**

PASSIVE VOICE OF **ferō**.

Tense.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present	feror, ferris, fertur, ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	fer-ar, fer-āris, (-āre), fer-ātur, fer-āmур, fer-āmī, fer-antur
Future	fer-ar, -ēris, (-ēre), -ētur, etc.	
Imperfect	ferē-bar, -bāris, (-bāre), -bātur, etc.	fer-rer, -rēris, (-rēre), -rētur, etc.
Perfect	lātus sum, es, etc.	lātus sim, sis, etc.
Fut. Perfect	lātus erō, eris, etc.	
Pluperfect	lātus erām, erās, etc.	lātus essem, essēs, etc.
Infinitive mood	ferri (pres.); lātus esse (perf.); lātum īri (fut.).	

*LECTIō.**Indutiomari mors.*

Indutiomarus, unus ē Trēverōrum principibūs, iam diū certāmen contrā Labiēnum, Caesaris lēgātū, sustinēbat. Iamque māiōre in diēs contemptiōne ad castra Labiēnī, colloquendī aut territandī causā, accēdēbat. Equitēs ēius tāla cōniciunt, et magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostris datō responsō sub vesperum discēdunt.

Subitō Labiēnus omnem equitātum ēmittit; *praecipit* ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarū, *neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum* interfectum viderit; magna prōpōnit eis qui occiderint *praemīa*.

Comprobat hominis consilium *fortūna*, atque Indutiomarus in *ipsō* flūminis vadō dēprehensus interficitur, caputque ēius in castra refertur.

praecipit, he instructs (*praē-cipiō*. 3. -cēpī, -ceptum).
ūnum, alone, only.

neu quis . . . quam, and that no one was to wound any (of the enemy) until. . . .

comprobat *fortūna*, the result justifies.

ipsō, very, actual.

Vivā Vōce:

1. quis erat Indutiomarus?
2. quōmodo Rōmānōrum contemptōnem significābat?
3. quid equitēs ēius faciēbant?
4. quae praecepta Labiēnus suīs dat?
5. quibus praemia prōpōnit?
6. ubi dēprehenditur Indutiomarus?
7. quō refertur caput?

• What sort of verb is *terrītāre*?

Explain the tense of *vidērīt*, *occūderīnt*.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. tertiā vigiliā proficisci — (1st pers., pl. fut. indic.).
2. nāvēs — ancoram dēligāt — erant.
3. tua erg — mē fidēs grāt- est.
4. quam māturrimē s — proficiscendum putā —.
5. quam minimum spatī Rōmānīs ad sē armand — dat — est.
6. hostēs — equitātū repulsī — (fut. perf. indic.).

Verbō reddenda:

1. quantō cum labōre superāvinus!
2. impetus dē imprōvisō fit.
3. prō suīs in eum beneficiīs.
4. propter frigora sub pellibus manētur (*impers.*).
5. rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā.
6. hōc dētrīmentum vōbīs, mīlitēs, aequō animō ferendum est.

LESSON 34.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY TENSES—
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Of the six tenses of the Indicative mood, those that refer to present *or* future time are known as Primary; those that refer to past time are known as Secondary *or* Historic.

The Primary Tenses are:

- (1) *Present*, *ōrō*, I ask *or* am asking.
- (2) *Future*, *ōrābō*, I shall ask *or* shall be asking.
- (3) *Future Perfect*, *ōrāverō*, I shall have asked *or* shall have been asking.
- (4) *Present Perfect*,¹ *ōrāvī*, I have asked *or* have been asking.

The Secondary (Historic) tenses are:

- (1) *Imperfect*, *ōrābam*, I was asking *or* I asked.
- (2) *Pluperfect*, *ōrāveram*, I had asked, *or* had been asking.
- (3) *Past Perfect*,² *ōrāvī*, I asked.

N.B.—The form of the ‘Present’ perfect in Latin is the same as that of the ‘Past’ perfect.

¹ Also called the Perfect ‘with have.’

² Also called the ‘Aorist’ Perfect.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The time of a verb or verbs in a Dependent clause is usually assimilated to that of the Principal verb. Thus a Primary tense in the Principal clause is generally followed by a Primary tense or tenses in the Dependent clause, and a Secondary tense in the Principal clause is generally followed by a Secondary tense or tenses in the Dependent clause.

This is known as the *Sequence of Tenses*.

Primary tenses of the Subjunctive follow the present, future, future perfect, and present perfect tenses of the Indicative mood, and the Imperative mood.

Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive follow the imperfect, pluperfect, past perfect, and usually the historic present (v. p. 146) tenses of the Indicative mood.

EXAMPLES OF THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Primary Time.

Principal Verb.	Dependent Verb.	Meaning.
ōrō	faciās	<i>I ask you to do it.</i>
ōrābō	faciās	<i>I shall ask you to do it.</i>
ōrāverō	faciās	<i>I shall have asked you to do it.</i>
ōrāvī	faciās	<i>I have asked you to do it.</i>
ōrā	faciat!	<i>ask him to do it!</i>

Secondary Time.

Principal Verb.	Dependent Verb.	Meaning.
ōrābam	facerēs	<i>I was asking (or asked) you to do it.</i>
ōrāveram	facerēs	<i>I had asked you to do it.</i>
ōrāvī	facerēs	<i>I asked you to do it.</i>

Historic Present.

The pres. Indic., used in narrative for vividness instead of the past perf., is generally followed by a secondary tense of the Subj.

e.g. **praecipit oīnēs p̄eterent Indutiomarum** (Less. 33).
*he instructs (i.e. instructed) all to make for
 Indutiomarus.*

monent nē sē despiceret.

they warn (i.e. warned) him not to despise them.

The rules for the Sequence of Tenses apply, with modifications which will be duly noted, to all kinds of Dependent Clauses (Final, Consecutive, etc.), to the subj. in *ōrātiō obliqua*, Indirect Questions, etc.

Latīnē reddite :

1. After the death of Orgetorix (*-igis*, m.) the Helvētiī none-the-less try to do what (*id quod*; they had resolved-on, (namely) to-leave (*say 'that (ut) they may leave'*) their territory.
2. They persuade their neighbours to set-out (*say 'that (ut) they may set-out'*) along-with them.

3. The road was so narrow and difficult that (*ut*) scarcely one cart at-a-time (*v. Less. 27*) could-be-pulled (*imperf. subj. pass. of dūcō*. 3).
4. Dunnorix persuaded the Sēquani to-allow (*as in sent. 1 and 2*) the Helvētiī to go through their territory, and to exchange hostages.
5. He exhorted the soldiers to-remember (*as in sent. 1, 2, and 4*) their former valour, and-not (*nēve*) to-be-disturbed.
6. The general will have ordered the troops not-to (*nē*) plunder on the march.
7. The German women began with outstretched hands to implore their husbands (*vir, ī, m.*) not-to (*nē*) deliver them to the Romans.
8. Caesar commanded (*hist. pres.*) Volusēnus to return to him as-soon-as-possible, when he had examined (*explōrō*. 1) everything (*say 'all things having been examined'*).
9. Urge-on (your) horses, cavalry, in-order-that (*ut*) you may overtake the fugitives.
10. The leaders of the natives had proclaimed (*prō-nuntiō*. 1) that-no-one (*nē quis*) should leave his place.

LECTIō.

- *Rōmānī Gergovium oppugnauit.*

Consecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar *receptuī canī*, tōtiusque exercitūs *signa constituī* iussit. Legiōnis decimae milites quod iussi sunt faciunt; at reliquārum legiōnum milites, nōn exauditō sonō tubae,

'quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ab tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt quod nōn virtūte consequī possent, neque finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam inūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbīs partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostēs intrā portās esse existimārent, sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiāe dē inūrō vestēm argentumque iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu mulieribus atque infantibus nocērent: nonnullae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant.

receptui canere, *v.* Less. 23.

signa constituere, to halt (lit. 'to pitch standards').

retinēbantur, the imperf. tense here expresses endeavour.

'The officers were trying to restrain the men, but . . .'

prius . . . quam, until (often written as one word—

priusquam).

cum, as, because.

neu, and not (=nēve).

manūs, *sc.* amīcōrum.

What would be the longer form of *appropinquārunt* in l. 7 above?

LESSON 35.

THE LOCATIVE CASE—PLACE AND TIME.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

The mother language from which Latin was derived had a special case for denoting position (*locus*) in place or time.

This case ended in *-i* and was called the Locative. Relics of it survive in the words **domī**, at home; **herī**, yesterday; **vesperi**, in the evening; and possibly **ibi**, there; **ubi**? where?

In Classical Latin the locative often looks like a genitive, dative, or ablative; and the ablative is often used instead.

Rule. In the 1st and 2nd declensions the locative, looking like the genitive, is used for names of Towns in the sing.; the ablative is used for names of Towns in the pl. In the 3rd decl. the dat. and abl. cases are used for names of Towns both in the sing. and pl.

e.g. 1st decl. **Rōmae**,¹ at Rome (*sing.*); **Athēnīs**, at Athens (*pl.*).

2nd decl. **Corinthī**, at Corinth (*sing.*); **Philippīs**,
• • at Philippi (*pl.*).

3rd decl. **Karthāginī**, or **-e**, at Carthage (*sing.*).
Gādibūs, at Gādēs (*Cadiz*) (*pl.*)

Of 4th decl. nouns no locative is found.

¹ Originally **Rōmāī**.

In the 5th decl. the locative ends in **-ē**, *e.g. hodiē*, to-day; *postridiē*, the next day; *pridiē*, the day before.

The following are common locatival phrases:

humī, on the ground.

bellī, **militiae**, at the war (*opp. to domī*).

rūri, in the country (*rūs*, *rūris*, n.).

terrā marīque, by land and sea.

foris, out of doors.

PLACE.

Place where

is denoted (a) by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

e.g. is vīcus in valle positus est.

that village lay in a valley.

dum haec in Venetī geruntur.

while this was going on among the Venetī.

hostēs in insidiīs latēbant.

the enemy were lying hid in ambush.

(b) by the ablative without a preposition.

(1) frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives.

e.g. Britannī nōtissimīs locīs pugnābant.

the Britons were fighting in places very familiar to them.

apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs constituit.

he drew up the ships on an open and level shore.

regularly, when **tōtus** is used.

e.g. tōtis trepidātūr castrīs.

the whole camp was in a state of confusion.¹

¹ Literally, 'it was agitated (*impers.*) in the entire camp.'

exsulēs tōtā Galliā conveniēbant.

exiles throughout Gaul were assembling.

(2) common in Caesar with the verb *contineō*.

e.g. *dux exercitum castrīs, vallō continuit.*

the general kept his army in camp, within the stockade.

(3) This ablative is also found of physical attributes.

e.g. *animō perturbor, I am disturbed in mind.*

(c) by the locative of names of Towns (v. p. 149).

Corcȳrae, at Corcȳra; Brundisi, at Brindisi, etc.

Place whither (*to where*)

is denoted by the accusative with a preposition.

e.g. *Caesar ad Galliam proficiscitur.*

Rhēnus in mare influit.

Alexander in Aegyptum pervenit.

N.B.—ad, as opp. to in, means 'towards,' as opp. to 'right into.'

ad Galliam, to the frontier of Gaul; in Galliam, to some place in Gaul.

Exceptions.

Names of towns, small islands, and the words **domum**, *to home, homewards*; and **rūs**, *to the country*, are not preceded by a preposition.

e.g. *Capuam, to Capua (town); Minturnās, to Minturnae (town); Dēlum, to Dēlos (small island).*

¹ Or Brundisiī. The loc. of nouns in -ium varies.

Place whence (from where)

is denoted by the ablative with a preposition, except in the words given in the exceptions to 'place whither.'

e.g. *ex Asiā transīs in Eurōpam.*

from Asia you cross into Europe.

but Chiō profectī diē quartō Corinthum pervēnimus.

We reached Corinth on the fourth day after leaving Chios (small island).

also **domō**, *from home*; **rūre** *from the country*.

N.B.—Where towns or small islands are preceded by prepositions, e.g. **ad**, **apud**, **ex**, the preposition means 'to, in, or from the neighbourhood of.'

Extent of space

is put in the accusative case.

e.g. *fossa quindecim pedēs lata, a trench 15 feet broad.*

circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus est.

he advanced about four miles.

TIME.

Duration of Time

is expressed by the accusative case.

e.g. *complūrēs annōs Rōmac habitābam.*

I lived at Rome for several years.

diēs continuōs quinque Caesar cōpiās ēduxit.

Time at which (point of Time)

is expressed by the ablative case.

e.g. *prīmā lūce, at dawn; sōlis occāsū, at sunset.*

secundā vigiliā ē castrīs ēgressī sumus.

Latīnē dīcenda:

1. Queen Victoria died (*ē vītā ex-cēlō. 3. -cessī*) aged 81
• years.
2. About midnight a letter was brought (*dē-ferō, ferre, -tulī, -lātum*) to Caesar.
3. Pericles ruled (*prae-sum*) Athens (*dat.*) for 40
years.
4. The enemy do not keep themselves in-their position.
5. Shouts (*sing.*) arose (*imperf.*) throughout-the entire
town.
6. The leader of the Britons concealed (*occultō. 1.*)
himself in-places woody and difficult-of-passage
(*impeditus, a, um.*).
7. Some (writers) have written (that) in Britain at-
the-time-of (*sub. abl.*) the winter-solstice (*brūma,*
ae, f.) there is night for 30 days in-succession
(*continuus, a, um.*).
8. Horātius, the famous poet, once (*olim*) journeyed
from Rome to Brundisium with a friend. From
Rome they went first to Arīcia (*ae. f.*), from
Arīcia to Forum Appī, thence (*inde*) to Anxur
(-uris. m.), from Anxur to Formiae (-ārum. f.),
from Formiae to Capua, thence to Caudium, from
Caudium to Beneventum, from Beneventum to
Canusium, thence to Rubī (-ōrum. m.), from Rubī
to Brundisium.

LESSON 36.

*THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
IN ōrātiō obliqua.*

As a general rule the Subj. is used instead of the Indic. in Subordinate clauses in ōrātiō obliqua.

The rules for the Sequence of Tenses apply; a Primary tense of the subj. being used if the tense of the indic. is Primary, and a Secondary if Secondary.

e.g. reperiēbat montēs, quī **impendērent**, ab hostibus tenērī.

he found out that the mountains, which overshadowed, were held by the enemy.

(ōrātiō recta, impendent).

certior factus est eōs, quī nūper sē **dēdidissent**, iterum inter sē coniūrāre.

he was informed that those who had recently surrendered were again conspiring together.

(ōrātiō recta, dēdidērunt).

The Indicative is used when the *fact* is emphasised.

e.g. Labiēnō scribit ut eīs legiōnibus, quae **sunt** apud eum, nāvēs instituat.

he writes to Labienus to prepare ships with those legions that are with him.

N.B.—Sometimes the actual tense of the Indic. in the *recta* is kept in the Subj. of the *obliqua*, in spite of the rules. In the subjoined instances 1, 3, and 5 are general truths; 2 and 4 are graphic.

Anglice reddenda:

1. *cognovit Germānōs, quī eis Rhēnum incolant, dēfēcisse.*
2. *dixit eis licēre, quascumque in partēs velint, proficisci.*
3. *dixit consuēsse dēos immortālēs secundiōrēs interdum rēs eis concēdere quōs. ulcisci velint.*
4. *hīs dux respondit licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus consīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud se et a sē auxilium petant.*
5. *dēmonstrat Caesar vērum (*proper*) nōn esse eōs, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, alienōs occupāre.*
6. *speculātōrēs Caesarī renuntiāvērunt pulvērem, māiōrem quam consuētūdō ferret, in eā partē vidērī in quam legiō iter fēcisset.*

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. *reperiēbat Gallōs, quī ea loca incol—, a Belg— expulsōs esse.*
2. *mōs est Suēvōrum mercātōr— vendēre ea quae bell— cēp— (*perf. indic.*).*
3. *anīmum advertit dux magn— hostiū cōpi— instructās esse.*

4. hōc proeliō Nerviōrum gens prope ad interne*cī*—
redact— est (*red-igō*. 3. *-ēgī*, *-actum*).
5. ab eō loc— circiter mīlia pass— septem prōgress—
sumus.
6. Caesar quōrum oper— lēgātum interfect— esse
sciēbat eōs comprehend— iussit (*rel. before its*
antecedent).

Verbō reddite:

1. omnēs sanctissimō iūrciūrandō adactī sunt
(*adigō*. 3).
2. consilia dē bellō in-cantur!
3. omnia in virtūte posita existimārent!
4. Rhodanus nonnullis locīs vadō trans-ītur.
5. circum-itīs hostium castrīs.

Note in sent. 2, 4, 5, that **eō¹** and its compounds can be used in the passive voice.

LECTIō.

Ambiorix victoriā sublātus Nerviōs sollicitat.

Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant ēius regnō fīnitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque subsequī iubet. Aduātucīs concitātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pērvēnit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās

¹ Only impersonally, *e.g.* *itur*, *ibātur*, *irētur*, *ītū*, *itum*.

accēperint, iniūriis occāsionem dīmittant: lēgātōs duōs interfēctōs esse magnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmonstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem.

Facile hāc orātiōne Nerviis persuādet.

victōriā, the one referred to was that gained by Ambiorix, one of the chiefs of the Eburōnēs, over two of Caesar's *lēgātī*.

nē . . . dīmittant, not to let slip.

interisse, for *interiis* perf. infin. act. of *inter-eō*, *-īre*, *-īi*.

negōtium, tū, n., difficulty, trouble.

adiūtor, ūris, m., helper.

Put from *lēgātōs duōs . . . adiūtōrem* into *orātiō recta*.

Explain why *accēperint* and *hiemet* are in the subj. mood.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quōrum Ambiorix princeps erat?
2. quibus verbis ūsus Nerviōs incitat?
3. quot legiōnēs cum Cicerōne hiemābant?
4. quā ratiōne (*plan*) ūsus Ambiorix eum superāre in-animō-habēbat (*intended*)?

LESSON 37.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
IN *ōrātiō obliqua*—(continued).

After Secondary tenses of the Indic. the pluperf. Subj. in *ōrātiō obliqua* regularly represents the fut. perf. Indic. of *ōrātiō recta*.

e.g. *polliciti sunt quae imperasset factūrōs esse.*

they promised to do what he ordered.

(*recta*, *faciēmus quae imperāveris.*)

*barbarōrum ducēs dixērunt illis reservātum īri
quaecumque Rōmāni reliquissent.*

*the leaders of the natives said that whatever the
Romans left would be reserved for them.*

(*recta*, *vōlīs reservābuntur quacumque . . . reli-
querint.*)

*dicit¹ sē eōs hostiū numerō habitūrum, nisi iussa
fēcissent.*

*he says he will treat them as enemies if they do not
obey his orders.*

(*recta*, *egō vōs . . . habēbō, nisi fēcerīs.*)

After Primary tenses of the Indic. the perf. Subj. is used.

e.g. *nisi obsidēs dederint, sēsē cīvitātem bellō perse-
cūtūrum dēmonstrat.*

*he points out that unless they give hostages, he will
make war on their state.*

(*recta*, *nisi obsidēs dederīs . . . persequar.*)

¹ Historic Present.

Latīnē reddite:

The Gallic race (*genus, eris, n.*) is (one) of great ingenuity, and very-ready (*aptus, a, um*) at-imitating (*ad with gerundive*) and making anything (*n. pl. of omnis, e*) which is imparted by-anybody (*ā quōque*). Accordingly they undermined our outwork the more skilfully because (*r. Less. 28*) there are large iron-mines in-their-country (*ā quāl eos*), and every kind of mine (*pl.*) is known and familiar (to them). Moreover they had furnished the entire wall with towers in all directions, and had covered them with hides. Then by frequent sorties day (*adj.*) and night (*adj.*) they were either setting-fire-to the outwork or attacking the soldiers engaged in (*in. abl.*) the work (*opus, eris, n.*). In-addition (*praelcreā*) they delayed (the completion of) our mines by (thrusting in) stakes burnt and sharpened at the ends, and by melted pitch and by stones of great weight.

VOCABULARY.

ingenuity, *sollertia, ae. f.*

I impart, *trā-dō. 3. -didi, -ditum.*

I undermine, *cūniculis sub-trahō. 3. -traxī, -tractum.*

skilfully, *scienter (compar. -ius).*

familiar, *ūsitatūs, a, um.*

I furnish (with boards), *contabulō. 1.*

in all directions, *ex omni parte.*

burnt at the ends, *praeustus, a, um*} note the force of
sharpened . . . *praeacūtus, a, um*} the *prae.*

Anglicē reddite:

Direct Speech.

Indirect Speech.

Helvētiōrum lēgātī cum Helvētiōrum lēgātī cum
Caesare agunt:

(1) sī pācem populus Rō-
mānus cum Helvētiis
faciet, in eam partem
ibunt atquo ibi erunt
Helvētiī ubi eōs tū
constitueris atque esse
volueris :

(2) sīn bellō persecūi per-
sevērābis reminiscere
(*2nd sing. imperative of
reminiscor*) et veteris
incommodi populi Rō-
mānī et pristinae vir-
tutis Helvētiōrum :

(3) quod (*as to the fact that*)
imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum
adortus es, nē ob eam
rem aut tuae virtutī
magnopere tribueris
aut nōs despexeris :

(4) (nōs) ita ā patribus |
didicimus ut (*that*)
magis virtūte quam
dolō contendāmus.

Caesare ēgērunt :

(1) sī pācem populus Rō-
mānus cum Helvētiis
faceret, in eam partem
itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs
Helvētiōs ubi eōs
Caesar constituisset
atque esse voluisset :

(2) sīn bellō persecūi per-
sevērāret, reminiscerē-
tur et veteris . . .
Helvētiōrum :

(3) quod imprōvīsō ūnum
pāgum adortus esset,
nē ob eam rem . . .
tribueret, aut ipsōs
despiceret :

(4) sē ita . . . didicisse ut
magis virtūte
contenderent.

Carefully compare the two forms of the above passage and note the changes in mood and tense.

Point out two fut. perf. tenses in the indic. which are represented in *ōrātiō obliqua* by the pluperf. subj.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. eō quam frequent— (superl. of *frequens*) convēnērūpt.
2. — noctem nāvēs solvit.
3. circum oppid— trīn— hibernīs hiemāre constit—.
4. quis libertāt— (acc.) quam servit— condiciōnēs nōn mallet?
5. negat sē iter per fīn— suōs dat—. (fut. infin. act. of *dō*).
6. (imperāvit) sī sē interfic— nollent, arma pōn—.
7. oīn̄nem sp— salūtis in celeritāt— positam existim—! (2nd pl. imper. act.).
8. Galba mīlitēs certiōr— facit sē ex labōre refic—. (imperf. subj. act.), post dat— sign— (abl. absol.) ē castr— ērump—. (imperf. subj. act.).

LESSON 38.

INDIRECT COMMAND AND PETITION.

General Rule:

Verbs of *commanding, asking, beseeching, advising, persuading* and the like, are followed by **ut(i)** (*affirmative*), **nē** (*negative*) with the subjunctive.

Such are :

ōrō. 1., I ask, beg.	imperō. 1., I command (<i>dat.</i>).
rogō. 1., I ask (<i>a question</i>).	mandō. 1., I order (<i>dat.</i>).
petō. 3., I beseech.	cōgō. 3., I compel.
postulō. 1., I demand.	moneō. 2., I advise. ,
impetrō. 1., I obtain (<i>by asking</i>).	hortor, cohortor. 1., I encourage.
	persuādeō. 2., I persuade, advise (<i>dat.</i>).

The above are very common and should be learnt by heart. **cōgō** often takes the acc. and infin., as **iubeō** always does,

e.g. iubeō tē hōc facere,

but imperō tibi ut hōc faciās.

Note.—(1) The rules for Sequence of Tenses apply in all cases.

*(2) ut(i) is sometimes omitted, especially after *ōrō, rogō, moneō* (v. Less. 31, 34).*

Anglice transferre:

1. Caesar légātīs imperāvit ut quam plūrimās possent
• nāvēs aedificārent.
2. dux prōnuntiārī iussit nē quis ab locō discēderet.
3. postulāvit Ariovistus nē Caesar bellum Aeduīs
inferret.
4. légātū ad eum mittit rogātū ut sibi mīlitibus-
que parcat.
5. Britannī a Caesare ut sibi ignosceret petiērunt.
6. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātur ut suōs
magnis praeemiīs excitent. .
7. Ambiorix Sabinum monet et ūrat ut suae ac
mīlitum salūtī consulat.
8. Caesar Cassivellaunō, Britannōrum ducī, imperat
nē sociīs noceat.
9. Nerviī fīnitimīs suīs persuāserant ut eandem bellī
fortūnam experīrentur.
10. hostium légātī a Caesare impetrāvērunt ut sibi
agrisque suīs parceret.
11. Caesar per litterās Trebōniō mandāverat nē per
vim oppidum expugnārī paterētur.
12. dux Nerviīs imperābit ut māiōrēs nātū mulieres-
que ab iniūriā prohibeant.

Latinē reddenda:

1. The enemy beseech Caesar to use clemency towards them.
2. The general ordered (*mandō*. 1.) the spies to find-out Ariovistus' plans, and to report (*referō*) them to him.
3. They could not be persuaded (*v.* Less. 25) to delay (any) longer.
4. The Helvētiī thought (that) they would forcibly (*per vim*) compel the Allobrogēs to suffer them to go through their territory.
5. The general will encourage his soldiers to fight bravely.
6. The Aeduī ask (*petō ā*) Vercingetorix (*-igis, m.*) to impart (to them) the plans of campaign (*bellum gerendum*).
7. Caesar saw that the Germans were with-difficulty persuaded (*impellō*. 3.) not to come into Gaul.
8. They earnestly (*magnopere*) besought him not to advance (any) further.

LECTIō.

Orgetorix Helvētiis, ut ē finibus suis exeant, persuādet.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ultiſſimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messallā et M. Pūpiō Pīsōne consuli- bus, regnī cupiditāte *inductus* cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent: (dixit) per facile esse tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā
Helvētiī continentur.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus
facile fīnitimīs bellum inferre possent. Prō multitūdine
autem hominum fīnēs eōrum angustōs esse dēmon-
strāvit.

Hīs et tālibus ratiōnībus adductī fīnēs suōs relinquere
statuērunt. •Orgetorix dux dēlectus Casticō Sēquanō
persuādet ut regnum in cīvitātē suā occupāret, itemque
Dumnorīgī Aeduō (persuādet) ut idem cōnārētur.

dītissimus, superl. of dīs (dives), rich.

inductus, tempted (usually in a bad sense, as opp. to
adductus).

ratiō, ōnis, f., reason.

item, also, besides.

Dumnorīgī, the nom. is Dumnorix.

•
What word shows that *persuādet* in l. 14 is historic
present?

LESSON 39.

QUĪN AND QUŌMINUS followed by the Subjunctive.

The word **quīn** has two uses:

(1) An interrogative and a negative = *why not?*

e.g. **quīn** **conscendimus** **equōs**?
why not mount our horses?

It then becomes a mere conjunction, as **quīn etiam**, *moreover, nay even.*

(2) A relative and a negative, used in the meaning of '*who not*,' '*but*,' '*that*,' '*but that*,' '*without*,' etc., after

(a) negatives, *e.g.* **nēmō**, **nihil**, **nullus**; quasi-negatives,
e.g. **vix**, scarcely; or questions equivalent to a negative.

(b) negative¹ clauses of doubt or hesitation" (**nōn** **dubitō**, **nīl** **dubium** **est**, **dubitārī** **nōn** **potest**); or hindrance (**nōn** **retineō**, **nōn** **dēterreō**); or refusal (**nōn** **recūsō**); or waiting (**nōn** **exspectō**).

(c) such phrases as **nōn longē abest**, it is not far from (*always impers.*); **facere nōn possum**, I cannot help.

e.g. **nēmō** **est** **quin** **hōc** **sciat**.
there is no one who does not know this (here
quīn = *qui nōn*.²)

¹ After affirmative clauses the Infinitive is used.

² *quin* = *quae non*, or *quod non* is less common

e.g. **nulla** **erat** **cīvitās** **quin** (= *quae nōn*) **Caesari** **pārēret**.

quis **vestrum** est **quīn** amīcō succurreret ?
who is there of you who would not help a friend ?
 facere nōn potuī **quīn** ad tē scriberem.
I could not help writing to you.

Anglicē vertite :

1. dixit nīl esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliac Helvētiī
 *plūrinūm possent.
2. Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō quīn
 ipse sibi morteīn consīciverit (*consciscō*. 3.)
3. nīl dubium erat quīn dē captīvīs hostēs grav-
 issimum supplicium sūmerent.
4. Gerīnānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn in nostrōs tēla
 cōnicerent.
5. dux dubitandum sibi nōn existimābat quīn ad
 hostēs proficiscerētur.
6. nōn longē aberat quīn nāvēs parātae essent.

quōminus, *from (=ut eō minus, in order that by this the less., v. Less. 42)* is used after verbs of refusing, or hindrance (*recūsō, impediō, prohibeō* etc.).

e.g. nōn recūsāmus **quōminus** sub imperiō populī
 Rōmānī sīmus.

*we do not refuse to be (lit. 'by which the less we may be') under the sway of the Roman
 * people.*

nāvēs ventō tenēbantur **quōminus**, in portum
 venīre possent.

the ships were kept by the wind from making harbour.

Latinē vertenda:

1. In this crisis no-one was so brave that-he-was-not (*quīn*) frightened.
2. The mere thought (*exspectatiō*, f.) of death cannot hinder men from (*quōminus*) rushing (*irrumpō*).
3.) bravely on (their) foes.
3. He said that it could not be doubted that (*quīn*), if they were conquered (*what tense and mood?*), they would lose (*āmittō*. 3) their liberty.
4. Who would refuse (*imperf. subj.*) to (*quōminus*) die for his country ?
5. The war-ships were nearly ready for launching (*say 'it was not far (multum) distant but that the war-ships could be launched'*). .
6. We do not refuse to (*quīn*) fight (*armīs contendō*. 3) if we are attacked (*pres. subj.*).
7. When news of this battle arrived (*say 'this battle having been heard'*) the greater part of Aquītānia voluntarily (*ultrō*) sent hostages to the conqueror.
8. He could not prevent (*dēterr-eō*. 2. -*uī*) his friend from (*quīn*) facing (*sub-eō*, -*ire*, -*iī*) the danger along with him.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. eōs hortātus est — in eā sententiā perman—.
2. nil in agrīs frūment— erat quīn succ—
(3rd sing. pluperf. subj. pass. of succīdō).
3. respondērunt mīlītēs sēsē nōn recūs— quōminus summ— perīcul— occur—.
4. quid t— impediit quōm— ad mē venī— ?
5. milit— persuādē— (fut. indic. act.) utī arma capi— et in hostēs contend—.
6. pax exspect— (gerundive) nōn est ab eīs qu— ultrō bellum inferunt.
7. nēmō in oppid— fuit quīn vulner— ess—.
8. dīcēbant omnēs exspectā— diūtius nōn oportēre qu— ad castra īrē— (3rd sing. imperf. subj. pass. of eō).

Note.—The Infin. is often used (instead of the *quōminus* constr.) after verbs of refusing or hindrance.

e.g. Belgae Cimbrōs intrā fīnēs suōs *ingredi* prohibuērunt.
hostēs nostrōs nāvibus *ēgredi* prohibēnt.
quid est quod hōc *fieri* impedit?
quis prō patriā *mori* recūsāret? (cf. sent. 4, p. 168).

LESSON 40.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. *Decline in Sing. and Pl.* princeps, nōbilis, homo.
2. *Give the Acc. Sing., Gen. Pl., Gender, and Meaning of* contumēlia, nāvis, praeium, fremitus, eques, mons, numerus, mōs, commeātus.
3. How is the perf. subj. used in *Independent* clauses?
4. *Give the 3rd pers. sing. and 2nd pers. pl. of the imperf. subj. act. of* postulō, cō, laccessō, and nōlō, *and give in full (either orally or on paper) the pres. subj. pass. of* āmittō, ferō; *and the pluperf. subj. of* colloquor *and* reminiscor.
5. How many kinds of *Independent* uses of the subj. do you know? Give an instance of each.
6. *Give the Principal Parts of* dēferō, reperiō, dēdō, scribō, ulciscor, intereō, adorior, irrumpō.
7. *Give the rules for expressing Place Whither, and Place Whence.* What exceptions are there?
8. *Give an example of the use of* (1) the supine in -ū; (2) quōminus; (3) paenitet; (4) a verb governing the dat. in the act. being used impersonally in the pass.

9. *Anglice transferre:*

quam primum.	cis Rhēnum.
omnibus rēbus comparātis.	in animō habēre.
omnēs ad rīpam Rhodanī	nōlite id facere!
conveniant!	
tērritandī causā.	quīna castra.
domī militiaeque.	plūrimum posse.

10. *What is meant by (a) the Sequence of Tenses;
(b) the historic present?*11. *Latīnē reddite:*

1. Cicero replied that they must send hostages.
2. The Germans said they could be useful friends to the Romans, if they (*illī*) wished-for (*pres. subj. of volō*) (their) friendship.
3. The general ordered that provisions should be brought without delay.
4. They suffered-to-elapse (*inter-mittō*. 3. *-misi*) no time throughout (say 'of') the whole winter without (*quīn*) stirring-up the states, promising money (*pl.*), (and) sending ambassadors across the Rhine.

12. *Account for the oblique cases in*

1. Gādibus annōs quinque habitābam.
2. Capua Rōmā milia passuum circiter cxx abest.
3. vēre agrōs arāinus.

13. *Parse nollet, mallētis, potuerit, ferris, circumitīs.*

LESSON 41.

FINAL CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing **purpose** or **intention** (Lat. *fīnis, is, m., an aim*) are expressed in various ways.

- (a) by the supine in *-um* after verbs of motion, *v. Less. 8.*
- (b) by the gerundive with *ad, causā, v. Less. 18 and 19.*
- (c) less frequently by the gerund with *ad, causā, v. Less. 17.*
- (d) by **ut(i)**, *that, in order that* (affirmative), **né**, *in order that not, lest* (negative), and by **relative pronouns** and **relative adverbs**, all foll. by the Subj.

It is of (d) that this Lesson and the next treat.

e.g. fabrōs praemittit ut
qui } mūrōs subruant.

he sends forward engineers to (in order that they may) undermine the walls.

mulierēs cum implorābant né sē in servitūtem trāderet.

the women implored him not to (in order that he might not) deliver them into slavery.

This Final Subj. is an extension of the use of the Jussive Subj. (Less. 31). Thus :

he sends forward engineers . . . let them undermine.
the women implored him . . . let him not send.

Fill in the spaces in the following table, following the rules for the Sequence of Tenses:

fabrōs praemittit ut (qui) mūrōs subruant.

fabrōs praemittet ut (qui) mūrōs —.

fabrōs praemīsit (*pres. perf.*) ut (qui) mūrōs —.

fabrōs praemīsit (*aor. perf.*) ut (qui) mūrōs —.

fabrōs praemīserat ut (qui) mūrōs —.

Anglicē dicenda:

1. Caesar prope hostēs castra posuit cō consiliō ut frūmentō eōs interclūderet.
2. magnīs itineribus contendit nē quid spati ad sē colligendōs hostibus dētūr.
3. barbarī ut turpitūdinem pristinae fugae dēlērent fortissimē pugnābant.
4. speculātōrēs dīmittit explōrātum quō commodissimē itinere vallem transīre possit.
5. lēgātum misit qui provinciaē praeesset.
6. alium castrīs locum, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, dēlēgit.
7. Arioūstus mīlia hominū xvi qui nostrōs mūnitiōne prohibērent mīsit.
8. castella dux constituit ibi-que tormenta collocat nē hostēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Parse *explōrātum* in sent. 4.

Latīnē reddenda:

1. Labiēnus was left on the continent in order that he might guard the harbours.
2. Ambassadors came to him to (*qui*) promise to give (*fut. infin.*) hostages.
3. Caesar commands (*imperō*) the enemy not-to (*nē*) injure his allies.
4. The ambassadors said they would return on the third day; meanwhile they begged (*petō. 3*) him not-to move his camp nearer (them).
5. There were no other ships in-which the army could be taken-back (*reportō. 1*).
6. The general sent (men) to the officers to (*qui*) announce that-they-should-not (*nē*) attack-the-enemy (*hostēs proeliō lacessere. 3*).
7. He spoke in a louder (*clārus, a, um*) voice with this intention (*consilium, ilī. n.*) that most (*maxima pars*) of the soldiers might hear.
8. The Germans have no private land (*say 'nothing of private land'*) lest they become-eager (*studeō. 2*) to-amass (*infin. of parō. 1*) broad territories, (and) lest the more powerful expel from-their properties the more humble.
9. Caesar sent-forward the archers and slingers to dislodge the enemy from (their) position.
10. Labiēnus had been ordered by Caesar not-to engage-battle.

LECTIō.

Rōmānī cum Belgīs conflīgunt.

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī transīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium transeundi fieret, ut impodītōs aggredērentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī transeundī initium faciunt, Caesar pulsīs hostibus suōs in castra reduxit.

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen *Axonam* contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō consiliō ut, sī possent, castellūm cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontem-que interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant.

sī, to see if (after exspectābant).

contendēbātur, impers., *v.* Less. 25.

neutrī, neither side (nom. pl. masc. of neuter, *tra, trum*).

Axona, the modern Aisne, a tributary of the Seine (Sēquana).

minus, here = nōn.

Mention all the Final clauses in this passage.

What instances are there of (a) the gerund, (b) the gerundive, (c) the abl. absol.?

Explain the dat. *magnō ūsuī*.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quid inter hostēs āc Rōmānōs erat? 2. quae hostium pugnae ratiō erat? 3. quae nostrōrum? 4. quōmodo contendēbātur? 5. quō nōmine Axona flūmen hodiē appellātur? 6. quō consiliō hostēs Axonam transīre cōnāntur? 7. quā dē causā Belgae Rēmōrum agrōs populārī voluērunt?

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. Caesar ut hostēs uleisc—— proficisc—— constituerat.
2. cohort—— quinque mittuntur qu—— sociōs nostrōs obsidiōn—— līberā——
3. dux su—— imperāvit nē qu—— tēlum in hostēs reic-
4. Gerīnānī respondent sēsē nōn recūsa—— quīn, sī lācessantur, armīs contend——.
5. Ariovistus sēdecim mīlia hominum, quī nostrōs mūnitioñ—— prohibērent, mī——.
6. Caesar tribūn—— mīlitum monuit ut paulā—— sēsē legiōnēs coniung——.

LESSON 42.

FINAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

In clauses of purpose containing a comparative, **quō** is used instead of *ut*.

e.g. dux suōs cohortātur **quō māiōre** animō contendant.

the leader exhorts his-men, so that they may fight with greater spirit.

magnīs itineribus contendēbat **quō celerius** ad oppidum perveniret.

he was hastening by forced marches in order that he might reach the town quicker.

cf. quōminus, Less. 39.

The relative adverbs **ubi**, where; **quō**, whither; **unde**, whence; **quemadmodum**, how; are followed by the Subj. of purpose.

e.g. locum idōneum dēlegit **ubi** castra pōneret.

he chose a suitable place to (where he might) encamp.

nōn habuērunt **quō sē reciperen**t.

they had not (a place) whither they might retreat.

in locum superiōrem prōgressi sunt **unde** tēla facilius mitterent.

they advanced to higher ground whence they might discharge their weapons more easily.

Anglicē vertite:

- lēgātī ad Caesarem mittuntur quī doceant sēsē parātos esse dē iniūriīs satisfacere.
- nonnullae cohortēs longiore itinere circumductae erant nē ab hostibus conspicerentur.
- īrātō duce nīl dubium est quīn captīvī gravissimō suppliciō adficiantur.
- quam aequissimō locō potest castra pōnit.
- nōn habuērunt barbarī quemadmodum sē dēfenderent.
- castella commūnit quō facilius hostēs prohibēre possit.
- satis causae esso arbitrābatur quārē eum pānīret.
- Venetōrum nāvium carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium factae erant, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent.

Latīnē reddenda:

By-this battle the war with (*say 'of'*) the Venetī and the whole sea-board (*gen.*) was finished. For both (*cum*) all the young-men, and all of maturer-years (*gravior actās, ālis, f.*) in whom there was some(thing of) resource and rank had assembled there (*eō*), and (*tum*) they had collected 'into one spot all their ships. When-these-were-lost (*abl. absol.*) the remainder had no place to retreat-to (*say 'neither whither they might retreat'*) nor means of defending (*say 'how they might defend'*)

their towns. Accordingly they surrendered to Caesar. He decided that they ought to be more-severely punished in order that for-the-future the rights (*sing.*) of ambassadors might be observed more-carefully by natives. Having therefore killed all their senate (*abl. absol.*) he sold the rest as-slaves (*sub corōnā*¹).

VOCABULARY.

rank, *dignitās, ātis*, f.

I surrender, *mē dē-dō*. 3. *-didi, -ditum*.

severely, *graviter*.

for the future, *in reliquum tempus*.

I observe, *conservō*. 1.

I kill, *necō*. 1.

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. nōn cunctand— si— existimāvit quīn proeliō dēcert—.
2. Caesar suis imperāvit nē qu— tēla in hostēs mitt—.
3. hostēs eum magnoper— orābant nē longius prōgred—.
4. ipse tōt— hiem— illic manēre dēcrēverat.
5. consuētūdine su— Caesar sex legiōnēs expedit— dūcēbat.
6. Rōm— di— septimō vēnī.
7. is homo summ— audāci— (*abl.*) fuit.
8. ea, quae ad reficiend— nāv— ūsui* erant, com- portārīn ius—.

¹ corōna, ae, f. *lit.* a chaplet of flowers, because captives for sale were so crowned.

LESSON 43.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Clauses expressing **result** or **consequence** (Lat. *consequor*. 3. *-secūtus*) are, if affirmative, translated by **ut(i)**, *so that*; if negative, by **ut . . . nōn**, *so that not*.

In both cases the mood is the Subjunctive.

Consecutive clauses are introduced by such words as

sīc, ita, tam, adeō; *so*.

is, ea, id, such; **ēiusmodi, of this kind**; **tantus, so great, such**;

and by such verbs as

efficiō. 3., *I effect, bring about*; **accidit**. 3., *it happens or happened*; **fit, factum est, the result is, was**; **futūrum est, the result will be**.

e.g. **hostēs tantam virtūtem praestant ut vix fugentur.**
the enemy show such bravery that they are with difficulty put to flight.

oppidum nātūrā locī sīc mūnītum est ut facile dēfendī posset.
the town was so fortified by its position that it could be easily defended.

ea praesentia animī mīlitum erat ut nēmo locum relinqueret.

such was the soldiers' presence of mind that no one left his place.

The relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, meaning 'such that,' often preceded by such words as **complūrēs**, *several*; **ūnus**, *one, only*; **sōlus**, *alone*, is used consecutively.

e.g. *repertī sunt complūrēs qui scūta manibus revellerent.*

there were found several to (so that they) tear the shields apart with their hands.

Belgae sōlī erant qui nōs prohibuerint.¹

the Belgae were the only people to check us.

v. also p. 210 *Lectio*, l. 5; p. 256, l. 3, 15, 19; p. 258, l. 5.

Anglicē dīcenda:

1. eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt ut hostēs consistere nōn audērent.
2. sed tam celeriter discēdunt ut fugae similis discessus videātur.
3. secūtae sunt tempestatēs quac nostrōs in castrīs continērent.
4. erant ēiusmodī sitūs oppidōrum ut in extrēmīs pōmūnturiīs pōnerentur.
5. Helvētiī dixērunt sē ita ā patribus sūis didicisse ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent.

¹ The *pluperf. subj.* is very rare in consecutive clauses; otherwise we might have expected *prohibuissent*.

6. 'ūnus sum' inquit 'quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut obsidēs darem.'
7. 'non sum is' inquit 'quī mortis periculō terrear.'
8. tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nulla nāvis cursum tenēre posset.
9. collis tam silvestris erat ut nōn facile introrsus (*to within*) perspicī posset.
10. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tam barbarum esse ut ea ignōrāret.
11. accidit ut ex tantō nāvium numerō nulla omnīnō nāvis dēsiderārētur.
12. dixit futurum esse ut legiōne pīmā pulsā reliquae consistere nōn audērent.
13. dixit nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur.
14. in tantō rērum discrīmīne accidit, quod, fierī necesse erat, ut mīlitēs ab signīs discēderent.

Latīnē reddenda :

1. So frightened were the enemy that they did not cease from-flight until they reached (*pluperf. subj.*) their own camp.
2. The nature of the place was of such-a-kind (*ēiusmodī*) that weapons could be hurled (*ad-igō. 3.-ēgi, -actum*) from above.
3. They threw such a number (*multitūdō. inis. f.*) of arms (*arma, ōrum. n. pl.*) over (*dē*) the wall that they reached (*adaequō. 1.*) its summit.

4. So-great a calm suddenly ensued (*ex-sistō*. 3. *-stītī*) that the ships could not move.
5. Such was the temper of the whole army that no one despaired of (*dē*) victory.
6. So-great an appearance of fear did Sabinus manifest, that the enemy dared to come-up-to (accēdō. 3.) the very stockade.
7. Storms of-such-a-kind supervened (*sequor*. 3.) that the work was necessarily suspended.
8. Our-men rushed at the enemy so fiercely and they (i.e. the enemy) fled (*prō-currō*. 3. *-currī*) so quickly, that time (*spatium, tī, n.*) was not given for (*say 'of'*) throwing weapons.
9. It-happened on the same night that there was a full moon.
10. The Suēvi by daily training bring-about that their beasts of burden are (capable) of great exertion (*labor, ūris, m.*).

LECTIō.

Prīmipīlus.

In legiōne Rōmānā, ut in prīmō nostrō librō suprā diximus, circiter tria mīlia sescentī mīlitēs erant. Legiō in cohortēs decem, cohors in manipulōs trēs, manipulus in centuriās duās dīvisus est. Itaque circiter sexāgintā mīlitēs in centuriā erant. Centuriis praeerant centuriōnēs, quōrum cohortī sex, legiōnī sexāgintā erant. Ad proelium committendum

legiō Rōmāna saepissimē aciē triplicē instruēbātur. Prīma aciēs ex quattuor, altera ex tribus, tertia item ex tribus cohortibus consistēbat. Centuriōnum omnīum princeps 'prīmipīlus' appellābātur. Hōc nōmen ab antiquōribus temporib⁹ sumptum est, cum tertia aciēs, quam triāriōs tum vocābant Rōmānī et tōtius exercitūs maximō in honōre habēbant, in pilōs prō manipulis dīvisa est. Decem legiōnis summī centuriōnēs, quōrum singulī in singulīs cohortibus erant, 'prīmī ordinēs' vel 'prīmōrum ordinū centuriōnēs' appellābantur.

The word *prīmipīlus*, *i.* *m.*, is formed from the words **prīmus**, first, and **pīlus**, a division of the *triārii*. Hence *prīmipīlus* is short for **prīmī pīlī centuriō**, which is sometimes written in full.

e.g. P. Sextius Baculus, **prīmī pīlī centuriō**.

Such a person was sometimes said '**prīmū pīlū dūcere**'.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. circiter quot mīlitēs in legiōne erant?
2. legiōnī quot manipulī erant?
3. quot centuriaē?
4. quī centuriīs praeerant?
5. quōmodo plēruinque aciēs Rōmāna instruēbātur?
6. quī erant triāriī?
7. quō nōmine centuriōnum princeps appellābātur?

LESSON 44.

INDIRECT QUESTION.

The verbs in indirect questions are always put in the Subj. mood, the rules for Sequence of Tenses being followed.

Direct Question.	Indirect Question.
quis es ? <i>who are you ?</i>	rogō quis sīs. <i>I ask who you are.</i> rogāvī quis sīs. <i>I have asked who you are.</i> rogābō quis sīs. <i>I shall ask who you are.</i> rogāverō quis sīs. <i>I shall have asked who you are.</i> rogō quis hōc fēcerit. <i>I ask who did (has done) this.</i> similarly—rogābō, rogāvī, rogāverō quis hōc fēcerit.
quis hōc fēcit ? <i>who has done (did) this ?</i>	rogābam quis hōc faceret. <i>I was asking who did (was doing) this.</i> rogāvī quis hōc faceret. <i>I asked who was doing (did) this.</i> rogāvī quis hōc fēcisset. <i>I asked who had done this.</i>

e.g. *quid suum consilium sit* ostendit.

he shows what his plan is.

ēius rēi quae causa esset quaesiit.

he asked what was the reason of that.

(*direct*—*hūius rēi quae causa est?*)

‘whether’ is expressed by **num** or **-ne**.

‘or’ is expressed by **an**.

‘whether¹ . . . or’ is expressed by

$$\left. \begin{matrix} \mathbf{num} \\ \mathbf{utrum} \\ \mathbf{-ne} \end{matrix} \right\} \dots \mathbf{an} \text{ (same as direct).}$$

‘or not’ is expressed by **nec-ne** (*direct*, **an nōn**).

e.g. *dubitabant num captivum igni necarent an in aliud reservarent* (or *dubitabant captivum-ne igni, etc.*).

they were in doubt whether to kill the captive by fire or reserve him for some other fate.

pater filium interrogāvit utrum fecisset nec-ne.

the father asked his son whether he had done it or not.

Anglicē dīcenda vel scribenda:

1. *Caesar ex captīvīs quaerit quamobrem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcōret.*
2. *ab Rēmīs postulāvit quae quantae-que cīvitātēs in armīs essent.*
3. *dux explōrātōribus mandāvit ut quae facerent hostēs cognoscerent.*

¹ The ‘whether’ is sometimes omitted altogether, and **an** or **-ne** with the second clause expresses the whole of the double question.

4. propter arborum multitudinem quid in quāque parte fieret perspicī nōn poterat.
5. flāmen tantā lēnitātē fluit ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit.
6. praemittit (mīlītēs) quī videant (v. Less. 41) quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.
7. quantō in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārentur cognōverat.
8. tum dēmum barbarī intellegēbant quantam calamitātēm cīvitātī suae intulissent.

Put any four of the above into the form of Direct question,
e.g. in No. 1 Caesar asks 'quamobrem . . . nōn dēcertat ?'

Latīnē reddite :

1. Caesar places guards over-Dumnorix (*dat.*) in order that he may know what he does, (and) with whom he talks.
2. Our-men by their speedy attack do not give the enemy an opportunity of finding-out what is happening (*fīō*).
3. The general did not know what plan of battle the enemy would adopt (*insistō*. 3).
4. He tells the messenger what he wishes (to be) done.
5. They could not see what (*say 'what of a thing'*) was happening.
6. The Gauls compel travellers to say (*prōnuntiō* 1) from what districts they come and what is happening there.

7. He reached the enemy's camp before the Germans could (*imperf. subj.*) perceive what was happening.
8. The-latter (*hī*) hesitated (*dubitō*. 1) whether it-were-better (*praestat*, v. Less. 24) to defend the camp, or to seek safety in flight.
9. Caesar having summoned (*vocō*. 1) merchants (*abl. absol.*) from-all-sides, yet could not discover how large Britain was (*say 'how-great was the size of Britain'*) nor what tribes inhabited (it), nor what system (*ūsus, ūs, m.*) of war they had, nor what customs (*institūtum, ī, n.*) they observed (*say 'used'*).

LECTIō.

Quōmodo Venetōrum nāvēs factae sunt.

Venetōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātae-que erant: prōrae admodum ērectae atque item puppēs ad magnitūdinem fluctuum accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex *rōbore* ad *quamvīs* vim per-ferendam; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs re-vinctae; pellēs prō vēlis sīve propter līnī inopiam sīve eō, quod est magis *vērī simile*, quod magnās tempestātēs vēlis sustinērī nōn posse arbitrābantur.

Tanta autem nāvium firmitūdō erat ut eīs *rostrō* nocērī nōn posset. *Accēdēbat* ut et tempestātēs facilius quam nāvēs nostrae ferrent, et in vadīs tūtius consisterent, et ab aestū relictae *nihil* saxa et cautēs

timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimescendus.

rōbur, -oris, n., oak.

quamvis, however great (*lit.* 'what you please'), acc. sing. fem. of *qui-vis*.

vērī simile, probable (*lit.* 'like the truth').

rostrum, i. n. ram (of a ship).

accēdēbat, impers., *v.* Less. 29.

nihil, not at all (adverbial use).

cāsus, ūs. m., chance, occurrence.

What kind of subj. is *posset*? What case is *nostrīs nāvibus*, and why? Would *nāvēs nocērī nōn possent* be correct here? If not, why not?

Vīvā Vōce:

1. nonne Venetōrum nāvēs magnae firmitūdinis erant?
2. ex quō nāvēs factae sunt?
3. quā dē causā?
4. quā nobrem Venetī pellibus prō vēlis ūtēbantur?
5. num fūnibus ancorae revincīrī solēbant?
6. quae nostrīs nāvibus erant extimescenda?

Caution.—Do not think that Indirect Questions must necessarily be introduced by a verb of *asking*. The construction required by Indirect Question is found after many other verbs, *e.g.* **doceō**, **dēmonstrō**, **ostendō**, **nuntiō**, **cognoscō**, **dubitō**, **intellegō**, **constituō** (settle), **iūdicō**, **videō**, **prōvideō**, **prōpōnō** (show), **praecipiō**, *etc.*

v. also p. 255, l. 27; p. 256, ll. 1, 2, 3.

LESSON 45.

SOME USES OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

A. The genitive after Adjectives.

insuētus nāvigandī, *unaccustomed to sailing.*
 imperītus rērum, *unskilled (in things).*
 plēnus vīni cadus, *a cask full of wine.*
 cupidus rērum novārum, *eager for a revolution.*

B. The genitive after Nouns.

nōmen insāniae, *the name (of) folly* (Definition).
 aeris libra, *a pound of bronze* (Material).
 vir magnae virtūtis, *a man of great bravery* (Quality).

N.B.—The gen. of Quality always has an adjective in agreement (*cf.* the abl. of Quality, *civītās magnā auctōritātē*).

C. The genitive with est=it is a mark of, it comes under the heading of.

suminī labōris est, *it is a (matter of) great difficulty.*
 dignitātis est, *prestige demands (it comes under the heading of prestige).*

D. The genitive after Verbs.

obliviscor. 3. memoriam-dēpōnō. 3. } I forgot.
 memoriam-retineō. 2. } I remēmber
 paenitet, it repents (*v. Less. 24*).

E. Partitive genitive.

The gen. is used of that of which a part is taken.

- *m̄litum pars, some of the soldiers.*
- *nonnulli nostrum, some of us.*
- *aliquid d̄etr̄imentī, some (thing of a) loss.*

F. Possessive genitive.

inīlitis ārma, the soldier's armour.

But liber meus, my book; the nom. of the possessive adjectives being always used.

The phrase **Rōmānōrum timor** may mean either

- (1) fear of somebody else felt by the Romans, where the Romans are *subjects* of fear (*possessive gen.*); or
- (2) fear of the Romans felt by somebody else, where the Romans are *objects* of fear (*objective gen.*).

The Possessive and Objective genitives are often united.

e.g. veterēs Helvētiōrum iniūriae populī Rōmānī.
the ancient wrongs done by the Helvētiī (possessive) to the Roman people (objective).

G. The genitive of Value.¹

Indefinite value is expressed by the words **parvī, magnī, tantī, plūris, minōris, etc.**

e.g. magnī, parvī interest, it is of great, small importance.

¹ Some prefer to regard these genitives as locatives.

magni intererat manus hostium distinēri, it was of great importance that the hostile bands should be kept apart.

*hunc equum plūris quam tū tuum ēmī.
I bought this horse for more than you bought yours.*

Definite value is put in the ablative (*cf.* Less. 55).

*villam trigintā talentis ēmī.
I bought an estate for thirty talents.¹*

Anglicē dīcenda:

1. Venetī rērum nauticārum peritissimī erant.
2. omnium Germāniae flūminum maximus est Rhēnus.
3. sine ullō exercitūs periculō victoriā potīti sāmus.
4. tantī apud mē grātia tua est ut tibi ignoscam.
5. is homō magnae auctōritatis habitus est.
6. magni interesse arbitrābatur auctōritatē suam quam plūrimum valēre.
7. barbarī dixērunt sē nostrae consuētūdinis imperīos bellum fēcisse.
8. duo summae spei adulescentēs obsidēs missī sunt.
9. est hōc Gallicae consuētūdinis ut mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat.

¹ A talent was about £240.

- 10. *exspectare* dum (*until*) hostium cōpiae augērentur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat.
- 11. (*dixit*) nē veteris contumēliae oblīviscerētur, nēve recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōneret.
- 12. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus est ut suae pristinae virtūtis et secundissimōrum proeliōrum memoriam retinērent.
-

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. summ—potenti—adulescens erat.
2. eius auctōritās magn—habēbātur.
3. rēs erat mult—labōr—.
4. docet quantō opere id rēpublic—commūnisque salūtis inter—.
5. Rhēnum nāvibus transīre neque suac neque popul—Rōmān—dignitā—arbitrātus est.
6. sapient—est pauc—loquī.

LECTIŌ.

Qui prīmō irrīdent postrēmō macrēbunt.

Ubi hostēs turrīm procul ā Rōmānīs constitū vīdērunt, prīmū *irrīdere* ex mūrō atque *increpitāre* vōcibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instruerētur: *quibusnam* mānibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemputī est) tantī oneris turrīm in mūrōs sēsē *collocatūrōs* confiderent?

Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquārē mūrīs vīdērunt, novā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: nōn existimārē Rōmānōs sine *ope* dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī iūntae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmovēre possent; itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdītūrōs (esse).

turrim, acc. sing. of *turris*, is, f.

irridēre, **incredītāre**, are called 'Historic' Infinitives, and are often used in narrative instead of a finite verb in the imperfect tense. Translate 'began to scoff and jeer.'

ab, at (a distance of).

quibusnam (abl. pl. of *qui-nam*, *quae-nam*, *quod-nam*), by what, pray? used sarcastically.

collocātūrōs, verbs of *hoping* and *trusting* are usually followed by the fut. infin. (v. p. 198, l. 3, and p. 207, l. 5).

ope (abl. sing. of *ops*, *opis*, f.¹), help, assistance.

¹ The nom. sing. is not found except as the name of a goddess.

LESSON 46.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Causal clauses are those that express cause *or* reason (*Lat. causa, ae, f.*).

General Rule.

If a real reason is stated, the verb is put in the Indic., if an imaginary reason *or* one given by some one else than the writer is stated, the verb is put in the Subj.

e.g. *magister discipulōs pūnīvit quod ignāvī fuerant.*

*the master punished the pupils because (as a fact)
they had been idle.*

but magister discipulōs pūnīvit quod ignāvī fuissent.

*the master punished the pupils because (as he had
been told) they had been idle.*

N.B.—If a causal clause expressing real reason (and therefore in the Indic.) is put into *orātiō obliqua*, the Indic. is, by the rules given in Less. 36 and 37, changed to the Subj.

The Subj. is used in *negative* causal clauses when the reason is *imaginary*.

e.g. *nōn quia līnum nōn habeant, sed quia satis forte nōn est.*

*not because they have no flux, but because it is not
sufficiently strong.*

Causal clauses are introduced by

quod, quia, proptereā quod, quoniam, cum, all meaning *since* or *because*.

N.B.—cum, since, always takes the Subj.

Anglicē vertenda :

1. oppidum eō facilius dēfendī poterat quod flūmine paene cingēbatur.
2. hōc proeliō hostēs sublātī sunt quia quingentīs equitibus magnam multitūdinem prōpulerant.
3. Aeduī cum sē suaque dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.
4. frūmentō ūtī nōn poterat, proptereā quod hostēs eum illō prohibēbant.
5. hostēs repentinō Rōmānōrum adventū perterriti sunt, cum id, quod ipsi vix diēbus xx confēcerant, eōs ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent.
6. Caesar, bellum ut conficerētur, sibi mātūrandum statuit, praeſertim cum hiems appropinquāret.
7. quoniam lēgātum suum obsidiōne līberātum (*esse*) sciēbat, sēcūrus dum (*until*) reliquae cōpiae pervenīrent exspectābat.
8. hostēs, cum diūtius nostrōrum impetum sustinēre nōn possent, terga vertērunt.
9. Dumnorix Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrīmōnium duxerat.
10. Aeduī ad Caesarem vēnērunt questum quod Harūdēs fīnēs suōs populārentur.

From this Lesson onwards to the end of the Book the *Lectionēs* are in the form of a continuous narrative dealing with certain events in Gaul at the end of the year 54 B.C.

After Caesar's return to Gaul from his second expedition to Britain in that year he found it necessary, owing to scarcity of corn, to distribute his legions among several states. One legion under Q. Cicerō was sent to winter among the Nervii (*modern Hainault*), and 15 cohorts under Sabinus and Cotta were dispatched to a place called Aduātuca, in the country of the Eburōnēs (*near modern Liège*).

Here Sabinus and Cotta with their army were cut to pieces by the Eburōnēs under Ambiorix; and the latter elated by his victory persuaded the Aduātuci and Nervii to help him to attack Cicerō.

What happened is told in the next and following 'Lectionēs.'

•
LECTIŌ.

Cicerō in Nerviis obsidetur.

Barbarī quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna *advolant*, nondum ad eum fāmā dē Sabinī morte *perlātā*. *Huic quoq[ue]* accidit ut nonnullī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitionis-que causā in silvās *discessissent*, repentinō equitum adventū intercipērentur.

Eis circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduātuci atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnārē incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum condescendunt. Aegrē is diēs

'sustentātur, proptereā quod omnem spem¹ hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant, atque hanc *adeptī* victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs confidēbant.

advolō. 1., I run to (*lit. 'fly to'*): historic pres.

perlātā, perf. part. pass. of *per-ferō*, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum.

hūic, *i.e.* Cicerōnī.

discessissent is in the Subj. because it refers to a word (*mīlitēs*) which is in a subordinate clause.

adeptī, perf. part. of *adipiscor*. 3. *q.v.*

Vivā Vōce:

1. quae nātiōnēs Cicerōnis hiberna oppugnant?
2. ā quō ut haec facerent adductī sunt?
3. quōs Ambiorix nūper (*recently*) superāverat ūnā cum exercitū eōruin?
4. quārum rērum causā nonnullī mīlitēs Cicerōnis castra reliquerant?
6. cūr barbarī tam celeriter rem conficere studēbant (*were eager*)?

LESSON 47.

CAUSAL CLAUSES—(continued).

Latinē reddite:

1. He hastened into Illyricum because (*cum*) he wished to find-out-about (*cognoscō*. 3) those districts.
2. The Aquitānī are very-skilful in mining, because there are mines (*acrāria, ae, f.*) in-their-country (*apud eos*).
3. The Ubiī are more-civilised than the-rest (*cēterī, ōrum, m. pl.*) of the same race, because merchants come-frequently to them.
4. Caesar ordered the ambassadors to return to him 'at the beginning of summer (*abl. absol. v. p. 52*) because he was hastening to Italy.
5. As (*cum*) the fortifications were not completed, the soldiers worked with the greater zeal.
6. As Crassus perceived that he had-to-wage-war (*gerundive*) on-uneven-terms (*inīquō loco*), he decided to use great caution (*diligentia, ae, f.*)
7. The chiefs of Britain perceiving (*say 'since they perceived'*) that the Romans lacked (*say 'there was-lacking to the Romans'*) cavalry, ships, (and) corn, thought it to be a good opportunity to (*say 'of'*) resume-hostilities (*rebelliōnem facere*; *gen. of gerundive*).

8. It-was perceived that this kind of 'fight was dangerous to our cavalry, because the enemy for-the-most-part retreated designedly. . .
9. Themistocles used-to-walk (*imperf.*) at-night because (as he said) he could (*indic. or subj.?*) not sleep (*somnum capiō*. 3).
10. Socrates was accused (*accūsō*. 1) because (as was alleged) he corrupted (*corrumptō*. 3) young-men.

A causal clause is often replaced by a participle.

e.g. longius prōsequī veritus.

because he feared to pursue further.

omnia frustrā experti.

as they had tried everything in vain.

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. nostri hostēs circumvent— interfic— (*imperf. indic. act.*) vel perterr— in fug— cōniciēbant.
2. sentiēbat quantum auctōrit— (*gen.*) hostēs hōc tūn— proeliō consecūti — . . .
3. hostēs, signō datō dēcurr— (*historic infin.*), lapidēs in vallum cōnic— — (*historic infin.*).
4. quinque cohortēs frūment— (*supine*) missae erant.

LECTIÖ.

Quōmodo sē dēfendit Cicerō.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis prōpositis praeiūis, sī *pertulissent*: *obsessis* omnibus *viis* missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnitōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum centū xx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae dē-esse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coactis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent.

Eādem ratiōne, quā pridiē, ab nostris *resistitur*. Nulla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultas quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnatiōnem *opus* sunt noctū comparantur: multae *praeustae* sudēs, magnus *mūrālium pīlōrum* numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, *pīnnae lōrīcae*-que ex crātibus attēxuntur.

Ipse Cicerō, *cum* tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nō nocturnum quidē sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut *ultrō* mīlitum *concursū* āc *vōcībus* sibi parcere cōgerētur.

pertulissent, sc. nuntiī (understood from the context).

obsessis viis, as the roads were beset (*causal*).

resistitur, impers.

opus, a necessity.

praeustus, a, um, hardened (by fire) at the end.

pīla mūrālia, javelins hurled at the enemy from the walls.

pinna, ae, f., a pinnacle.

lōrica, ae, f., a parapet. What is its commoner meaning?

cum, although.

ultrō, against his wish.

concursū āc vōcibus, *lit.* 'by the running-together and voices,' *i.e.* by the entreaties of the soldiers who assembled in a body.

Point out in this passage (1) an abl. absol., (2) a consecutive clause, (3) a historic pres., (4) an abl. of Quality.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quam ob causam cum litteris missī interceptī sunt?
2. quā valētūdine erat Cicerō?
3. num eō magis sibi parcēbat?
4. quid igitur fēcērunt mīlitēs?

LESSON 48.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

Temporal clauses show the time (*Lat. tempus, oris, n.*) of events described in the Principal sentence.

General Rule.

They are in the Indic. if they merely denote *time*, but in the Subj. if they imply an idea of *purpose*, *doubt*, *cause* or *intention*.

They are introduced by

ubi	}	when	simul ac (atque),	as soon
cum .			cum primum,	

post(eā) quam, *after, when*.

priusquam ¹	}	before	quoad, <i>as long as, until</i> .
antequam ¹			dum, <i>while, until</i> .

cum, *when*, takes the imperf. and pluperf. Subj.; in other tenses the Indic.

e.g. **haec cum fēcisset**, abiit.

when he had done this, he went away.

haec cum fēceris, abī!

when you (shall) have done this, go away!

¹ Often separated, e.g. Rōmam prius p̄vēni quam exspectāvī.

When the clauses are *inverted*, **cum** takes the Indic.

e.g. iam vēr appetēbat cum Caesar ex hibernīs discessit.

spring was already approaching when Caesar left his winter-quarters.

(i.e. *Caesar left when spring, etc.*)

vide also p. 42, *Lectiō*, l. 4; p. 63, *Lectiō*, l. 7; p. 108, l. 9.

(**dum**, *while*, takes the Indic.¹ (usually the pres. tense even of past time)).

e.g. dum haec geruntur.

while this was happening.

v. also p. 259, l. 1.

dum, *until*, takes the Subj.

e.g. exspectā dum redeam.

wait until I return!

Anglice reddenda:

1. Helvētiī, ubi iam sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, proficisciē mātūrant.
2. Caesarī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrandum sibi statuit.
3. Helvētiī, ubi de ēius adventū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.
4. Caesar postquam in eum locum pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit; quī dum conquiruntur et conferuntur, nonnulli ex hostibus salūtem fugā petiērunt.
5. neque prius fugere destitērunt (*dē-sistō*. 3. *-stitū*) quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt.

¹ Sometimes even in *ōrātiō obliqua*.

6. Caesar, cum primum pabulī cōpia esse inciperet; ad exercitum vēnit.
7. dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nuntiātum est hostēs accēdere.
8. Ariovistus, cum lēgātōs apud sē conspexisset, conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? num speculandī causā?
9. priusquam¹ quicquid cōnārētur, Dīvitiacum ad sē vocārī iubet.
10. imperāvit tribūnī sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.
11. postridē Caesar, priusquam¹ sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērent, exercitum iterum in eōs duxit.
12. dum reliquae nāvēs convenīrent, in ancoris exspectābat.

Latīnē transferenda:

1. When (*ubi*) Caesar perceived that Ariovistus kept himself in camp, he determined to challenge (*ēvocō*. 1) him to battle.
2. While this was happening amongst (*in abl.*) the Veneti, Sabīnus was in winter-quarters.
3. When (*cum*) Caesar was in Gaul, many (*erēber, bra, brum*) rumours reached (*say 'were brought to'*) him (that) the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people.

¹ This use of *priusquam* with the Subj. implies 'purpose prevented.'

4. Therefore he thought he ought (*use oportet*) to divide (*partior. 4. dep.*) his army before more states should conspire (*why subj.?*).
5. Caesar determined to stay (*moror. 1*) in Gaul until (*quoad*) he knew (*imperf. subj.*) that the legions had been posted and the winter-quarters fortified.
6. As-soon-as the time of year allowed him (*see p. 117*) he returned to Gaul.
7. He was informed that the Suēvi, after they had discovered (*why subj.?*) that a bridge was being built (*say, 'made'*), had sent messengers in all directions.

LECTIō.

Colloquium inter Nerviōs et Cicerōnem.

Tunc ducēs principesque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem *sermōnis aditum* causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne *habēbant*, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. *Factā potestāte* eadem quae Ambiorix cum Sabīno ēgerat commemo-
rant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum transisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnari. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam praesidi ab eīs spērent quī suīs rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen *hōc esse* in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum *animō* ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent; licēre illīs incolubus *per sē* ex hibernīs discēdere et quascumque in partēs velint sine metū proficiſcī.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse' consuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarein mittant; spērāre prō cīus iustitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

sermōnis aditum habēre, *lit.* 'to have access of speech,'
i.e. to be on friendly terms.

factā potestāte, when permission was granted (*abl. absol.*).

ēgerat, had related, discussed (*agō. 3. ēgī, actum*).

eōs, *i.e.* Cicerō and his soldiers.

hōc animō esse, *lit.* 'to be of this mind,' *i.e.* to be so (well) disposed.

illis, *i.e.* Cicerō and his soldiers.

per sē, *v. pp.* 99 and 117.

Put from 'nōn esse consuētūdinem' to the end into
ōrātiō recta.

For what two reasons is *recūsent* in the Subj.?

LESSON 49.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES—(continued).

Clauses expressing Indefinite Frequency (*whenever*) may be either Primary or Secondary.

In Primary time the verb in the Subordinate clause is in the perf. Indic., and the verb in the Principal clause is in the pres. Indic.

*e.g. magistratūs multitūdini prōdunt quaecumque ex
ūsū iūdicāvērunt.*

*the magistrates reveal to the people whatever they
consider expedient.*

(*vide also p. 101, ll. 3-6.*)

In Secondary time the verb in the Subordinate clause is in the pluperf. Indic., and the verb in the Principal clause is in the imperf. Indic.

*e.g. sī quī equō dēciderat, comitēs eum cīrumsistē-
bant,*

*if any one fell from his horse, his comrades would
(used to) stand round him.*

(*vide also p. 112, top; p. 257, ll. 22, 23, 25, 27.*)

Anglice discenda:

1. ubi hostēs nostrōs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspex-
erant, impeditōs adoriēbantur.
2. Britannōrum aurīgāe cum sē inter equitū turmās
insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibūs
proeliantur.
3. sī quandō Venetī fortūnīs suīs despērāre cooperant,
sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.
4. quotiens quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte
magnus hostiū numerus eadēbat.
5. Germānī cōs, quī hospitēs ad sē vēnērunt, ab
iniūriā prohibent.

Latīnē reddite:

This command (*praeceptum*, *i.* *n.*) being carefully (*superl.*) obeyed (*observō*. 1.), as (*cum*) each cohort attacked, the enemy would speedily (*superl.*) flee. And whenever they began to return to that place whence they had started (*ē-gredior*. 3., *-gressus*), they would be surrounded both by those who had retired and by those who stood (*pluperf.*) nearest.

Nevertheless they stood-their-ground, and though the-battle lasted (*say 'it was fought'*) from dawn to the eighth hour, they did nothing unworthy of themselves. T. Balventius, a brave man and (one) of great influence, had both' thighs pierced by a javelin; Q. Lūcānius fighting bravely (*superl.*) is killed while (*clum*) assisting his son who-had-been-surrounded; L. Cotta, the brigadier, is wounded full in the face by a (shot from a) sling while-exhorting (*pres. part.*) the cohorts.

VOCABULARY.

though, *cum* (*subj.*).

I do (l. 10), *com-mittō*. 3. *-mīstī*, *-missum*.

unworthy, *indignus*, *a*, *um* (*abl.*).

T. Balventius . . . javelin, say 'both thighs (*sing.*) to
T. Balventius are pierced' (*trā-iciō*. 3. *-iēcī*, *-iectum*).

I assist, *sub-veniō*. 4. *-rēnī*, *-ventum* (*dat.*).

full in the face, *in adversum* *ōs*.

LECTIō.

Quae ab hostibus parantur.

Ab hāc spē repulsi Nerviī vallō pedum ix et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum *consuētūdine* ab nōbīs cognōverant et *quōs* clām dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs *ab eīs* docēbantur; sed nullā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespītēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaustū vidēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus *mīlium* in circuitū iiiī mūnitōnēm perfēcērunt; reliquisque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinēm vallī, *falcēs* testūdinesque, quās *idem* captīvī docuerant, parārē ac facere coepērunt.

consuētūdō, inis, f., habit, practice.

quōs . . . *ab eīs*, relative before its antecedent.

nullā cōpiā, *abl.* *absol.*

mīlium, sc. *passuum*.

falx, *cis*, f. a hook (used for pulling down walls).

idem, nom. pl. masc. (contracted for *eidem*).

What kind of abl. is *hōrīs tribus? reliquīs diēbus?*
Why is *eset* in the Subj.?

•
•
Vivā Vōce:

1. quōmodo Nerviī mūniendī ūsum cognōverant?
2. quae ad vallum fossā inque efficiendam dē-erant?
3. quōmodo hostēs caespitēs circumcidēbant?
4. quae rēs docet hostium multitūdinem magnam fuisse?
- 5. quot hōrīs mūnitōnem perfēcērunt?
6. ā quibus falcium testūdinumque ūsum didicērunt?

LESSON 50.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. Give the *Acc.* and *Abl. Sing.*, *Gender and Meaning* of *flūmen*, *adventus*, *spēs*, *vēr*, *terror*, *finis*, *vul-*
gus, *lēnitās*, *nōmen*, *condiciō*.
2. Give the other degrees of comparison of *facilis*,
diūtissimē, *prae*, *minus*, *celerrimē*, *lōngior*, *plānus*,
magnopere, *similior*.
3. What word is used instead of *ut* in final clauses
containing a comparative? Give an example.
Does *ut nēmō* mean 'in order that no one'?
4. Decline together in *Sing.* and *Pl.*:

proelium equestre.
locus silvestris.
5. Give the 3rd pers. *sing.* and 1st pers. *pl.* of the
imperf. subj. of *volō*, *fiō*, *praesum*, *oriōr*; and
the 1st pers. *sing.*, and 3rd pers. *pl.* of the *pres.*
subj. of *cōnor*, *sequor*, *ūtor*.
6. Explain Possessive and Objective genitive. Give
an instance of the two combined in one phrase.
7. Give the Principal Parts of *prōpellō*, *adipiscor*,
accēdō, *fleō*, *dō*, *videō*, *loquor*, *resistō*, *proelior*,
pāreō.
8. Mention some verbs and adjectives that are
followed by the genitive case.
9. *Anglicē vertite*:
 1. nōn longē aberat quīn cālōnēs nostrī intercipe-
rentur.

2. breve spatiū intēicitur vix ut rēbus admini-
strandis tempus darētur.
3. quoniam cīvitatī consulere nōn posset, sē
Caesarī dēdere māluit.
4. haec cum flens ā Caesarē peteret, Caesar cīus
dextram prendit.
10. Give examples illustrating the difference in use
between *dum*, *while*, and *dum*, *until*.
11. *Verbō reddite*:

mōre suō.	magnī interest.
aliquid spatī.	ā nostrīs resistitūr.
carīnac aliquantō plāniōres.	
12. Explain *rostrum*, *prīmipilus*, *aciēs triplex*.
13. *Latīnē vertenda*:
 1. The next day he sent (men) to follow-up those
who had fled.
 2. He returned to Italy early in order that he
might not be prevented (*exclūdō*. 3.) from
sailing (*noun*) by (*per*) the time of year.
 3. He points-out that it is very-easy to carry out
his attempts (*cōnāta*, *u. pl.*).
 4. The general waited until the reserves should
arrive.
 5. This will be very-useful (*predic. dat.*) to
• you (*pl.*).
 6. As-soon-as he heard of Caesar's arrival, he went
to-meet (*supine*) him.
14. Parse *paene*, *factū*, *rogātum* (2 ways), *fore*, *ope*,
poposcerītis (2 ways).

LESSON 51.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

Conditional clauses are usually introduced by **sī**, if; **nisi**, **sī nōn**, if not, unless.

They are followed by either the Indic. or the Subj. mood.

The 'if' clause is known as the **Protasis**, the principal clause as the **Apodosis**.

e.g. If I have anything (*protasis*), I give it (*apodosis*).

Regular condit. clauses are always consistent, i.e. if the Indic. is used in the protasis, the Indic. must be used in the apodosis also; and if the Subj. is used in the protasis, the Subj. must be used in the apodosis also.¹

It is convenient to class condit. clauses according as they take

- (1) the Indic.
- (2) primary tenses of the Subj.
- (3) secondary tenses of the Subj.

- (1) When the Indic. is used, it implies that the statements made are regarded as facts, but leaves it uncertain whether they actually occur or not.

¹ *Irregular* condit. clauses will not be treated here.

e.g. *sī quid habeō, dō, if I have anything, I give it.*
sī quid habeō, dabō, if I have anything, I shall give it.
sī quid habēbō, dabō, if I shall have anything, I shall give it.
sī vīs, dabō tibi testēs, if you like, I shall call you witnesses.
sī poterō, sextā hōrā redibō, if I am (shall be) able, I shall return at the sixth hour.

(2) Where Primary tenses of the Subj. are used, we treat not of facts but of **imaginary suppositions**, which, as they refer to **future** time, may be realised.

e.g. *sī quid habeam, dem.*
if I should have anything (in the future), I should give it.

id sī facere cōnēris, nōn prōficiās.

if you were to try to do that, you would not succeed.

When the 2nd pers. is used *indefinitely*,¹ the protasis is often understood.

e.g. *maestī (crēderēs victōs) in castra redeunt.*
downcast (one would have supposed them conquered)
they return to camp.

id fierī nōn posse crēdās.

you (i.e. one) would not believe it possible.

(3) Where Secondary tenses of the Subj. are used, we treat of **imaginary suppositions** which refer to **present** or **past** time, but cannot in either case be realised.

¹ i.e. *you = one.*

(1. *if I had anything now, I would give it* (implies **nōn habeō**, *I have nothing*).
 e.g. **sī quid habērem, darem.** | 2. *if I had been having anything, I would have been giving it* (implies **nōn habēbam**, *I was not having*).¹

sī quid habuissem, dedissem.

if I had anything, I would have given it (implies either **nōn habuī**, *I have not had* (pres. perf.) or **nōn habuī**, *I had not* (aor. perf.).

Thus the four types of regular condit. sentences are :

- (a) **sī quid habeō, do** (possible condition in pres. time).
- (b) **sī quid habeam, dem** (imaginary and possible supposition in fut. time).
- (c) **sī quid habērem, darem** (imaginary and impossible supposition in pres. (*or past*) time).
- (d) **sī quid habuissem, dedissem** (imaginary and impossible supposition in past time).

Anglice dicenda :

1. **sī hostēs proeliō contendere velint, eīs potestās nōn dē-sit.**
2. **sī quid tē volam, ubi eris ?**
3. **noctū, puer, sī in silvām eās, nonne ferās vereāris ?**
4. **sī barbarī flūmen transīre cōnatī essent, ā nostrīs repulsī essent.**

¹ *nōn habeō* is more often implied than *nōn habēbam*.

5. nisi ex finibus meis discēdēs, tē prō hoste habēbō.
6. nisi quid in tē auxilī erit, hīc manēre nōn
poterimus.
7. sī quid mihi accidat, domum redeam.
8. Ariovistus Caesarī respondet: 'sī quid mihi ā tē
opus esset, ad tē venīrem; sī quid igitur tū mē
vīs, ad mē venī.'
9. sī quid gravius acciderit, mīlitēs ā duce ratiōnem
reposeant.
10. sī valēs bene est; ego quidem valeō.¹

LECTIō.

Quae septimō diē facta sunt.

Septimō oppugnatiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō hostēs ferventēs *fūsilī ex argillā* glandēs fundīs et ferrefacta iacula in *casās*, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tectaē, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum *distulērunt*.

Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcūtī *partā* iam atque explorātā victoriā, turrēs testūdīnēsque agere et scālis vallum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque *ea* praeſentia animī fuit, ut, *cum* ubīquē flammā torrērentur ^{maximāque} tēlōrum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs *fortūnās* conflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā

¹ The regular greeting of Romans to each other in their correspondence.

dē vallō dēcēderet nēmo, sed paene nē respicēret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vallō constīpāverant, recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.

fūsili ex argillā, (made) of softened clay.

casa, ae, f., a hut. The Romans being in winter-quarters were in huts, not 'under canvas.'

distulērunt; the obj. is ignem.

partus, a, um, perf. part. pass. of pariō. 3. *q.v.*

ea, such (*v. Less. 43*).

cum, although (foll. by Subj. *v. Less. 54*).

fortūnae, ārum, f. pl., possessions.

ut, as, seeing that.

Point out (1) an abl. of Time; (2) an abl. of Instrument; (3) an abl. absol; (4) an acc. and Infin. after a verb of perception.

What kind of Subj. is (1) dēcēderet; (2) vulnerārētur?

Vīvā Vōce:

1. septimō diē quid coortum est? 2. quālis erat glans?
3. quālī modō casae tectae erant?
4. quōmodo mīlitēs virtūtem atque animī praeſentiam significābant?
5. quem ēventum nostrīs hīc diēs habuit?
6. quā dē causā tanta hostium multitudō eō diē vulnerāta est?

LESSON 52.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES—Continued.

Anglice dīcite:

1. respondet Caesar: ‘vōbiscum pācem faciam, sī
vōbīs ā vōbīs dabuntur et sī dē iniūriīs mihi
satisfaciētis.’
2. frūmentum comparārī potest sī hostium agrōs
populāmur.
3. rēs facilis sit, sī modo īnum omnēs sentiant āc
probent.
4. ‘sī Galli’ inquit ‘cum Germānīs consentiant, spēs
nostra in celeritāte īnā pōnātur.’
5. magnō sibi īsuī fore arbitrābātur sī modo insulam
adisset (*pluperf. subj. = fut. perf. indic. of orātiō
recta*).
6. dīcit Ariovistus: ‘parātus sum dēcertāre, sī Rōmānī
iterum experīrī volunt; sī stūpendium ab eīs
remittētur, populī Rōmānī amīcitiam nōn recū-
sābō.’

Latīnē transferte:

A. *Connected*.—On- that day both-sides kept their positions (*say ‘keep themselves in-their place’*), the Gauls because they were waiting for reinforcements which had not-yet arrived, Caesar to-see-if (*sī*) he could (*imperf. subj.*) by a pretence of fear entice the enemy to his position, in-order-that he might fight in-front-of

the camp on-this-side of the valley, (but) if he could not manage (*efficiō*. 3.) that, in-order-that (*why not ut?*) he might cross the valley with less danger. At dawn the enemy's horse approached the camp and engaged-battle with our cavalry. Caesar orders (*imperō*. 1.) his cavalry to retire to the camp, and at the same time orders (*iubēō*. 2.) the camp to be fortified with a taller stockade and the gates to be blocked, and that this should be done (*say 'this to be done'*) with a great pretence of fear.

VOCABULARY.

both-sides, *use nom. pl. masc.* of *uter-que*.

reinforcements, *ampliōrēs cōpiae*.

pretence, *simulātiō, onis*, f.

I entice, *ē-liciō*. 3. *-licui, -licitum*.

R. Detached:

1. Unless reinforcements arrive, we shall be compelled to raise (*solvō*. 3.) the siege. (*a*)¹
2. If the storm had not arisen, the ships would have reached harbour safely. (*d*)
3. If you were to ask me who I am, I should reply. (*b*)
4. If I had any(thing of) money, I would give it to that poor (man). (*c*)
5. Unless you arrived before the eighth hour, you would arrive too-late (*sērō*). (*b*)

¹ The letters in brackets at the end of the sentences refer to the four types of condit. sentences given on p. 216.

6. If you wish-for my friendship, you must (*use oportet*) deserve it. (a)
7. If the scouts had not caught-sight-of the enemy, the whole army would have come into extreme (*summus, a, um*) danger. (d)
8. If Caesar were (now) living, he would be accounted (*habeō*. 2.) a great (*superl.*) general. (c)
9. The slaughter would have been greater, had not our-men fought in-small-companies (*rāri*). (d)
10. The priests said that the army would not be victorious, if they fought (*pluperf. subj.*) before the new moon.

Quod dē-est suppeditātē:

1. nīl dubium est — Caesar summus imperātor —.
2. quid tē prohibuit quōm— domum redī— ?
3. quō (*adv.*) cum Caesar pervēn— (*pluperf. subj.*), castra mūn— instituit.
4. cum paulō ā castr— prōcess— (*pluperf. subj.*), suōs ab hostibus premī animadv—.
5. in Ītaliā proficis— ad conventū agen—.
6. e- rēs L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō consul— accidit.
7. equit, — imperat ut quam lātissimē poss— vag—tur.
8. quae pars cīvitātis calamit— populō Rōmānō (*dut.*) intul— (*pluperf. indic. of inferō*), ea princeps poenās persolv—. (*of what constr. is this sentence an example?*)

LECTIO.

Oppugnatiō gravior fit.

Quantō erat *in diēs* gravior atque asperior oppugnatiō, et maximē quod magnā parte mīlitum confectā vulneribus rēs *ad paucitātem dēfensōrum pervēnerat*, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nuntiōque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehensa in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābatur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine *Verticō*, locō nātus honestō, qui ā *primā obsidiōne* ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertatis magnis-que persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspicīōne versātus ad Caesarem pervēnit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognoscitur.

in diēs, from day to day (used in compar. clauses instead of *cotidiē*, cf. Less. 3, p. 7).

rēs . . . pervēnerat, the number of defenders was reduced, *lit.* 'the matter had reached a scarcity of defenders.'

Verticō, this is the nom. case.

locō nātus honestō, a man of good position (abl. of Specification, *v. p. 235*).

ā primā obsidiōne, from the beginning of the siege.

fidem praestiterat, had manifested fidelity, given proof of loyalty.

hīc, *i.e.* Verticō.

Caesarem, Caesar was apparently at *Samarobrīva* (Amiens).

cognoscitur, impers.

LESSON 53.

SOME USES OF THE DATIVE CASE.

A. The Dative is the case of the person interested in an action.*

e.g. frumentum militibus comparatur.

corn is collected for the soldiers.

legionibus navēs instituit.

he prepares ships for the legions.

According as the action is for the good or harm of a person, this dative is known as the dat. of Advantage (*datīvus commodī*), or as the dat. of Disadvantage (*datīvus incommodī*).

e.g. hōc rēpublicae commodē contigit. (*dat. of advantage*).

this turned out advantageously for the republic.

is diēs gravissimus nostrīs fuit. (*dat. of disadvantage*).

that day was most critical to our-men.

B. The Dative is the case of the Indirect object.

e.g. quis tibi pulchrum illum librum dedit?

who gave you that beautiful book?

Verbs governing the dative.

(a) All compounds of **sum**, except **possum**, e.g.; **ad-sum**, **dē-sum**, **in-sum**, **prae-sum**, etc.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prepositions.

ab, ante, ad,
in, inter, dē,
sub, super, ob,
con, post, prae.

e.g. **ad-propinquō**, I approach; **sub-veniō**, I come to assist; **ob-temperō**, I obey; **i(n)-gnoscō**,^{1 I pardon; **in-videō**, I envy.}

(c) Verbs compounded with **re**, **bene**, **male**, **satis**.

e.g. **re-sistō**, I hold out against; **male-dicō**, I revile; **satis-faciō**, I satisfy.

Many of these verbs take also an acc. of the Direct object.

e.g. Caesar barbaris bellum infert, *Caesar wages war on the natives.*

tibi dīvitias nōn invideō, *I do not envy you your wealth.*

The verbs **imperō**, **praeficiō**, and **praepōnō** are commonly used with the acc. and dat.

e.g. obsidēs hostibus imperat, *he levies hostages on the enemy.*

¹ **noscō** was originally **gnoscō**.

Labiēnum castrīs praefēcit or praeposuit, *he put Labienus in command of the camp.*

In the passive of such verbs the dat. is kept.

e.g. barbarīs ā Caesare bellum infertur.

obsidēs hostib⁹s imperantur.

Labiēnus castrīs praepositus est.

(d) Also the following¹:

dō. 1., I give.

mandō. 1. } I command.
imperō. 1. }

parcō. 3., I spare.

noceō. 2., I injure.

pāreō. 2., I obey.

crēdō. 3., I believe, trust.

confidō. 3., I trust (*also takes abl.*, v. p. 119, sent. 3.).

persuādeō. 2., I persuade.

consulō. 3., I look-to, consult the interest of.

C. The dative after Adjectives and Adverbs.

The dat. is used after adjectives and adverbs implying *nearness, fitness, likeness, help, kindness, trust, obedience.*

e.g. Atrebates Nerviis fīnitimī sunt, *the Atrebates are neighbours of the Nervi.*

castrīs idōneus locus, *a place suitable for the camp.*

convenienter nātūrae vivāmus! *let us live conveniently with nature!*

Similarly **amicus**, friendly; **propinquus**, near; **fidēlis**, faithful; **congruenter**, agreeably.

¹ This list is not exhaustive.

D. The dative of Possessor (usually with esse).

e.g. mihi amicī multī sunt, I have many friends.

E. The dative of Agent.

with gerund and gerundive (v. Less. 17, 18, and 19).

e.g. mihi pugnandum erat, I had to fight.

ea rēs omnibus prōvidenda est, all must attend to that matter.

*N.B.—Remember that the Passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dat. can be used *impersonally* only (v. Less. 25, p. 103).*

Anglicē dicenda vel scribenda :

1. Caesar legiōnī decimae maximē confidēbat.
2. legātī orābant ut sibi propter imprūdentiam ignoscētur.
3. in tantō rērum discrīmīno dux salūtī coinmūnī nōn dē-erat.
4. tum dēmum tribūnī ut sibi quisque consuleret prōnuntiāvērunt.
5. Caesar hibernīs Labiēnum, classī Decimum Brūtum praefecit.
6. ducem cautum rēbus militāribus nōn sōlum interesse sed etiam prae-esse oportet.
7. nostrīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur nōn poterāt.
8. mīlitibus imperat ut quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.
9. id cum animadvertisset Crassus, qui equitātū

prae-erat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs
subsidiō mīsit.

10. amīcōrum alter alterī auxiliō salūtīque fuit, ut
iūdicārī nōn posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus
vidērētur.

Latinē reddite:

1. The enemy trusted much in the nature of the place.
2. That he might not encounter (*occurrō*. 3.) a more serious (*gravis*, *e*) war, Caesar set-out earlier than he was accustomed.
3. He sends a brigadier to see-to (*cūrō*. 1. *v. p.* 75) the dispersal of the native troops (*manus*, *ūs*, *f.*).
4. The enemy look-to their belongings (*fortūnae*, *ārum*, *f. pl.*) that they may not be plundered by the Romans.
5. Crassus did not place much reliance on (*say 'trust'*) the auxiliaries.
6. Caesar promised that he would attend-to that business (*v. p.* 96, sent. 4).
7. The Romans often used-to-spare (*imperf.*) the conquered (*victus*, *a*, *um*).
8. He sent an ambassador whom he believed to be very-faithful to him.
9. There-were among the enemy some who were very-friendly to the Romans.
10. All night the soldiers worked strenuously, in order that nothing might be-lacking for the siege.

LESSON 54.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES—VERBS OF FEARING.

Concessive clauses are introduced in English by the word *although*, and in Latin by the following conjunctions, all meaning *although* :—

‘**quamquam**, followed by the Indic.

quamvis
 ut } followed by the Subj.
 cum

etsi } followed by the Indic. of *fact*,
tametsi } by the Subj. of *imagination*.

Note.—*quamvis* (*lit.* ‘as you please’) is also used to qualify adjectives :

e.g. *quamvis pauci*, *however few*.

malī lēgibus, quamvis iustīs, nōn pārent.

the wicked do not obey laws however just.

v. also p. 82, l. 3.

Anglicē dīcenda :

1. Caesar, etsi sine ullō perīculō legiōnis proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat.
2. hostium aciēs, cum ā sinistrō cornū pulsa esset, ā dextrō (cornū) vehementer nostrōs premēbat.

3. nostrī, tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur,
tamen omnem spēm salūtis in virtūtē pōnēbant.
4. hostēs intellegēbant, ut omnia contrā opīniōnem
acciderent, tamen sc̄e plūs quam Rōmānōs nāvibus
posse.
5. dux, etsī hostium consilia nondum cognōverat,
tamen id quod accidit fore suspicābatur.
6. quamquam nōn venit ad fīnem tām audax in-
ceptum (*plan*), tamen haud omnīnō vānum fuit.
7. Caesar, etsī prope exacta iam aestās erat, tamen
exercitum in Morīnōs duxit.
8. nostrī, quamvis ab hostibus gravissimē premērentur,
inceptō (*v. sent. 6*) nōn dēsistēbānt.

VERBS OF FEARING.

The verbs **timeō**. 2., **metūō**. 3., **vereor**. 2. (*dep.*), *I fear*, are followed by **nē** or **nē nōn** (*ut*) with the Subj.:

e.g. vereor nē veniat, *I am afraid he will come.*
vercor nē-nōn (*ut*) veniat, *I am afraid he will
not come.*

These verbs when not followed by a clause take the acc. of the Direct object.

e.g. inopiam frūmentī veritus, *fearing a deficiency of corn.*

Anglicē dicenda:

1. Caesar nē hīs rēbus sociōs offenderet verēbātur.
2. hostēs nē armīs trāditīs (*abl. absol.*) suppliciō
adficērentur timuērunt.

- 3. rem frumentāriam timēbat ut supportāri posset.
- 4. veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur Indutiomarus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit.
- 5. dicit Ariovistus verērī nē per insidiās ā 'Caēsare circumveniātur.

Latīnē reddenda:

1. He feared not the enemy, but an ambush.
2. Although Caesar perceived this, yet he addressed (appellō. 1.) the ambassadors very-mildly (mītissimē).
3. The enemy fearing they would be surrounded (circum-eō, -ēre) fled.
4. He feared a rising in (say 'of') Gaul, if-he-himself-were-absent (abl. absol. v. p. 25).
5. Though the column (agmen, inis, n.) was very far off, the smoke (pl.) of its fires could be plainly seen.
6. The Belgae were afraid that when all Gaul was pacified (abl. absol.) our army would be led against them.
7. Although this plan (say 'which plan although') was not to-be-blamed (gerundive) in an occurrence of-this-kind, yet it turned-out (accidō. 3.) disastrously.
8. Caesar said he was not afraid of the deceit of the enemy, but (feared) that reinforcements would not arrive in-time (ad tempus).
9. Were you (sing.) afraid that I would not keep-my-promise? (fidem servō. 1.).

LECTIŌ.

Caesar, litteris commōtus, auxilia undique arcessit.

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum *quaestōrem* mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venire. Exit cum nuntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebatum finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiōnō, sī rēi publicae *commōdō* facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs colligit.

quaestōrem, the quaestors were officers who had control of the commissariat and pay department.

commōdum, i, n., *lit.* 'convenience.' Translate 'without detriment to.' The abl. is 'attendant circumstances,' *v.* p. 232.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quotā hōrā nuntiī ad Caesarcm perveniunt?
2. quid facit ille?
3. quot mīlia passuum Crassī castra aberant?
4. quae eī mandat?
5. nonne statim Caesari pāret?
6. ad quem et quibus cum mandatīs (*orders*) Caesar alterum nuntium mittit?
7. cūr reliquās cōpiās nōn exspectandās putat?
8. unde equitātum colligit?

LESSON 55.

SOME USES OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.

A. The ablative of Separation

is used with or without a preposition after verbs and adjectives of *removing, depriving, wanting*, especially when such verbs are compounded with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex.**

e.g. cōnātū dēsistere coactī sunt.

** they were compelled to desist from the attempt.*

hostēs (cx) fīnibus suīs excesserant.

the enemy had left their territories.

Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliātur.

Gaul is bereft of all her nobles.

pāne egeō.¹

I want bread.

urbs nūda praeſidiō.

a city naked of defence.

B. The ablative of Attendant Circumstances.²

plūribus praeſentibus eās rēs iactārī nōluit.

he did not wish those matters to be discussed when several people were present.

multō diē cōpiās reduxit.

late in the day he led-back his forces.

¹ egeō often takes the gen., e.g. auxili egēmus, *we want help.*

² This use of the abl. is closely connected with the abl. of Manner, and the abl. absolute (v. Less. 13 and 14).

C. The ablative of Instrument.

(1) **barbarī saxīs iaculisque sēsē dēfendunt.***the natives defend themselves with stones and javelins.***cīvitātēs dōnis pollicitātōibusque sollicitat.**• *he inveigles the states by gifts and promises.*(2) **opus** and **ūsus**,¹ signifying *need* or *want*, are used either

• (a) with the Instrumental abl.

e.g. **opus** est mihi pecūniā.*I want money* (lit. ‘*there is work for me with money*’).or (b) **opus** is used as a predicate to the thing needed.e.g. **opus** est mihi pecūniā.(lit. ‘*money is a work for me*’)**quaecumque opus** sunt comparantur.*whatever is needed is got-ready.*Compare **sī quid** mihi **opus** esset } *if I should want*
with **si quō** mihi **opus** esset } *anything.*

(3) The five Deponent verbs

fungor. 3. *I perform.***fruor.** 3. *I enjoy.*• **ūtor.** 3. *I use.***vescor.** 3. *I feed-on.***potior.** 4. *I get possession of.*²

are followed by an Instrumental abl.

¹ **ūsus** is very rare in Classical prose. ² **potior** also takes the gen.

'e.g. *Suēvī lacte atque carne vescuntur.*

the Suēvī feed on (lit. 'feed themselves with') milk and flesh.

omnibus in vītā commodīs fruimur.

we enjoy all the advantages of life.

(4) The abl. of Accompaniment without **cum**, used in *military* phrases, may be regarded as an Instrumental ablative.

e.g. Britannī equitātū atque essedīs prōgressī sunt.

the Britons advanced with cavalry and chariots.

subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs.

he followed-up with all his forces.

v. also p. 246, 3rd line of *Lectiō*.

D. The ablative of Cause.

levitātē animī novīs rēbus student.

because of their instability of mind they are revolutionary.

hostēs diūturnitātē pugnae dēfessī sunt.

the enemy were exhausted by the long continuance of the battle.

E. The ablative of Price.

vectigālia parvō pretiō redempta habuit.

he contracted for the taxes for a small price.

F. The ablative of Quality (with epithet¹).

mons magnā altitūdine.

a mountain of great height.

immānī corporū magnitūdine hominēs.

men of huge size.

¹ A genitive can take the place of the epithet, e.g. *vallum vīginti pedum altitūdine.*

G. The ablative of Manner.

oppidum nātūrā āc manū mūnītūm erat.

the town had been fortified by nature and hand.

barbari cōpiās paribus intervallīs instruxērunt.

the natives drew up their forces at regular intervals.

This abl. has generally an adjective in agreement—otherwise **cum** is used.

e.g. summā celeritātē }
but cum celeritātē } vēnit.

H. The ablative of Specification

denotes that in respect of which something is *or* is done.

scientiā rērum nauticārum praestant.

they excel in knowledge of seamanship.

Caesar valētūdine prosperus erat.

Caesar was sound in health.

pedestribus valent cōpiīs.

they are strong in infantry.

Such ablatives as

• •
mōre suō, according to his (their) custom.

institūtō suō, according to his (their) design.

may be referred to either Attendant Circumstances or Manner.

Translate the following orally and refer the ablatives to their respective kinds:

1. summā virtūte adulescens.
2. flūmen incrēdibili lēnitāte fluit.
3. vir summō locō nātus.
4. classis omnibus rēbus parāta.
5. māior nātū.
6. consuētūdine suā.
7. hostēs itinere prohibēbantur.
8. mīlitibus frūmentō opus est.
9. kostium castrīs potītī sumus.
10. quot talentīs hōc ēmīstī?

LECTIō.

*Labiēnus, Trēverōs veritus, Cicerōnī succurrere
nōn potest.*

Hōrā circiter tertīā ab *antecursōribus* dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum **xx** prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās publicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae liemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, *interitū* *Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, *cum* omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, *praesertim* quōs recentī victōriā

efferrī scīret, litterās Caesari remittit: quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditatūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs consēdisse.

antecursōrēs, m. pl., the advance guard.

litterae, ārūm, f. pl., documents.

interitus, ūs, m., destruction.

cum, since, because.

praesertim quōs efferrī scīret, especially as he knew that they were elated.

equitātūs . . . Trēverōrum, the forces of the Trēverī (*Possessive gen.*) consisting of cavalry, *etc.* (*gen. of Definition*).

LESSON 56.

SOME USES OF THE ABLATIVE CASE—Continued.

LOCATIVAL ABLATIVE.

A. Ablative of Amount of Difference.

Caius Marcō tribus annīs iūnior est.

Caius is younger than Marcus (abl. of Comparison)
by three years (abl. of Amount of Difference).with the verbs **abesse**, **distāre**.

is locus aequō ferē spatiō ab utrisque castrīs aberat.

that place was almost equidistant from both camps.

utriq̄e aequō ferē spatiō ab urbe distābant.

both sides were about the same distance from the city.

cf. legiōnem passibus ducentīs ab hostibus constituit.

*he drew up the legion two hundred paces from the enemy.*B. Place whence (*v. Less. 35*).C. Time within which (*v. also Less. 35*).hīs paucīs diēbus, *in these few days.*

tribus hōrīs Aduātucam venīre potestis.

*within three hours you can reach Aduātuca.*patrūm, hominū memorīā, *within the memory of our fathers, mankind.*

D. The ablative after Adjectives.

(1) those that denote *fulness, abundance, etc.*, *e.g. plēnus, full*¹; **praeditus**, endowed-with, possessed-of.¹ Also takes the gen., *e.g. domus plēna argenti*, a house full of silver plate.

e.g. *fossa s̄armentis plōna*, *a trench full of brushwood.*
plēna domus ornāmentis, *a house full of furniture.*
yir singularī audāciā praeditus, *a man endowed with unparalleled daring.*

(2) **dignus**, worthy; **indignus**, unworthy; **frētus**, relying-on.

e.g. *iuvenēs patre dignī*, *young men worthy of their father.*

hostēs, multitudine sōlā frētī, instant, *the enemy, relying on numbers alone, press on.*

Latinē dicenda vel scribenda:

1. Life is full of pleasure.
2. Whercupon (*say 'which having been done'*) all were full of excessive (*summus, a, um*) joy.
3. The Numidae used-to-feed (*imperf.*) mostly on milk and flesh.
4. Relying-on your (*pl.*) assistance, I shall endeavour to perform my duty to the republic.
5. The inhabitants of a city naked of defence (*v. p. 232*) cannot hold-out long, however brave they may be.
6. Amongst the ambassadors was a young-man of high birth (*v. p. 236, sent. 3*).
7. I judge (*existimō. 1.*) you unworthy of every honour.
8. Caesar crossed the river with the archers and slingers.

9. According-to their custom the Suēvī held a council (of war).
10. It was reported that the Germans were men of huge size and of incredible valour.

Quod dē-est suppeditāte:

1. dolorem capit— sentiō.
2. ill— incepturn memor— dignum vidētur.
3. in hōc proeliō interfic— Pīsō Aquītānus, am-
pliss— gener— nātus.
4. haec patr— memorīā ēvēnēr—.
5. Helvētiī reliqu— Gallōs virtū— praecēdunt.
6. noctū consuētūd— su— Rōmānī castra mūni—.
7. magnā — multitūdine hominum bellum ger—
instituit.
8. proxim— diē Caesar instit— suō cōpiās ēdūcit.
9. puer— mulier— que mōre su— passīs manib—
pācem petiērunt.
10. hostēs contrā Caesar— duōrum mīlium spati—
consēd— (perf.).

LECTIŌ.¹

*Caesar ad Cicerōnem pervenit: Nerviī obsidiōnem
relinquunt.*

Caesar, consiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium
legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum com-

¹ Most of this Lectiō has been given in an easier form in Less. 4,
p. 13.

mūnis salātis auxilium in celeritātē pōnēbat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captiōvis cognoscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc *Graccīs* conscriptam *litterīs* mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, mōnet ut trāgulam eum epistulā ad aūmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litteris scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertīō diē ā quōdān milite conspicitur, deūpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perfectam in conventū mīlitum recitat, maximāque omnēs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit. Gallī rē cognitā per explorātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt.

ēius, i.e. Labiēnī; r. last *Lectiō*.

opiniōne dēiectus redierat, disappointed in his expectation had been reduced to (come down to).

Graccīs litterīs, probably in the Greek *language*, not in Greek *characters*, because Caesar tells us elsewhere that the Gauls were acquainted with the latter.

Explain why *gerantur*, *dēferat*, and *abiciat* are in the Subj. mood.

Point out a negative Final clause, and an Indirect Question.

Vivā Vōce:

1. quā in rē Cacsar omnem spem salūtis pōnēbat?
2. cui persuādet ut epistulam ad Cicerōnem dēferat?
3. ad quid epistulam dēligāre Gallum iussit?
4. quae in litterīs scribit?
5. quot diēs trāgula ad turrim adhaerens latēbat?
6. Caesaris adventū quid faciunt Gallī?

LESSON 57.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD—*Passive and Deponent Verbs.*

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Imperative pass. of **amor** is as follows:Sing. 2nd pers. **amā-re, amā-tor**, be thou loved!3rd „ **amā-tor**, let him be loved!Pl. 2nd „ **amā-minī**, be ye loved!3rd „ **ama-ntor**, let them be loved!*Note:*

(1) the 3rd pers. is antiquated or poetic.

(2) the Imperative pass. is rare, its place being taken by the Subjunctive.

'e.g. *sīs amātus, mayest thou be loved!*
amētur, let him be loved!

Similarly:

	2nd conj. doce- ɔ , teach.	3rd conj. dūc- ɔ , lead.	4th conj. audi- ɔ , hear.
Sing. 2nd	{ docē-re (docē-tor,	{ dūc-e-re (dūc-i-tor	{ audi-re (audi-tor
„ 3rd	docē-tor	dūc-i-tor	dūc-i-tor
Pl. 2nd	docē-minī	dūc-i-minī	audi-minī
„ 3rd	doce-ntor	dūc-u-ntor	audi-u-ntor

The Imperative mood of Deponent verbs^c is similar to that of Passive verbs of their respective conjugations.

e.g. Imperative mood of **hortor**. 1.

Sing. hortā-re (*exhort!*) or hortā-tor, hortā-tor.

Pl. hortā-minī (*exhort!*), horta-ntor.

Imperative mood of **patior**. 3.

Sing. pate-re or pati-tor, pati-tor.

Pl. pati-minī, pati-u-ntor.

Give orally with the meanings of each person the Imperative mood of the verbs:

moror. 1., stop; **tueor.** 2., protect; **sequor.** 3., follow; **experior.** 4., try.

Verbō reddite:

1. militēs, signa sequimini!
2. miserēre (*miseror.* 2.) pauperum amicōrum!
3. bonī discipulī laudantor!
4. castra muniuntor!
5. ducem cōram adesse arbitrāminī!
6. semper, puer, rectē facere cōnāre!
7. ē nāvī ēgredimini!
8. semper officiō tuō fungere!
9. hōc mē ā tē impetrāre patere!
10. aequīs, captivī, pācis condicōnibus ūtimini!
(*accept!*)

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs lack some tenses or parts of tenses.

Amongst the commonest are the following:

āiō, I say.

Pres. Indic. āiō, ais, ait,¹ āiunt.

Imperf. Indic. āiē-bam, -bās, etc.

Pres. Subj. āiat.

Pres. Part. āiens.

inquam, I say.

Pres. Indic. inquam, inquis, inquit, inquimus, inquiunt.

Fut. Indic. inquiēs, inquiet.

Imperf. Indic. inquiēbat.

Perf. Indic. inquiī, inquistī, inquit.

Imperative. inque (*sing.*), inquīte (*pl.*).

meminī, I remember,² and **ōdī, I hate,**² are perfect in form but have a present meaning (cf. *cognōvī, I know*); *consuēvī, (I am accustomed)*.

Of them the following forms are found :

meminī, I remember.

Perf. Indic. memin-ī, -istī, etc., *I remember.*

Fut. Perf. Indic. memin-erō, -eris, etc., *I shall remember.*

Pluperf. Indic. memin-erām, -erās, etc., *I remembered.*

Perf. Subj. memin-erim, -eris, etc.

Pluperf. Subj. memin-issem, issēs, etc.

Perf. Infin. memin-isse, *to remember.*

Imperative. mementō (*sing.*) mementōte (*pl.*), *remember!*

¹ Also used as a perfect, 'he said.'

² Not, of course, defective in the same sense as *āiō* and *inquam*, but in that they lack tenses of the Present Stem.

ōdī, *I hate.*

Perf. Indic.	ōd-i, -istī, etc., <i>I hate.</i>
Fut. Perf. Indic.	ōd-erō, -eris, etc., <i>I shall hate.</i>
Pluperf. Indic.	ōd-erām, -erās, etc., <i>I hated.</i>
Perf. Subj.	ōd-erim, -eris, etc.
Pluperf. Subj.	ōd-issem, -issēs, etc.
Perf. Infin.	ōd-isce, <i>to hate.</i>
Perf. Part.	ōsus, <i>hating.</i>
Fut. Part.	ōsūrus, <i>about to hate.</i>

Verbō reddite:

1. mementōtē malōs (hominēs) extimescendōs esse !
2. petō ut meae ergā tē amīcitiae memineris !
3. nonne hominēs nātūrā servitūtis condiciōnem
ōdērunt ?
4. Dumnorix Caesarem et Rōmānōs ōderat quod
eōrum adventū ipsīus potentia dēminūta sit.
5. dux aliō sē in hīberna consiliō vēnisse meminerat.

*LECTIŌ.**Cicerō obsidiōne liberātur : Caesaris grātulātiō.*

Biduō post Caesar ipse cum hostibus congressus magnam clādem eīs infert, atque eōdem diē omnibus suīs incolumibus cōpiis ad Cicerōnem peryēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdinēs, mūnitōnēsque hostium admītrātur! Legiōne prōductā, cognoscit non decimū quēmque esse reliquum mīlitēm sine vulnere. Ex eīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō

ēius merito legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs *singillātim* tribūnosque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. De cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae *certius* ex captīvīs cognoscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam *proponit*; militēs consolātur et confirmat: *quod dētrimentum* culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, *hōc* aequiōre animō ferendum docet, *quod* beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetātiō neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

admirātur, he sees with surprise (*historic pres.*).

decimum quemque militem, *v. p. 62.*

singillātim, one by one.

certius, with more certainty (*compar. of certē*).

prōpōnit, he relates.

quōd dētrimentum, the disaster which.

hoc . . . quod, on this account . . . because, *v. p. 118.*

Point out 3 ablatives absolute, a historic pres., and an Indirect Question.

Vīvā Vōce:

1. quid facit Caesar postquam ad Cicerōnem per-
vēnit?
2. noīne eōs, qui singulārem virtūtem prae-
stiterant, collaudat?
3. ā quibus Sabīnūs et Cotta
superātī erant? (*v. p. 197*).
4. quā dē causā dētri-
mentum acceptum erat?
5. quōmodo Caesar militēs
hortātur nē sē animō dēmittant?

LESSON 58.

RECAPITULATORY.

1. Give the Acc. Sing., Gen. Pl., Gender, and Meaning of palūs, funda, oppugnātiō, ēventus, ager, fūmus, clāmor, stīpendium, nox, mons, domus, mulier.

2. Decline together in Sing. and Pl.

hīc fortis adulescens.

audax illud inceptum.

3. Mention some verbs and adjectives that govern the abl. case.

4. Give the Gen. Sing. and Acc. Pl. (all genders) of quisquam, hīc, uter, ullus, nēmō (Sing. only).

5. What are the four types of regular conditional sentences?

6. Give the Principal Parts of dēferō, differō, efferō, inferō, torreō, queror, necō, perfugiō, fungor, patior, expellō, dēsistō, dēserō, consīdō.

7. What constructions follow the verbs ōrō, iubeō, nōn dubitō, recūsō, vereor? Give an instance of each.

8. *Anglice reddite*:

1. aestās prope exacta erat.
2. eā virtūtē erat ut numquam cēderet.
3. tibi fidem praestō.
4. mōre Gallicō.
5. sicutī partā iam victoriā.

9. Give the other degrees of comparison of ultrā, audax, acriter, lātius, vehementissimē, propior, magis.

10. Give instances of verbs, compounded with prepositions, which take a dative case.

11. Make up sentences to show the use of *quān* and *quōminus*.

12. *Latīnē reddite*:

1. from the beginning of the siege.
2. in the middle of the voyage (*cursus, ius*, m.).
3. day by day the siege became fiercer (*gravis, e*).
4. try, soldiers, to frighten the enemy as much as possible.
5. we all must die.
6. the departure was like a flight.
7. the enemy stand-their-ground with great bravery.

13. Write out in full, with meanings of each person, the Imperative mood of adorior. 4. *I attack*.

14. Explain the cases of the words in italics in the following:

1. *hōc mihi ex ūsū accidit.*
2. *lēgātus castrīs praeficitur.*
3. *id parvī ēmī.*
4. *paulō longius aberat.*
5. *ducī iter faciendum est.*
6. *mīlitī gladiō opus est.*
7. *Balbus Cāiō minor nātū est.*
8. *ventus nāvigationī idōneus.*
9. *hīc illī virtūte anteferendus est.*
10. *tria mīlia passuum prōgressus sum.*
11. *cohortem labōrantibus suīs subsidiō mīsit.*
12. *hōrā circiter sextā profectus est.*

15. Parse oportēret, consulēs (2 ways), eō (4 ways), adhaesit, cāsū (2 ways).

LATIN PASSAGES

THE following extracts from Caesar (B. G. v. chaps. 24-37, omitting certain portions) recount a disaster which in the year 54 B.C. befell Q. Titurius Sabinus, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, two of Caesar's *legati*, and the fifteen cohorts under their command.

They had been sent to keep order in the country of the Eburonēs (in modern Belgium), whose chiefs were Ambiorix and Catuvolcus.

These passages are meant to be read rapidly in Latin, with no conscious attempt at translation into English. The main object should be to get the general drift of the events narrated, with a view to sustaining interest in the story as a whole. The meanings of unfamiliar words are given in the footnotes.

The reading should be done in class, pupils successively reading short passages. It is most important that they should show by their manner and tone of voice that they have a general notion of what they are reading about. This may be tested by oral questions.

Attention should be paid to correct pronunciation. Passages to be learnt by heart and said in class may be set for homework.

1. Subductis¹ nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae² peractō, quod eō annō frumentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs³ angustiūs⁴ prōvēnerat,⁴ coactus est⁵ legiōnēs in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinōs ducendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī,

¹ having been beached.

² loc. case.

³ drought.

⁴ had thriven scantily.

⁵ sc. Caesar.

tertiam in Esubiōs L. Rosciō, quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confīniō¹ Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit. Ünam legiōnem, quam proximē trans Padum² conscripserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter 5 Mosam ac Rhēnum, qui sub imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvoleī erant, mīsit. His militibus Q. Titūrium Sabinū et L. Aurunculēum Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

2. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum³ est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis⁴ ortum est ab 10 Ambiorige et Catuvoleō; qui cum⁴ ad fīnēs regnī sui Sabinō Cottaeque praestō⁵ fuissent⁵ frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomari Trēverī nuntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt⁶ subitōque oppressis lignātōribus⁷ magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostri 15 arma cēpissent vallumque ascendissent atque ünā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissis equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, despēratā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnatiōne reduxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, uti aliqui⁸ ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret⁹: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere 20 vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī¹⁰ posse spērārent.¹¹

3. Mittitur ad eōs colloquēndī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris¹² Q. Titūri, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, qui iam ante missū¹³ Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre consuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum 25 locūtus est: sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum¹⁴ eī confitērī¹⁴ dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset, quod Aduātucī finitimiis suis pendere consuēset, quodque

¹ confīnes, borders.

² The river Po.

³ rebellion.

⁴ though.

⁵ they had met.

⁶ incited.

⁷ wood-cutters.

⁸ for aliquis (subst.).

⁹ should go forward.

¹⁰ lessened.

¹¹ they hoped.

¹² intimate friend.

¹³ despatch (subst.).

¹⁴ to acknowledge a very great debt.

ei et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissi essent, quōs
 Aduātūcī p̄bsidū numerō missōs apud sē in servitūtē et
 catēnīs¹ tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātōnē
 castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntātē suā fēcisse, sed coactū²
 cīvitātīs. Cīvitātī porro³ hanc fuisse belli causam, quod⁴ 5
 repentinae Gallōrum cōniūrātōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id
 sē facile ex humilitātē⁵ suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeo sit
 imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpīlīs populum Rōmānum superāri
 posse confidat.

4. Sed esse Galliae commūne consilium: omnibus hibernis¹⁰
 Caesaris oppugnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō
 alterī legiōnī subsidiō venire posset. Nōn facile Gallōs
 Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim⁶ cum⁸ de recipērandā
 commūni libertātē consilium initum vidērētur. Quibus⁷
 quoniam prō pietātē⁸ satisfēcerit, habēre⁹ nunc sē ratiōnem⁹ 15
 officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris: monēre, ūrāre Titūrium prō
 hospitiō, ut suae ac militū salūti consulat. Magnum
 manūrī Germānōrum conductam¹⁰ Rhēnum transisse; hanc
 adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum¹¹ esse consilium, velintne prius
 quam finitimī sentiant ēductōs ex hibernīs mīlītēs aut ad²⁰
 Cicerōnēm aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia
 passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud
 sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō confirmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs
 finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē consulere,
 quod hibernīs levētur,¹² et Caesari prō cīus meritis grātiam¹³ 25
 referre.¹³ Hāc ūrātōnē habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

5. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt.

¹ chains.

² compulsion.

³ moreover.

⁴ namely that.

⁵ insignificance.

⁶ especially when.

⁷ i.e. Gallis.

⁸ patriotism.

⁹ to take account of, consider.

¹⁰ hired.

¹¹ i.e. Sabīni et Cottae. ¹² it would be relieved. ¹³ to require.

Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dācēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē per-
 movēbantur, quod¹ civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem
 Eburōnum suā² sponte² populō Rōmānō bellum facerē aūsam³
 5 vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad consilium rem dēferunt, magna-
 que inter eōs existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius
 complūresque tribūnī militum et primōrum⁴ ordinum⁴
 centuriōnēs⁴ nihil temerē⁵ agendum neque ex hībernīs
 īniussū⁶ Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantasvīs⁷
 10 cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnitīs hībernīs docēbant:
 rem esse testimōniō,⁸ quod prīmū hostium impetū multīs
 ultrō⁹ vulnerib⁹ illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmen-
 tāriā nōn premī: intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā
 Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esset levius aut
 15 turpius quam auctōre¹⁰ hoste¹⁰ dē summīs rēbus capere
 consilium?

6. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō¹¹ factūros clāmitābat, cum
 mājōrēs manūs hostium adiunctis Germānīs convēnissent, aut
 cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptū.
 20 Brevem consulendī esse occāsiōnē. Caesarem (sē) arbitrārī
 profectum in Italiam; nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem
 spectāre¹²: subesse¹³ Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī
 Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ardēre¹⁴
 Galliam tot contumēliis acceptīs sub populi Rōmānī imperium
 25 redactam, superiōre glōriā rēi militāris exstinctā. Postrēmō
 quis hōc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiōrigem ad

¹ namely that. ² by itself, alone. ³ dared (*sc. esse*).

⁴ v. Less. 43, 'Lectiō. ⁵ hastily, rashly. ⁶ without the order.

⁷ as many as you like, *i.e.* however many. ⁸ proof (*predic. dat.*).

⁹ actually. ¹⁰ at the instigation of an enemy.

¹¹ too late. ¹² look at, consider. ¹³ was near.

¹⁴ was burning (for revenge).

ēiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in¹ utramque¹ partem¹ esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius,² nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si Gallia omnis³ cūm Germānīs consentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dis-⁵ sentīrent, consilium quem habēret exitum³? in quō si nōn prae-⁴ sens periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs⁴ esset timenda.

7. Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque⁵ ordinib⁹ āriter resisterētur, 'Vincite'⁶ inquit 'sī ita vultis' Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum' inquit 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear. Hi sapient⁷: sī gravius quid acciderit, abs⁸ tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō⁹ diē cum proximis hibernīs coniunctī¹⁵ commūnem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn reiectī et relēgatī¹⁰ longē ā cēteris aut ferrō¹¹ aut fame intereant.' Consurgit ex consiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ūrant, nē suā dissensiōne et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent; contrā in dissensiōne nullam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne ad mediam noctem perducit. Tandem dat¹² Cotta permōtus manūs¹²: superat sententia Sabīnī.

8. Prōnuntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Consūmitur vigiliis²⁵ reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō¹³ hibernōrum

¹ in either event.

² untoward.

³ outcome, issue.

⁴ famine.

⁵ v. note 4, paragraph 5.

⁶ have your way.

⁷ will be prudent.

⁸ from.

⁹ after to-morrow.

¹⁰ removed.

¹¹ sword.

¹² gives way, yields

¹³ furniture.

relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia² excōgitantur,² quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur, ut quibus² esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō⁵ Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentīs. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū³ vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sensērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō⁴ in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum¹⁰ exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars agminis in magnam convallem⁵ dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimosque⁶ premere et prīmōs prohibērē ascensū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

15. 9. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortesque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut⁷ eum omnia dēficere⁸ vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere consuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiā⁹ consilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitasset haec posse²⁰ in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūni salūtī dēcrat, et in appellandī cohortandisque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praeſtābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obire¹⁰ et quid quōque locō faciendum²⁵ esset prōvidere possent, iussērunt prōnuntiārī, ut impedimenta relinquērēt atque in orbem¹¹ consisterēt. Quod consilium etsī in ēiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum¹² nōn est,

¹ every reasōn is invented (to show).

² men to whom.

³ loud noise.

⁴ in two divisions.

⁵ defile.

⁶ the rear-guard.

⁷ in such a way that.

⁸ fail.

⁹ affair, action.

¹⁰ attend to, discharge.

¹¹ circle.

¹² to be blamed.

tamen incommodē accidit: nam et nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summo timōre et despēratiōne id factum vidēbatur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō¹ militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret,² clāmōre et flētū³ omnia complērentur.

10. At barbarīs consilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnuntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praeclāmātū atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde⁴ omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et numerō pugnandi parēs.⁵ Nostrī tamētsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiens⁶ quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnuntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōniciant neu⁷ propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant: levitātē⁸ armōrum et cotidiānā exercitatiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse: rursus sē ad signa recipientēs⁹ insequantur. 20

11. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam¹⁰ cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rursus cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressi, revertī cooperant, et¹¹ ab eis qui cesserant et¹¹ ab eis qui proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn¹² autem locum tenēre vellent, nec

¹ everywhere.

² hasten.

³ lamenting.

⁴ therefore.

⁵ equal, matched.

⁶ as often as.

⁷ and not.

⁸ lightness.

⁹ sc. Rōmānōs: sē is the obj. of recipientēs.

¹⁰ any.

¹¹ both . . . and.

¹² but if.

virtuti locus relinquebatur neque ab tantā multitudine coniecta tēla conferti¹ vitare² poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati³ multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magnā parte diēi consumptā, eum a primā luce ad hōram 5 octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsī esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui superiore annō p̄imum⁴ pīlum⁴ duxerat,⁴ virō fortī et magnae auctōritatis, utrumque femur⁵ trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius ēiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pugnans, dum circumventō filiō, subvenit, interro ficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinesque adhortans in⁶ adversum⁶ os⁶ fundā vulnerātur.

12. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque 15 pareat. Ille appellātus respondet: si velit sēcum colloqui, licēre; spērāre a multitudine impetrāri posse quod ad⁷ militum salūtem pertineat; ipsi vērō nihil nocitum⁸ īri,⁸ inque eam rem sē suam fidem⁹ interpōnere.⁹ Ille cum¹⁰ Cottā sauciō commūnicat,¹⁰ si videātur,¹¹ pugnā ut excēdant 20 et cum Ambiorige ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salūte impetrāri posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

13. Sabinus quōs in¹² praeſentia¹² tribunōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, 25 et cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat: Interim,

¹ closely packed.

² to avoid.

³ harassed.

⁴ v. note 4, paragraph 5.

⁵ thigh.

⁶ full in the face.

⁷ concerned.

⁸ fut. infin. pass. of noceō.

⁹ he pledged his word.

¹⁰ consults.

¹¹ seemed good.

¹² at that time, under present circumstances (sc. *tempora*).

¹³ what was ordered.

dum dē condicōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque consultō¹ ab Amī² orige instituitur sermō, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victoriām conclāmant atquē ululātum² tollunt impetuque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur eum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant̄ ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vallum prōicit; ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnans occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnatiōnem sustinent; nocte ad unum omnēs desperatā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio ēlapsi³ incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum hēgātum in hiberna perveniunt, atque eum de rebus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

¹ designedly.

² war-cry.

³ having escaped.

GRAMMAR SUMMARISED,

Nouns ending in -us.

	Case.	2nd Declension.	3rd Declension.	4th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	mūr-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>a wall</i>	virtūs, <i>f.</i> , <i>valour.</i>	pondus, <i>n.</i> , <i>a weight.</i>
	Acc.	mūr-um	virtūt-em	port-um
	Gen.	mūr-i	virtūt-is	port-ūs
	Dat.	mūr-ō	virtūt-i	port-uī
	Abl.		virtūt-ē	port-ū
Plur.	Nom.	mūr-i	virtūt-ēs	port-ūs
	Acc.	mūr-ōs		port-ūs
	Gen.	mūr-ōrum	virtūt-um	port-uūm
	Dat.	mūr-īs	virtūt-ibus	port-ibus
	Abl.			port-ibus
		<i>Similarly.</i> amic-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>friend.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> iuventūs, <i>f.</i> , <i>youth.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> corp-us (-oris), <i>n., body.</i>
		anu-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>year.</i>	salus, <i>f.</i> , <i>safety.</i>	er-ūs (-ūris) <i>n., leg.</i>
		autumn-us, <i>m., autumn.</i>	senectūs, <i>f.</i> , <i>old-age.</i>	frīg-us (-oris), <i>n., cold.</i>
		clipe-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>shield.</i>	palūs (-ūdis), <i>f., a marsh.</i>	gen-us (-eris), <i>n., kind.</i>
		digit-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>finger.</i>	etc.	lat-us (-eris), <i>n., flank.</i>
		equ-us, <i>m.</i> , <i>horse.</i>		etc.
		etc.		

Nouns ending in -a, -um, -ū.

	Case.	1st Declension.	2nd Declension.	4th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	hast-a, <i>f.</i> , <i>spear.</i>	dōn-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>gift.</i>	cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>horn,</i> <i>wing.</i>
	Acc.	hast-am		
	Gen.	hast-ae	dōn-ī	cornū-s
	Dat.	hast-ae	dōn-ō	cornū.
	Abl.	hast-ā		
Plur.	Nom.	hast-ae	don-a	cornu-a
	Acc.	hast-ās		
	Gen.	hast-ārum	dōn-ōrum	cornu-um
	Dat.	hast-īs	dōn-īs	corn-ibus
	Abl.			
		<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>
		agricol-a, <i>m.</i> , <i>farmer.</i>	aur-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>gold.</i>	genu, <i>n.</i> , <i>knee.</i>
		amiciti-a, <i>f.</i> , <i>friendship.</i>	castell-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>fort.</i>	
		culp-a, <i>f.</i> , <i>fault.</i>	essed-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>chariot.</i>	
		Eurōp-a, <i>f.</i> , <i>Europe.</i>	ferr-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>iron.</i>	
		poēt-a, <i>m.</i> , <i>poet.</i> etc.	iuss-um, <i>n.</i> , <i>com- mand.</i> etc.	

Nouns ending in *-er*.

	Case.	2nd Declension.		3rd Declension.	
Sing.	Nom.	puer, <i>m.</i> , <i>boy.</i>	liber, <i>m.</i> , <i>book.</i>	pater, <i>m.</i> , <i>father.</i>	iter, <i>n.</i> , <i>journey.</i>
	Acc.	puer-um	libr-um	patr-em	
	Gen.	puer-i	libr-i	patr-is	itiner-is
	Dat.	puer-o	libr-o	patr-i	itiner-i
	Abl.			patr-e	
Plur.	Nom.	puer-i	libr-i	patr-es	itiner-a
	Acc.	puer-o ^s	libr-o ^s		
	Gen.	puer-orum	libr-orum	patr-um	itiner-um
	Dat.	puer-is	libr-is	patr-ibus	itiner-ibus
	Abl.				
		<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>
		aquifer, <i>m.</i> , <i>standard-</i> <i>bearer.</i>	ager, <i>m.</i> , <i>field.</i>	mat ^{er} , <i>f.</i> , <i>mother.</i>	vēr (vēr-is), <i>n., spring.</i>
		liberī, <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>children.</i>	aper, <i>m.</i> , <i>wild boar.</i>	frāter, <i>m.</i> , <i>brother.</i>	(no plural.)
		signifer, <i>m.</i> , <i>standard-</i> <i>bearer.</i>	faber, <i>m.</i> , <i>engineer.</i>	mulier, <i>f.</i> , (mulier-is), <i>woman.</i>	
		vesper, <i>m.</i> , <i>evening.</i> (plural not used.)	nostrī, <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>our-men.</i>	passer (pas- ser-is) <i>m.</i> , <i>sparrow.</i>	
			etc.	vesper (ves- per-is), <i>m.</i> , <i>evening.</i>	

• • Nouns ending in -es.

	Case.	3rd Declension.	5th Declension.
Sing.	Nom.	eques, <i>m.</i> , horse- man.	clad-ēs, <i>f.</i> , dis- aster, defeat.
	Acc.	equit-ēm	clad-ēm
	Gen.	equit-is	clad-is
	Dat.	equit-ī	clad-ī
	Abl.	equit-ē	clad-ē
Plur.	Nom.	equit-ēs	clad-ēs
	Acc.	equit-ēs	clad-ēs
	Gen.	equit-um	clad-ium
	Dat.	equit-ibus	clad-ibus
	Abl.	equit-ibus	clad-ibus
Similarly.			
miles, <i>m.</i> soldier.			
obses, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> , hostage.			
pedes, <i>m.</i> , foot soldier.			
etc.			
Similarly.			
caedēs, <i>f.</i> , slaughter.			
sēdēs, <i>f.</i> , seal, place.			
vallēs, <i>f.</i> , valley.			
speciēs, <i>f.</i> , ap- pearance.			
etc.			
Similarly.			
aciēs, <i>f.</i> , line of battle.			
fidēs, <i>f.</i> , faith.			
rēs, <i>f.</i> , thing.			

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.

	Case.	Nouns in -is.	Nouns in -ās.	Nouns in -ō.
Sing.	Nom.	collis, <i>m.</i>	cīvitās, <i>f.</i>	leō, <i>m.</i>
	Acc.	coll-ēm	cīvitāt-ēm	leōn-ēm
	Gen.	coll-is	cīvitāt-is	leōn-is
	Dat.	coll-ī	cīvitāt-ī	leōn-ī
	Abl.	coll-e	cīvitāt-e	leōn-e
Plur.	Nom.	coll-ēs ¹	cīvitāt-ēs	leōn-ēs
	Acc.	coll-ēs(is)		
	Gen.	coll-iūm	cīvitāt-um	leōn-um
	Dat.	coll-ibūs	cīvitāt-ibūs	leōn-ibūs
	Abl.			
		<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i>
		avis, <i>f.</i>	aestās, <i>f.</i>	cālō, <i>m.</i>
		cīvis, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	auctōritās, <i>f.</i>	praedō, <i>m.</i>
		ensis, <i>m.</i>	potestās, <i>f.</i>	latrō, <i>m.</i>
		finis, <i>m.</i>	facultās, <i>f.</i>	<i>Nouns in -iō.</i>
		ignis, <i>m.</i>	difficultās, <i>f.</i>	condiciō, <i>f.</i>
		iuvenis, <i>m.</i>	tempestās, <i>f.</i>	dēditiō, <i>f.</i>
		etc.		ratiō, <i>f.</i>
				cohortatiō, <i>f.</i>
				ēruptiō, <i>f.</i>
				etc.

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS—*continued.*

Case.	Nouns in -en.	Nouns in -e.	Nouns in -or.
Sing.	Nom. } nōmen, <i>n.</i>	mar-e, <i>n.</i>	dolor, <i>m.</i>
	Acc. } nōmen		dolōr-em
	Gen. nōmin-is	mar-is	dolōr-is
	Dat. nōmin-ī	mar-ī	dolōr-ī
	Abl. nōmin-e	mar-ī	dolōr-e
Plur.	Nom. } nōmin-a	mar-ia	dolōr-ēs
	Acc. } nōmin	mar-ium	dolōr-um
	Gen. nōmin-um		
	Dat. } nōmin-ibus	mar-ibus	dolōr-ibus
	Abl. }		
	<i>Similarly.</i> carmen, <i>n.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> cubile, <i>n.</i>	<i>Similarly.</i> arbor(-ōris), <i>f.</i>
	agmen, <i>n.</i>	calear, <i>n.</i>	color, <i>m.</i>
	certamen, <i>n.</i>	animal, <i>n.</i>	labor, <i>m.</i>
	discrimen, <i>n.</i>	missile, <i>n.</i>	funditor, <i>m.</i>
		rēte, <i>n.</i> (abl. rēte)	ūxor, <i>f.</i>
			vēnātor, <i>m.</i>

ADJECTIVES IN **-us** (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	long- us	long- a	long- um	long- i	long- ae	long- a
Acc.	long- um	long- am	long- um	long- os	long- as	long- a
Gen.	long- i	long- ae	long- i	long- orum	long- arum	long- orum
Dat.	long- o	long- ae	long- o	}	long- is (<i>all genders</i>)	
Abl.	long- o	long- a	long- o			

N.B.—The following adjectives, with their compounds, have the Genitive Singular in **-ius**, and the Dative in **i** in all genders.

alius (<i>n. alius</i>), <i>other.</i>	tētus, <i>whole of.</i>
nullus, <i>none.</i>	ullus, <i>any.</i>
sólus, <i>alone.</i>	únus, <i>one.</i>

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	nullus	nulla	'nullūm
Acc.	nullum	nullam	nullum
Gen.		nulliūs	
Dat.		nulli	
Abl.	nullō	nullā	nullō

ADJECTIVES IN -er (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION).

Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tener- a	tener- a	tener-um	pulcher	pulchr-a	pulchr-um
Acc.	tener-um	tener-am	tener-um	pulchr-um	pulchr-am	pulchr-um
Gen.	tener- i	tener-ae	tener-i	pulchr-i	pulchr-ae	pulchr-i
Dat.	tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō	pulchr-ō	pulchr-ae	pulchr-ō
Abl.	tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō	pulchr-ō	pulchr-ā	pulchr-ō
Nom.	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-a	pulchr-i	pulchr-ae	pulchr-a
Acc.	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a	pulchr-ōs	pulchr-ās	pulchr-a
Gen.	tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum	pulchr-ōrum	pulchr-ārum	pulchr-ōrum
Dat.	tener-is { all genders }	{ all genders }	{ }	pulchr-īs (all genders)	pulchr-īs (all genders)	pulchr-īs (all genders)
Abl.						

Similarity.

- liber, era, erum, frer,
- miser, era, erum, writehd.
- pōmifer, era, erum, fūnit-harint.
- noster, om̄i,
- dexter, right hand.
- impiger, agit.
- sinister, left hand.
- vester, mor.

Similarity.

N.B.—The adjectives *alter*, *neuter*, *uter* make Genitive Singular in -ius, and I^{native} Singular in -i.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

THREE TERMINATIONS.

Case.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e
Acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e
Gen.		ācr-is	
Dat.		ācr-i	
Abl.		ācr-i	
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācr-ia
Acc.	ācr-ēs(is)	ācr-ēs(is)	ācr-ia
Gen.		ācr-iūm	
Dat.	}		
Abl.		ācr-ibus	

Similarly.

December, bris, bre.

equester, tris, tre.

November, bris, bre.

pedester, tris, tre.

etc.

celer keeps the **e** throughout ; celer, celeris, celere,
Acc. celarem, celere, etc.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES—*continued.*

Case.	TWO TERMINATIONS.		ONE TERMINATION.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	brev-is	brev-e		ingens
Acc.	brev-em	brev-e	ingent-em	ingens
Gen.		brev-is		ingent-is
Dat.		brev-i		ingent-i
Abl.		brev-i		ingent-i(e)
Nom.	brevēs	brevia	ingentēs	ingentia
Acc.	brev-ēs(is)	brev-ia	ingent-ēs(is)	ingent-ia
Gen.		brev-iūm		ingent-iūm
Dat.	}	brev-iūbus	}	ingent-iūbus
Abl.				
	<i>Similarly.</i>		<i>Similarly.</i>	
	Aprilis, e.		sapiens.	
	crūdēlis, e.		audax (audāc-).	
	dulcis, e.		duplex (duplic-).	
	facilis, e.		ferox (ferōc-).	
	fortis, e.		vēlox (vēlōc-).	
	etc.		etc.	

N.B.—The adjective **dīves** (rich) is of 'one termination,' but has the following exceptional forms:—

Abl. sing., dīvite; *nom. pl. neut.*, dītia (for dīvitia); and *gen. pl.*, dīvit-ūm.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR.

Case.	First Person.	Second Person.	Third Person.
Nom.	ego I.	tū , thou.	Personal
Acc.	mē , me.	tē , thee.	Pronouns of
Gen.	mei , of me.	tui , of thee.	this person
Dat.	mihi , to, for me.	tibi , to, for thee.	— <i>he, she, it,</i>
Abl.	ā mē , from me.	ā tē , about thee.	<i>they</i> —are
			wanting.

PLURAL.

Case.	First Person.	Second Person.	Third Person.
Nom.	nos , we.	vōs , you.	Personal
Acc.	nōs , us.	vōs , you.	Pronouns of
Gen.	nostrum(i) , of us.	vestrum(i) , of you	this person
Dat.	nōbis , to us.	vōbis , to, for you.	— <i>he, she, it,</i>
Abl.	nōbis (cum) , with us.	ā vōbis , by you.	<i>they</i> —are
			wanting.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflexive Pronoun of the third person is thus declined.

Acc.	sē (sēsē)	himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Gen.	sūi	of himself, etc.
Dat.	sibī	to, for himself, etc.
Abl.	prō sē (sēsē)	on-behalf of himself, etc.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

	Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem. • Neut.
Sing.	Nom.	hic	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud	is	ea
	Acc. •	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud	eum	id
	Gen.		hūius			illius			ēius
	Dat.		hūic			illī		eī	
	Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illā	eō	eō
Plur.	Nom.	hi	hae	haec	illi	illae	illa	eī(iī)	eaē
	Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa	eōs	eaē
	Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	eōrum	eōrum
	Dat.						illis		
	Abl.		his					eīs(iīs)	
									Similarly.
								ipse, ipsa, ipsum.	Similarly.
									idem, eadem, idem.
									m changes to n before the termination -dēm.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

	Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	Nom. { quis { qui	qua (quae)	quid (subst.) { quod (adj.)	aliquis (subst.) { aliqui (adj.)	aliquid (subst.) { aliquod (adj.)	aliquid (subst.) { aliquam (adj.)	aliquid (subst.) { aliquam (adj.)
	Acc. quem	quam	quid (subst.) { quod (adj.)	aliquem	aliquam	aliquam	aliquam
Gen.		cuius					
Dat.	Abl.	quō	quō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō
Plur.	Nom. qui	quae	qua	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua	aliqua
	Acc. quōs	quās	qua	aliquōs	aliquās	aliquās	aliquās
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum	aliquōrum
Dat.	Abl.	quibus					
Sing.	Nom. quidam	quaedam	{ quiddam (subst.) quoddam (adj.)	quisquam	quisquam	quisquam	quisquam ¹ (subst.)
	Acc. quandam	quandam	{ quiddam (subst.) quoddam (adj.)	quemquam	quemquam	quemquam	quodquam (adj.)
Gen.		cuiusdam					
Dat.	Abl.	quōdam	cuidam	quōdam	quāquam	quāquam	quōquam
Plur.	Nom. quidam ²	quaedam	quōdam	quōdam	quāquam	quāquam	quāquam
	Acc. quōsdam	quasdam	quaedam	quasdam	quāquam	quāquam	quāquam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quaedam	quārundam	quārūmquam	quārūmquam	quōrūrūmquam
Dat.	Abl.	quibusdam					

¹ Or 'quidquam.'For decension of *quisque*, v. Less. 16.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

	Case.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.	Nom.	qui	quae	quod	quis	quis	quid
	Acc.	quem	quam	quod	(qui)	(quae)	(quod)
	Gen.		cūius		quem	quam	quid (quod)
	Dat.		cui				
	Abl.	quō	quā	quō			
Plur.	Nom.	qui	quae	quae	The remaining cases of the Singular, and all cases of the Plural		
	Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	(except n. pl. Nom. and Acc. 'qua') are		
	Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quorum	like those of 'qui.'		
	Dat.	quibus (quīs)					
	Abl.						

THE VERB 'sum.'

Present	sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt.
Future	erō, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erunt.
Imperfect	eram, erās, erat, erāmus, eratis, erant.
Perfect	fu-i -istī -it -imus -istis -ērunt or -ēre.
Future Perfect	fu-erō -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītis -erint.
Pluperfect	fu-eram -erās -erat -erāmus -erātis -erant.

For Subj. Mood *v. Less. 31, pp. 131, 132.*

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Present Tense.

1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.
port-ō	time-ō	dūc-ō	faci-ō
portā-s	timē-s	dūc-i-s	faci-s
porta-t	time-t	dūc-i-t	faci-t
portā-mus	timē-mus	dūc-i-mus	faci-mus
portā-tis	timē-tis	dūc-i-tis	faci-tis
porta-nt	time-rt	dūc-u-nt	faci-u-nt

REMAINING TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

Future, <i>I shall carry,</i> etc.	portā timē dūc faci	portā timē dūc faci	$\begin{cases} -bō & -bis & -bit & -bimus & -bitis & -bunt \\ \} & & & & & \end{cases}$
--	------------------------------	------------------------------	---

Imperfect, <i>I was carrying,</i> etc.	portā timē dūc faciē mūniē	portā timē dūc faciē mūniē	$\begin{cases} -bam & -bās & -bat & -bāmus & -bātis & -bānt \\ \} & & & & & \end{cases}$
--	--	--	--

REMAINING TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE (*continued*).

Perfect, <i>I have carried,</i> or <i>I carried, etc.</i>	portāv timu dux fēe mūniv	portāv timu dux fēe mūniv	1 -istī ¹ -it -imus -istis ¹ -ērunt ¹ or -ēre.
Future Perfect, <i>I shall have carried, etc.</i>	portāv ² timu dux fēe mūniv ³	portāv ² timu dux fēe mūniv ³	erō -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītīs -erint.
Pluperfect, <i>I had carried, etc.</i>	portāv ⁴ timu dux fēe mūniv ⁵	portāv ⁴ timu dux fēe mūniv ⁵	erām -erās -erāt -erāmūs -erātīs -erānt

¹ or portasti, portastis, portarunt (are)
or mūnistī, mūnistis, mūniērunt (ere).

² or portārō, portārīs. etc.

³ or mūniero, mūnieris, etc.

⁴ or portāram, portārās, etc.

⁵ or mūnieram, mūnierās, etc.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Tense.	1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	Mixed ¹ Conj.	4th Conj.
Present	port-em	tene-au	due-am	capi-am	muni-am
	port-ēs	tene-ās	duc-ās	capi-ās	muni-ās
	port-et	tene-at	duc-at	capi-at	muni-at
	port-ēmus	tene-āmus	duc-āmus	capi-āmus	muni-āmus
	port-ētis	tene-ātis	duc-ātis	capi-ātis	muni-ātis
	port-ēnt	tene-ant	duc-ant	capi-ant	muni-ant
Imperfect	portārem	tenērem	duce-reñ	cape-reñ	muni-reñ
	portārēs	tenērēs	duce-ret	cape-ret	muni-ret
	portā-ret	tenē-ret	duce-rēmus	cape-rēmus	muni-rēmus
	portārēmus	tenērēmus	duce-rētis	cape-rētis	muni-rētis
	portārētis	tenērētis	duce-reñt	cape-reñt	muni-reñt
	portārēnt	tenērēnt	duce-reñtis	cape-reñtis	muni-reñtis
Perfect	portā-(ve)rim	ten-u-erim	dux-erim	cēp-erim	muni-(v)-erim ¹
	portā-(ve)ris	ten-u-eris	dux-eris	cēp-eris	muni-(v)-eris
	portā-(ve)rit	ten-u-erit	dux-erit	cēp-erit	muni-(v)-erit
	portā-(ve)rimus	ten-u-erimus	dux-erimus	cēp-erimus	muni-(v)-erimus
	portā-(ve)ritis	ten-u-eritis	dux-eritis	cēp-eritis	muni-(v)-eritis
	portā-(ve)rint	ten-u-erint	dux-erint	cēp-erint	muni-(v)-erint
Pluperfect	portā-(vi)ssem	ten-u-issem	dux-issem	cēp-issem	muni-(v)-issem ¹
	portā-(vi)ssēs	ten-u-issēs	dux-issēs	cēp-issēs	muni-(v)-issēs
	portā-(vi)ssset	ten-u-issset	dux-issset	cēp-issset	muni-(v)-issset
	portā-(vi)ssēmus	ten-u-issēmus	dux-issēmus	cēp-issēmus	muni-(v)-issēmus
	portā-(vi)ssetis	ten-u-issētis	dux-issētis	cēp-issētis	muni-(v)-issētis
	portā-(vi)sssent	ten-u-isssent	dux-isssent	cēp-isssent	muni-(v)-isssent

¹ in the form muniерim, munissem, *etc.* the I is shortened before a vowel.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

	1st. Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	Mixed' Conj.	4th' Conj.
Present	portā-re	tenē-re	duce-re	cup-re	mūni-re
Perfect	portā-(vi)sse	ten-u-issee	dux-issee	cēp-issee	mūni-(vi)sse
Future	portā-t-urus	ten-t-urus	duc-t-urus	cap-t-urus	mūni-t-urus
	(esse)	(esse)	(esse)	(esse)	(esse)
GERUNDS.					
Nom. & Ace.	portā-ndum	tenē-ndum	duce-ndum	cap-i-e-ndum	mūni-e-ndum
Gen.	portā-ndi	tenē-ndi	ducē-ndi	cap-i-e-ndi	mūni-e-ndi
Ist. & Abl.	portā-ndo	tenē-ndo	ducē-ndo	cap-i-e-ndo	mūni-e-ndo
SUPINES.					
Acc. & Abl.	portā-t-um	ten-t-um	duc-t-um	cap-t-um	mūni-t-um
Dat.	portā-t-ū	ten-t-ū	duc-t-ū	cap-t-ū	mūni-t-ū
PARTICIPLES.					
Present	portā-ns	tenē-ns	duce-ns	cap-i-e-ns	mūni-e-ns
Future	portā-t-urus	ten-t-urus	duc-t-urus	cap-t-urus	mūni-t-urus

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **portor**, *I am carried.*

PRESENT TENSE.		FUTURE TENSE.		IMPERFECT TENSE.	
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
port <i>(ā)</i> or	porte- r	portā- bor	portā- bar	portā- rer	portā- rēris(rēre)
portā- ris	portē- ris(re)	portā- beris(bere)	portā- bāris(bāre)	portā- rētūr	portā- rētūr
portā- tur	portē- tur	portā- bitur	portā- bātūr	portā- rēmūr	portā- rēmīnī
portā- mur	portē- mur	portā- bīmūr	portā- bāmūr	portā- rēmīnī	portā- rēmīnī
portā- mini	portē- mini	portā- bīmīnī	portā- bāmīnī	portā- rēmīnī	portā- rēmīnī
porta- ntur	porte- ntur	portā- būntūr	portā- bāntūr	portā- rēntūr	portā- rēntūr

PERFECT TENSE.		FUT. PERF. TENSE.		P. ¹ (PERFECT TENSE.	
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
portitūs sum	portitūs sim	portitūs erō	portitūs eram	portitūs essem	portitūs essem
,” es	,” sit	,” eris	,” erās	,” es	,” es
,” est	,” simus	,” erit	,” erat	,” eset	,” eset
portitūi sumus	portitūi simus	portitūi erimus	portitūi eramus	portitūi essemus	portitūi essemus
,” estis	,” sitis	,” eritis	,” erātis	,” esetis	,” esetis
,” sunt	,” sint	,” erunt	,” erānt	,” essent	,” essent

Infinitive Mood. portā-**rī** (*pres.*) ; portatūs esse (*perf.*) ; portatūm irī (*fut.*).
 Perfect¹ Participle. portatūs.
 Gerundive. portā-ndūs.

Imperative Mood. *v.* Less. 57.

For Deponent verbs of the First Conjugation (*cōnor*, *hortor*, *conspicor*, *etc.*), *v.* p. 282.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **teneor**, *I am held.*

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
tenē¹	-or, -ris, -tur -mur, -minī, -ntur	-ar, -āris (āre), -ātur -āmūr, -āmīnī, -āntur	-bor, -beris (nere), -bitur -bimur, -bimīnī, -buntur	-bar, -bāris (bāre), -bātūr -bāmūr, -bāmīnī, -bāntur	-rer, -rēris (rēre), -rētūr -rēmūr, -rēmīnī, -rēntur
	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
tentus	sum, es, est	sim, sis, sit	erō, eris, erit	eram, erās, erat	essēm, essēs, esset
tentī	sumus, estis, sunt	simus, sitis, sint	erimus, eritis, erunt	erāmus, erātis, erant	essēmus, essētis, essent

Infinitive Mood. **tenē-rī** (*pres.*) ; tentus esse (*perf.*) ; tentum īri (*fut.*).

Perf. Participle. tentus.

Gerundive. tenē-ndus.

Imperative Mood. *v. Less. 57.* For Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation, (*pollicor, vereor, etc.*), *v. p. 282.*

¹ The ē is shortened before a vowel, tenē-or, tenē-ar, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE: **dūcor**, *I am led.*

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
	dūc-or, dūc-e-ris dūc-i-tur, dūc-i-mur dūc-i-mini, dūc-u-ntur	-ar, -āris (āre), -ātūr -āmūr, -āmīni, -antūr	-ēris (ēre), -ētūr -ēmīni, -antūr	-bar, (bāre) -bātūr -bāmūr, -bāmīni, -bāntūr	-rēris (rēre), -rētūr -rēmīni, -rēntūr
	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
ductus ducti	sum, es, est sumus, sunt	sim, sis, sit simus, sint	erō, eris, erit erimus, eritis, erunt	eram, erās, erat erāmus, erātis, erant	esem, eset essēmus, essētis, essent

Infinitive Mood. dūc-i (*pres.*); ductus esse (*perf.*); ductum iri (*fut.*).
 Perf. Participle. ductus.
 Gerundive. dūce-ndus.

Imperative Mood. *v. Less.* 57. For Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation (*fruor*, *loquor. sequor, etc.*), *v. p. 282.*

'MIXED' AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS—PASSIVE VOICE.

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Indic.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.
cap <i>i</i>	{ -or, -ris, ² -tur	-ar, -aris (are), -ātur	-ar, -ēris (ere), -ētur	-ēbar, (ēbare), ēbatur	rer, ³ (rere), -rētur
mūni ¹	{ -mūr, -mīni, -untur	-āmūr, -āmīni, -antur	-ēmūr, -ēmīni, -entur	-ēmāur, ēbāmīni, -ēbāntur	-rēmūr, -rēmīni, -rentur
	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	Fut. Perf. Indic.	Pluperf. Indic.	Pluperf. Subj.
captus	{ sum, es, est	sim, sis, sit	ero, eris, erit	eram, erās, erat	essem, esset
mūnitus	{ sumus, estis,	simus, sitis,	erimus, eritis,	erāmus, erātis,	essēmus, essētis,
capti	{ sunt	sint	erunt	erant	essent
	Infinitive Mood.	{ cap ¹ mūni-rī / p ² rīs.	captus esse mūnitus esse	perf.	captum irī mūnitum irī / fūt.
Perf. Participle.					

Gerundive.
Imperative Mood. ¹ Less. 57. For Deponent Verbs of the 'Mixed' Conjugation (aggregdior, mōrīor, patiōr, etc.), and of the Fourth Conjugation (experīor, potiōr, orīor, etc.), v. p. 282.

¹ The **i** is shortened before a vowel, mūnūntur, mūniēbar, etc.

² 2nd pers. sing. pres. indic.. capē-ris. ³ capiōr makes imperf. subj., capē-rer, -rēris, etc.

Deponent verbs are conjugated like the Passive voices of their respective Conjugations, except in the Future Infinitive, which is of the *Active* form. They have also (1) a form in *-re* in the 2nd sing. pres. indic. (2) Gerunds, Supines, and a Present Participle.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD OF SOME DEONENT VERBS.

	cōnor. 1.	vereor. 2.	loquor. 3.	patior. 'mixed.'	potior. 4.
Pres. Infin.	cōna-rī	verē-rī	loquī	patī	potī-rī
Perf.	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	locūtus esse	passus esse	potitus esse
Fut.	cōnātūrus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	locutūrus (esse)	passiūrus (esse)	potitiūrus (esse)
Gerunds	cōnāndum, i, ō	verēndum, i, ō	loquēndum, i, ō	patiēndum, i, ō	potiēndum, i, ō
Supines	cōnātūm, tū	veritūm, tū	locutūm, tū	passūm, sū	potitiūm, tū
Pres. Part.	cōnā-ns	verē-ns	loque-ns	pati-e-ns	poti-e-ns
Perf.	cōnātus	veritus	locūtus	passus	potitus
Fut.	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	locutūrus	passiūrus	potitiūrus
Gerundive ¹	cōnāndus	verēndus	loquēndus	patiēndus	potiēndus

X.B.—*morior*, 3. makes fut. part. *moritārus*.
orior. 4. makes pres. indic. 2nd sing. *orēris*, 3rd sing. *oritur*; imperf. subj. 3rd sing. *orērētur*, 3rd pl. *orērēntur*, fut. part. *orītrūs*.
potior. 4. makes pres. indic. 3rd sing. *potitūr*, 1st pl. *potiōmūr*.

SEMI-DEONENT VERBS.

For Active verbs, having no Perfect Stem, take a Deponent form in the Perfect tenses. They are called 'semi-deponent' verbs, and are

audeō. 2., I dare—*perf.* **ausus sum**.
gaudeō. 2., I rejoice—*perf.* **gāvīsus sum**.

ridō. 3., I trust—*perf.* **fīsus sum**.
soleō. 2., I am accustomed—*perf.* **soltus sum**.

¹ Only found of Transitive verbs, or of Intransitive verbs used impersonally.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

comm., common gen-	freq., frequentative.	prep., preposition.
der.	gov., governing.	pron., pronoun.
demonstr., demonstra-	indecl., indeclinable.	qualif., qualifying.
tive.	interrog., interrogative.	q.v., quod vide (which
dim., diminutive.	irreg., irregular.	sec).
distrib., distributive.	num., numeral.	v.a., verb active.
esp., especially.	part., participle.	v.n., verb neuter.

The numbers refer to the Lessons, in most cases to the first Lesson in which any particular word is found. The presence of only one number does not necessarily imply that the word in question occurs only once.

A

ā, ab , <i>prep. gov. abl.</i> from, by, 1.	hostes ab utrōque latere impetum faciunt.
castra ab barbaris oppugnantur.	
ab-ditus . 8. <i>perf. part. pass.</i> of abdo q.v.	
ab-dō . 3. <i>-didī, -ditum, v.a.</i> I hide, 8, 26.	
ferae se in sylvās abdunt.	
ab-iciō . 3. <i>-iēci, -iectum, v.a.</i> I throw, throw away, 4.	nostri perterriti tēla abiciunt.
ab-sum, <i>-esse, -fui, v.n.</i> I am away, distant, 22.	
die, explorātor, quo mīlia passum ab sunt hostes?	
longe abest quin, 39. q.v.	
āc , <i>conj. and</i> , 8.	turrēs āc vineae aguntur.
ac-cēdō. 3. <i>-cessī, -cessum, v.n.</i> I approach, 4, 33; <i>impers.</i> , 26. Fr. accéder.	noctū ad oppidum accessimus.
accēdit quod, <i>ut</i> , it is added that, 29. q.v.	

ac-cidō. 3. *-cidī, no supine, v.n.* to happen, 4; foll. by *ut*, 43. Fr. accident.

haec rēscontrā opīniōnēm accidit.

ac-cipiō. 3. *-cēpī, -ceptum, v.a.* I receive (vulnus), 1; sustain (calamitātem), 15; accept (condicōnem), 25.

lēgātūs grave vulnus accipit.

accommod-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I fit, put on, 18.

mīlitēs galeis insignia accommo-dant.

accommodātus, *a, um*, 44. *perf. part. pass.* of acconodo; (used adjectivally) adapted, conformable to.

ducis oratiō ad hortandō animōs accommodata fuit.

ac-currō. 3. *-cucurwi and -curri, -cursum, v.n.* I run up, 11. Fr. accourir.

nuntiū undique ad Caesarem ac-currunt.

aciēs, *ēi, f.* line of battle, 1.

aciēs quartā hōrā instruitur.

āriter, *adv.* keenly, fiercely, 7; *compar.* **ārius**; *superl.* **ācrimē**, 51.
 barbari ārius opiniōne resistunt.

actūrus, *a. um.* 22. *fut. part. act. of* agō, *q.v.*

actus, *a. um.* *perf. part. pass. of* agō, *q.v.*

ad, *prep. gor. acc. to*, towards, 12; (of time) 26; for, 3; up-to, 28; in the neighbourhood of, 8; with gerund, 3; with gerundive, 18. *Fr. à.*
 Cæsar ad Galliam proficiscitur

ad-dūcō. 3. **-duxī**, **-ductum**, *v.a.* I lead, bring to, 21; prevail upon, induce, 43; mostly in *perf. part. pass.* adductus, 9, 21, *etc.*
 his rēbus adducti coniuratiōnem faciunt.

adeō, *adv. so. so v.c.y.* 31.
 ea rēs adeo ardua erat.

ad-eō, *-ire*. **-iū**, *-itum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I approach, go to, 4, 31.
 num nuntius ad mūros adire potest?

ad-ficiō. 3. **-feci**, **-fectum**, *v.a.* I affect—in a good sense, 4; in a bad sense, 3, 42.
 exercitus frumenti inopia ad fluitur.

ad-fīgō. 3. **-fīxi**, **-fīctum**, *v.a.* I strike shatter, 26. *Fr. affliger.*
 naves tempestāte adflectae sunt.

adfore, 26. *fut. infin.* of adsum, *q.v.*

ad-haereō. 2. **-haesi**, **-haesum**, *v.n.* I adhere to, 4. *Fr. adherer.*
 ad quid adhaesit trāgula?

ad-hibeō. 2. **-hibui**, **-hibitum**, *v.a.* I employ, 19.
 in rebus agendis diligentiam adhibeo dēbemus.

ādiciō. 3. **iēci**, **-iectum**, *v.a.* I put near, 28.
 agger a nostris ad muros ādiciēbatur.

ad-īgō. 3. **-ēgi**, **-actum**, *v.a.* (with iūcīnrandō) I put a person on oath, 36.
 Cæsar barbarōrum ducem iure iurandō adēgit.

adipiscor. 3. **adeptus v. dep.** I get, obtain, 46.
 gloriā adipiscī experīamur!

aditus, *ūs*, *m.* an approach, 15.
 insula aditum facilem nōn habuit.

adiūtor, *ōris*, *m.* a helper, assistant, 36, 48.
 barbari Cicerōnem adiūtōrem recusabant.

ad-ministrō. 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I attend upon, manage, 17, 50. *Fr. administrer.*
 res publica bēnē administrātur.

admodum, *adv.* fully, completely, 4.
 sex milia admodum hostium caesa sunt.

ad-olescō. 3. **-olēvī**, *v. incep.* I grow up, 12. *Fr. adolescence.*
 tempore adolescunt liberi.

ad-orior. 4. **-ortus**, *v. dep.* I assault, attack (secretly, by stealth), 6.
 urbē dolo adoriemur.

ad-portō. 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I bring to, 23.
 unde coniunctūs adportabuntur?

ad-sum, *-esse*, *-fui*, *v.n.* I am at hand, present, 26.
 quis adest?

adulescens, *centis*, *comm.* a young person, 35.
 adulescentēs senibus nōn semper parcut.

adulescentulus, *ī*, *m.* a very young man, 27.
 num adulescentulus belli peritus esse potest?

adventus, *ūs*, *m.* arrival, 11.
 Cæsarī adventu omnium mentēs confirmantur.

aedificium, *ici*, *n.* a building, 3. *Fr. édifice.*
 à quibus vastabuntur aedificia?

aedificō. 1. **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I build, 1.
 pons a fabris aedificatur.

aeger, *gra*, *grum*, *adj.* ill, sick, 12.
 hominēs aegrī pugnare nōn possunt.

aegrē, *adv.* with difficulty, 22.
 nostri impetum aegrē sustinent.

aequō. 1. **āvī, -ātūm, v.a.** and **n.** I make equal, equalise, 13. **remōis eōus periculum omnibus aquātūr.**

aequus, a, um, adj. calm, composed, 33, 57; level, 41. **aequō animo resistite!**
ad aequum 'ocum preventum est.

aes, aeris, n. bronze, 26. **aes ad nāvēs reficiendās idōneum est.**

aestās, ātis, f. summer, 12. Fr. *été*. **quae pars anni aestas est?**

aestus, fīs, m. tide, 12. **aestūs impetus nāvibus nocēbit.**

ager, grī, m. a field, 1; (*pl.*) land, 5, 28. **hostium agrōs vexavimus.**

agger, eris, m. an outwork, 3; materials for ditto, 18. **agger ad oppidum iacit.**

ag-gredior. 3. **-gressus, v. dep.** I attack (openly), 6. **hodiē urbem aggrediemur.**

aggressus. 10. **perf. part.** of aggredior, *a.v.*

agmen, inis, n. an army (on the march), 1. **quoniodo impeditur agmen?**

agō. 3. **ēgī, actum, v. a.** I move forward (aggerem, turrem, vineas), 3, 20, 51; I do, 17; I hold (conventūs), 52; I have (triumphum), 26; I discuss (rēs), 21; I confer, 37. Fr. *agir.*

agricola, ae, m. a farmer, 1. **agricolae laborei vitāre nōn dēbent.**

alacer, crīs, cre, adj. eager, keen, 17; *compar*, *-ior*; *superl.* not used, miles ad pugnandum alacer est.

alacritās, ātis, f. eagerness, briskness, 27. **magnā alacritātē rēs perficitur.**

albus, a, um, adj. white, 4. **plumbum album hodiē 'tin' appellātur.**

aliēnus, a, um, adj. belonging to another, 36. **rēbus aliēnis nō noceāmus!**

aliquantō, adr. in some degree, considerably, 12. **ego tē aliquantō altior sum.**

aliquantum, n. **adj.** used as *noun*, somewhat, something, 26. **aliquantum argenti mihi est.**

aliquī, a, od, indef. adj. some, any, 15. **explōrator aliquōs hostēs videt.**

aliquis, id, indef. pron. and *noun*, some one, something, 6, 15. **ex hostibus aliqui capti sunt.**

alius, a, ud. **adj.** and *noun*, another, 6; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others, 'double alius,' 15. **alii tempore opus perficiam.**

Alpēs, ium, f. the Alps, 2. **Alpitum pericula summa sunt.**

alter, era, erum, adj. one, the other of two, 12, 53. Fr. *autre*. **oppidorum alterum bene, alterum male munitur.**

altitūdō, inis, f. height, depth, 45. **fossa magnae altitudinis dūcebatur.** Fr. *altitude*.

altus, a, um, adj. tall, high, deep, 1. **vallum altum est.**

āmentum, i, n. a strap, thong, 4. **iacula āmentis iaciuntur.**

amicitia, ae, f. friendship, 48. Fr. *amitié*. **tē per deōs et amicitiam nostram brānnus.**

amicus, i, m. a friend, 16. Fr. *ami*. **amicos semper servemus!**

ā-mittō. 3. **-misi, -missum, v. a.** I lose, 11. **illam occasiōnem āmisiimus.**

amō. 1. **-āvī, -ātūm, v.a.** I like, love, 20. Fr. *aimer.* **Britannī amant.**

amplius, compar, adv. more, 11, 26 (without *quam*). **id flūmen amplius mīlia passuum iv aberat.**

amplus, a, um, adj. great, renowned, 56. **amplissimō locō nātus est.**

an, conj. or (preceded by *utrum*), 6. **utrum tū an Quintus hōc fēcit?**

anceps, cipitis, adj. undecided (*lit.* two-headed), 27.
diū proelium anceps erat.

ancora, ae, f. an anchor, 11. Fr. *ancre*.
nautae dē nāvī ancoram iacent.

Anglicē, adv. into English, 10.
Anglicē reddite!

angulus, I, m. a corner, 12. Fr. *angle*.
Cantuum Britanniae angulus extrēmus est.

angustus, a, um, adj. narrow, contracted, 28, 29.
locō angustissimō castra posita erant.

animadvert-o. 3. -I, -versum, r. a. I notice, perceive, 4, 22 (also written **animum advertō**, *i.e.* I turn my mind to).
trāgula primum nōn animadver-titur.

animal, ēlis, n. an animal, 24.
animālia fera vitanda sunt.

animus, I, m. mind, spirit, courage (*pl.*), 1, 33; in animō habēre, to intend, 36.
omnium animī excitantur.

annus, I, m. a year, 12. Fr. *an-*, *annee*.
anni partēs quattuor sunt.

ante, prep. gor. acc. before, 3; *adv.* before, paucis ante annis, 14.
auto tertiam vigiliam contem-dēmus.

ante-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, r. a. I prefer, 53.
num cam rem illi antefers?

antiquitus, adv. in former times, 22.
Belgae Rhēnum antiquitus transiérunt.

antiquus, a, um, adj. old, former, 16; *compar.* -Ior, 43; *superl.* -issimus.
urb̄ Rōma antiquissima est.

Ap. = Appius, a Roman name, 14.

apertus, a, um, adj. open, 28. Fr. *ouvert*.
aditus ad urbēm apertus fuit.

Apollō, inis, m. the god Apollo, 24.
Gallī Apollinem colēbant.

appell-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātūn, v.n. and *a.*
I call, address, 12, 37.
dux tribunōs nōm'ne appellat.

ap-pellō. 3. -pulī, -pulsum, v.a. and *n.* I put in (of a ship); *pass.* 12.
nāvis ad portum appulsa est.

appropinqu-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātūm, v.n. I approach (*dat.*), 2; *impers.* 25.
hostium finibus appropinquā-bāmus.

apud, prep. gor. acc. by, near, amongst, 15.
apud nōs remanē!

arātrum, I, n. a plough, 1.
nonne aratrō arātur ager?

arbitr-or. 1. -atus, v. *dcp.* I think, 29.
hōc fieri posse nōn arbitror.

arbor, oris, f. a tree, 4. Fr. *arbre*.
fabri arborēs succidēbant.

arcēss-ō. 3. -īvī, -ītūm, v.a. I send for, summon, 4.
auxilia undique arcēssuntur.

arduus, a, um, adj. difficult, 34.
nihil hominī impigrō (*resolute*) arduum est.

argentum, I, n. silver-plate, 31. Fr. *argent*.
domus argentō plēna est.

āridum, I, n. dry land, 7.
nāvēs in aridūm veniunt.

āridus, a, um, adj. dry, 16. Fr. *aride*.
Aegyptus terra ārida est.

arma, ūrum, n. pl. armour, defensive weapons, 19; in armis esse, to be under arms, 21, 44. Fr. *armes*.

armātus, a, um, 22. *perf. part. pass.* of armō, *q.v.*

ar-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātūm, v.a. I arm, equip, 23, 44. Fr. *armer*.
nāvēs bene armātae erant.

ars, rtis, f. art, 24. Fr. *art*.
ars bellī discenda est.

artificium, icl, n. trade, handicraft, 21.
Minervam artificiorūm deam (*goddess*) esse putant.

a-scendō. 3. -scendi, -scensum, <i>v.n.</i> I climb, 3.	auriga, ae, <i>comm.</i> a charioteer, 49.
nostri in montem ascenderunt.	auriga vir peritissimus esse debet.
. asper, era, erum, <i>adj.</i> severe; <i>compar.</i> 52. Fr. <i>âpre</i> . Britanniae caelum (<i>climate</i>) saepe asperum est.	aut . . . aut, <i>conj.</i> either . . . or, 8. aut Caesar aut nullus. Fr. <i>ou . . . ou</i> .
. at, <i>conj.</i> but, 6. id facere volo, at prohibeor.	autem, <i>conj.</i> and, but, however, moreover, 4.
atque, <i>conj.</i> and, 1; as, 12 (after <i>idem</i>). Germāni atque Galli finitimi sunt.	hostēs autem posterō diē discēdunt.
at-texō. 3. -texui, -textum, <i>v.a.</i> I weave on or to something, 47. nostri pinnas noctu attexunt.	auxili-or. 1. -ātus, <i>v. dep.</i> I help, 17. auxiliandi tempus décerat.
attribu-ō. 3. -i, -ūtum, <i>v.a.</i> I assign, 55. Fr. <i>attribuer</i> . legiō Crassō attribūta est.	auxilium, -īl, <i>n.</i> aid, assistance, 1; <i>pl.</i> reinforcements, 2; <i>predic. dat.</i> 23.
auctōritās, ātis, <i>f.</i> influence, authority, 9. Fr. <i>autorité</i> . is homo magnam auctōritatem habuit.	mox aderunt auxilia. ea rēs nobis magno auxiliō fuit.
audācia, ae, <i>f.</i> bravery, 42. Fr. <i>audace</i> . barbari audāciam summam praestant.	avis, is, <i>f.</i> a bird, 2. pueri aviorū óva quaerere amant.
audac-ter, <i>adv.</i> bravely, boldly, 11; <i>compar.</i> -ius, <i>suprl.</i> -issimē. nostri audacissimē resistunt.	avus, ī, <i>m.</i> a grandfather, 1. Fr. <i>acul</i> . avus meus nātū maximus est.
audax, ācis, <i>adj.</i> brave, bold, 2. alii audacēs, alii timidi (<i>timid</i>) sunt.	B
audeō. 2. ausus sum (<i>perf.</i>), <i>v.a.</i> and <i>n.</i> I dare, 21. Fr. <i>oscr</i> . hostēs nōs oppugnāre nōn ausi sunt.	barbarus, a, um, <i>adj.</i> uncivilised, 2; ignorant, 43; as noun=native (as opposed to Roman), 1. Fr. <i>barbare</i> . fossa à barbaris completur. illae natiōnēs barbarae sunt.
aud-īō. 4. -īvī, -ītum, <i>v.a.</i> I hear, listen to, 4. avium vīces lactē (<i>gladly</i>) audi- mus.	Belgae, ārum, <i>m. pl.</i> the Belgae, 22. ubi habitabant Belgae? Fr. <i>Belges</i> .
aufērō, auferre, abstulli, ablatum, <i>v.a.</i> I bear, take away, 19 (foll. by <i>acc.</i> and <i>dat.</i>). victor victis arma abstulit.	bellum, I, <i>n.</i> war, 2; bellum facere, 45. bellum non amo.
augeō. 2. auxi, auctum, <i>v.a.</i> and <i>n.</i> I increase, 45. hostium cōpiae in diēs augentur.	bene, <i>adv.</i> well, 25. Fr. <i>bien</i> . opus bene perfectum est.
	beneficium, icī, <i>n.</i> a kindness, service, 33. Fr. <i>bénéfice</i> . praemia prō beneficiis dentur!
	biduum, I, <i>n.</i> a period of two days 26; <i>abl.</i> biduō, 4. biduō post ad oppidum per-

bonus, a, um, *adj.* good, 15; *compar.* melior; *superl.* optimus.
boni male facere nolunt. Fr. *bon*, *meilleur*.

brevis, e, *adj.* short, 11. Fr. *bref*, *brève*.
breve tempus relinquēbatur.

brevitās, ātis, f. shortness-of-stature, 45.
Galli brevitātem nostram irridēbant.

Britannia, ae, *f.* Britain, 4. Fr. *Bretagne*.
Britannia Hiberniā māior est.

Britannus, a, um, *adj.* British, of Britain, 9; as noun, **Britannī, ūrum, m. pl.** the Britons, 4.
Britanni patriam amant.

captīvus, ī, m. a captive, 15. Fr. *captif*.
captivī suppliciō aſſicientur.

captus, a, um. 2. *perf. part. pass.* of capiō, *q.v.*

caput, itis, n. head, 33; mouth of a river, 2. Fr. *chef*.
mulier in capite onus portat.

carīna, ae, f. the keel of a ship, 42.
nāvium carīnae plānae sunt.

carrus, ī, m. cart, 19.
iumenta carrōs trahunt (*pull*).

castellum, ī, n. a fort, blockhouse, 41. Fr. *château*.
Belgae sē in castellō continent.

caſtra, ūrum, n. pl. a camp, 2.
caſtrōrum locus aequis erat.

casus, ūs, m. a misfortune, accident, 4.

C—Cāius, or Gāius, a Roman name, 11; as a numerical sign, C— 100, 4.

cadō. 3. cecidī, cāsum, *v.n.* I fall, 49.
in cō prōliō complūres cecidē.

caedēs, is, f. slaughter, 55.
noſtri in barbarōs caedē mag-
nam faciunt.

caedō. 3. cecidī, caesum, *v.a.* I cut, 26.
militēs māteriem ceciderant.

caeleſtēs, ium, m. pl. the gods, 21.
Iuppiter caeleſtium princeps erat.

caesp̄es, itis, m. a turf, sod, 49.
easa (*the hut*) caesp̄itibus tegitur.

caesus, a, um. 26. *perf. part. pass.* of caedo, *q.v.*

calamitās, ātis, f. a misfortune, calamity, 15. Fr. *calamité*.
boni calamitātes fortiter per-
ferunt.

cālō, ūnis, m. a camp-follower, 17.
cālonēs agmen sequuntur.

Cantūm, tī, n. Kent, 12.
Cantūm Galliāe proximum est.

cap̄-iō. 3. cēp̄i, captum, *v.a.* I take, capture, 4, 36; pick-up, 19; reach, 26.
quot hostēs capti sunt?

captīvus, ī, m. a captive, 15. Fr. *captif*.
captivī suppliciō aſſicientur.

captus, a, um. 2. *perf. part. pass.* of capiō, *q.v.*

caput, itis, n. head, 33; mouth of a river, 2. Fr. *chef*.
mulier in capite onus portat.

carīna, ae, f. the keel of a ship, 42.
nāvium carīnae plānae sunt.

carrus, ī, m. cart, 19.
iumenta carrōs trahunt (*pull*).

castellum, ī, n. a fort, blockhouse, 41. Fr. *château*.
Belgae sē in castellō continent.

caſtra, ūrum, n. pl. a camp, 2.
caſtrōrum locus aequis erat.

casus, ūs, m. a misfortune, accident, 4.

in cōiusmodi casū hōc accidere
solet.

abl. cāſū (used adverbially), by
chance, 4.

catēna, ae, f. a chain, 41. Fr. *chaîne*.
captivī in catēnās coniecti sunt.

cauſa, ae, f. a reason, 19. Fr. *cause*, cōius rei quae cauſa fuit?

abl. cauſā, used as prep. gov. gen..
for the sake of, 4.

cautēs, is, f. a rough, pointed rock, 44.
nāvis in cautēs ventō agitur.

cautus, a, um, adj. prudent, cautious.
31.
duci cautō confidimus.

cēdō. 3. cessī, cēſsum, *v.n.* and *a.*, I
yield to, am inferior, 58.
nē virtūte cesserītis, militēs!

celer, eris, ere, adj. quick, speedy, 31.
equus animal celere est.

celeritās, ātis, f. speed, 4. Fr. *celerité*.
aliquārum avium celeritās in-
crēdibilis est.

celeriter, adv. quickly, speedily, 11;
compar. -ius; *superl.* -rimē.
hostēs celerrimē fugantur.

centum, *indecl. num.* one hundred,
21. Fr. *cent*.
centum nā ves in portū sunt.

centuria, *ae, f.* a century, company,
43.
 quis centuriae praeerat?

centuriō, ònis, *m.* a centurion (corresponding to our sergeant), 11.
dux centurionēs convocat.

certāmen, inis, *n.* a contest, fight,
33.
 nostrī certāmen nōn recūsant.

certiōrem (ēs) faciō, 3., I inform. 11.
mē dē rēbus gestis certiōrem fac!
pass. **certior fiō**, I am informed,
22.

cibāria, òrum, *n. pl.* victuals, food supply, 25.
vix bidūi cibāria supererant.

cibus, *I, m.* food, 2.
sine cibō vivere nōn possumus.

cingō, 3. *cinxī, cinctum*, *v.a.* I surround, 46.
 urbs flūmine cingitur.

circiter, *adv.* and *prep.* about, 5;
usually of *time* or *number*.
circiter quartā vigiliā; circiter
mēdiem.

circitus, ës, m. a circuit, compass,
12, 49. Fr. *circuit*.
mūnitio xv milia passuum cir-
cuitū.

circum, *prep. gov. acc.* around,
about, 37.
 fossa circum castra dicitur.

circum-clidō, 3. *-clidI, -cīsum*, *v.a.*
I cut around, cut, 49.
 gladiis arborēs circumcidite!

circum-dō, *-dare, -dedI, -datum*, *v.a.*
I surround, 1.
 castra vallō circumdantur.

circum-dūcō, 3. *-duxI, -ductum*, *v.a.*
I lead around, 42.
 *militum pars aliō itinere circum-
ducta est.*

circum-ēdō, *-Ire, -IvI (ii)*, *(supine
circuitum)*, *v.n. and a.* I go round,
encircle, 36.
 tōta urbs mūrō circumibātur.

circum-sistō, 3. *-steti*, no supine, *v.a.*
I surround, 45.
 *nostrī barbarōs undique circum-
sistunt.*

circum-veniō, 4. *vēnI. -ventum*, *v.a.*
I surround, beset, 41.
 legiō decima circumveniēbatur.

cis, *prep. gov. acc.* on this side of,
28.
 aciēs cis flūmen instruitur.

citerior, ius, *adj. (compar. of citer-
tra, trum)*, on the nearer side, 4.
Caesar in Galliā citeriōre manet.

citrā, *prep. gov. acc.* on this side of,
28, *v. cis*.

civitās, ãtis, *f.* a state, 1.
multae in Galliā civitātēs erant.

clādēs, is, *f.* a defeat, disaster, 57.
nuntiū ducem dē clade certiōrem
fēcōre.

clam, *adv. secretly*, 49.
nostrī clam ex insidiis hostes
adoriuntur.

clāmitō, 1. *-āvi, -ātum*, *v. freq. n. and
a.* I cry out aloud, 12.
quid, puer, clamitas?

clāmor, òris, *m.* a shout, loud cry, 6.
passim oriuntur clamorēs. Fr.
clameur.

classis, *is, f.* a fleet, 21.
classis ad ancoram dēligata est.

cliens, ntis, *m.* a client, retainer;
pl. vassals, 46.
Nerviū cum clientibus bellum
parant.

coactus, *a, um*, 14. *perf. part. pass.*
of cōgō, *q.v.*

coepI, *v.a. and n.* I began (foll. by
infin.), 9; *pass.* 21, *v. p.* 86.
Belgae saxa cōnicere coepēre.

coerc-eō, 2. *-ui, -itum*, *v.a.* I restrain,
repress, 16.
auriga equōs manū coercet.

cōgitō, 1. *-āvi, -ātum*, *v.a.* I reflect
upon, 22.
de poētae Horāti operibus cōgitā-
bam.

cognitus, *a, um*, 14. *perf. part. pass.*
of cognoscō, *q.v.*

co-gnoscō. 3. *-gnōvī, -gnitum, v.a.* I get to know, 4; *perf.* I know. rem per exploratōres cognoscit.

cōgō. 3. *coēgī, coactum, v.a.* I collect, 4; I compel, 15. dux cōpīas undique coēgit. id facere cōgēris.

cohors, rtis, f. a cohort (division of the legion), 2. cohors ūna frūmentum comparabat.

cohortatiō, ūnis, f. an exhortation. harangue, 2. cuius cohortatiōne, miles, exercitāris?

cohort-or. 1. *-ātus, v. dep.* encourage, exhort, 5. ante pugnam dux suōs cohortatur.

col-laudō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I praise highly, 57. consilium tuum collaudō et probō.

col-ligō. 3. *-lēgī, -lectum, v.a.* with reflexive pron. I compose myself, recover my courage, 18, 41; I collect, bring together, 54. Fr. colliger. mē ex timōre colligō. auxilia collecta sunt.

collis, is, m. a hill, 11. Fr. colline. in summō collie castellum fuit.

col-locō. 3. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I station, post, place, 2. equitēs in dextrō cornū collocantur.

colloquium, quī, n. a parley, conference, 32. colloquium inter dueūs habētur.

col-loquor. 3. *-locūtus, v. dep.* I converse, confer, 6. Arioistus cum Caesare colloquētur.

colō. 3. *colui, cultum, v.a.* I worship, 24. Fr. cultiver.

Galli deōs cōmplūrēs colēbant.

comb-ūrō. 3. *-ussī, -ustum, v.a.* I burn up, 28. hostium nāvēs ignī combustaē sunt.

commeātūs, ūs, m. provisions, 3. nostri commeātūm cōparant.

comes, itis, comm. a companion, 5. comes comitem prōtegit.

com-memor-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I recount, relate, 18. Caesar rēs gestas suās com-memorāvit.

commissus, a, um, 1. *perf. part. pass.* of committō, q.v.

com-mittō. 3. *-misi, -missum, v.a.* I engage in, 5. proclīum ab utrisque committitur. without proelium, 54.

commodē, adv. conveniently; *superl.* 41. id nōbīs commodissimē accidit.

commodus, a, um, adj. suitable, opportune, 25. Fr. commode. ea belli ratiō commodissima esse vidēbātur.

com-mor-or. 1. *-ātus, v. dep.* I stay, tarry, 26. Rōmāc (at Rome) paulisper com-morātus sum.

commōtūs, a, um, 9. *perf. part. pass.* of commoveō, roused, influenced. spē celeris victōriæ commōti impetū faciunt.

com-mūn-iō. 4. *-īvī (-ī), -ītum, v.a.* I fortify strongly, 42. loca praeſidiō cōmūniuntur.

commūnīs, e, adj. common, universal, 8. Fr. commun. commūnis terror exercitū occupat.

com-pellō. 3. *-pullī, -pulsum, v.a.* I drive together, 14. hostēs intrā oppida mūrosque compulsi erant.

com-pleō. 2. *-plēvī, -plētum, v.a.* I fill up, 1. quid sarmentis complētur?

complūrēs, a (gen. -ium), adj. several, 4. complūra ferārum genera sunt.

com-portō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* bring, carry together, 3.
frūmentum ex Asiā comportātur.

com-prehendō. 3. -prehēndi, -prehēnsum, *v.a.* I catch hold of, seize, 11, 27 (ignem, 51). mulieres comprehensae auferuntur.

con-cēdō. 3. -cessi, -cessum, *v.n.* and *a.* I grant, vouchsafe, 36. -dux captivis libertatem concessit.

con-cidō. 3. -cidi, -cīsum, *v.a.* I cut to pieces, 9. hostium multitādō concīsa est.

concilium, illi, n. a meeting, council, 14. Fr. *concile.* Caesar concilium convocābit.

con-cītō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.freq. a.* I stir up, excite, 36. ad virtūtem concītēmur!

conclāmō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I shout, exclaim, : conclāmant ad castra īrī opōrōrē.

con-currō. 3. -currī, -cursum, *v.n.* I run, rush together, 25. equites inter sē concurrunt.

con-cursō. 1. -cursāvi, -cursātum, *v.freq. n.* and *a.* I rush, run about, 12. timōre commōtus concursābat.

condiciō, ōnis, f. terms, condition, 57. barbari pācīs condicōnēs accipiunt.

confectus, a, um, 10. perf. part. pass. of conficiō, *q.v.*

con-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v.a. I bring together, collect, 22. commētūs in unum locum contulērē.

confestim, cōfr. fogthwith, 4. Caesar confestim hostēs subsequitur.

con-ficiō. 3. -fēci, -fectum, *v.a.* I wear out, exhaust, 10; I finish, complete, 14, 30. ex militib⁹ aliqui morbō confecti sunt.

eam rem hodiē conficiam.

con-fidō. 3. -fīsus sum (*v. p.* 282), *v.n.* I trust (*dat.* 53, *abl.* 28); I expect, hope, (*acc.* and *infin.*), 45. dux equitātui confisus est.

con-firmō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I strengthen, animate, 1; affirm, 26. Caesar amicitiam cum civitātibus confirmat.

con-flāgrō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I burn, 51. nāvēs incendiō conflagrātæ sunt.

conflictātus, a, um, 9. perf. part. pass. of conflictō, harassed. rērum inopīa conflictatī.

con-fīgō. 3. -fīxi, -fīctum, *v.a.* and *n.* I contend, fight, 11. Britannī nōbiscum conflixērunt.

confiūens, ntis, m. the confluence (of two rivers), 19. Fr. *confluent.* ad confluentem duōrum flūmīnum vēnimus.

con-fugiō. 3. -fūgī, no supine, *v.n.* I flee for refuge, 27. hostēs ad oppida sua confugiunt.

con-gredīor. 3. -gressus, *v. dep.* I contend (*cum*), 3, 57. nostri cum Belgis congressi sunt.

con-iciō. 3. -iēci, -iectum, *v.a.* I throw, hurl, 1; in fugam, 47. multa tēla cōniciuntur.

con-iungō. 3. -iunxi, -iunctum, *v.a.* I join, 28. eās cohortēs cum exercitū suō coniungit.

con-iūratiō, ōnis, f. a conspiracy, plot, 9. Fr. *conjuration.* gravis in Galliā oritur coniūratiō.

con-iūrō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I conspire, 22. Fr. *conjurer.* nōlētē contrā rem publicam coniūrāre!

con-īor. 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I try, attempt, 6; with *acc.* 48. id facere cōnābor.

con-quirō. 3. -quisīvī, -quisītum, *v.a.* I seek for, procure, 48. Fr. *conquérir.* victī obsidēs conquīsīvērunt.

con-scendō. 3. *-scendi, -scensum, v.a. and n.* I mount, 46; I go on board, 30 (nāvem).
 Caesar in (*for*) Britanniam consendet.

con-sciscō. 3. *-scivī (sciī), -scitum, v.a.* I inflict (mortem), 39.
 Orgetorix mortem sibi conscivit (*i.e.* committed suicide).

con-scribō. 3. *-scripsi, -scriptum, v.a.* I enrol, levy, 4.
 legiōnēs quinque conscriptae erant.

consacrātus, a, um, 24. *perf. part. pass.* of consecrō, holy. Fr. *consacré*.
 is locus consacratus habebatur.

con-sectu-or. 1. *-atus, v. dep.* I follow, pursue, 19.
 nostri hostium equitēs consecrati sunt.

con-sentiō. 4. *-sensī, -sensum, v.n. and a.* I conspire, plot, 52.
 cum reliquis nōn consensimus.

con-sequor. 3. *-secūtus, v. dep.* I follow up, on, 6; I obtain, 34.
 fugientēs consequimur.

con-servō. 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v.a.* I maintain, observe, 28. Fr. *conserver*. iūsiurandum tuum conservā!

con-sidō. 3. *-sēdi, -sessum, v.n.* I settle, take up a position, 22; I encamp, 55.
 avis in arbore consedit.

consilium, illi, n. resource, 11; plan, advice, intention, 15; a meeting, 25; *pl.* plans, 4. Fr. *conseil*.
 hoc tuum consilium bonum est.
 nonne Caesar vir consili magni fuit?

con-sistō. 3. *-stiti, -stitum, v.n.* I take up a position, halt, make a stand, 7, 43; I consist of (*ex*), 43.
 barbari in locis superiōribus constiterant.

con-sol-or. 1. *-atus, v. dep.* I comfort, cheer, 57. Fr. *consoler*. dux suōs consolātur.

conspectus, ūs, m. sight, 11.
 haec in conspectū iūcis gerēbantur.

con-spiciō. 3. *-spexi, -spectum, v.a. and n.* I catch sight of, 4, 42.
 multitudō hostium in cōle conspecta est.

conspic-or. 1. *-ātus, v. dep.* I descriy, see, 24.
 nāvēs in portum venientes conspicor.

constat (3rd sing. pres. indic. of con-stō. 1. *-stiti, -stātum*), it is agreed, well known, 24.
 Caesarem imperātōrem summum fuisse inter omnēs constat.

con-stip-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I crowd together, 51.
 hostēs se in summō mūrō consipiant.

con-stitu-ō. 3. *-i, -ūtum, v.a.* I determine, 9 (foll. by *infin.*), I assign, 21; put, 37; build, 45. Fr. *constituer*.
 hostēs ē finibus suis exire constituerant.
 legionēs in aciē constituit.

con-suesc-ō. 3. *-suēvī, -suētum, v.a. and n.* I am accustomed, 12.
 mercatōrēs cō ventitāre consuerant.

consuētūdō. inis, f. a custom, 12; consuētūdine suā, according to his custom, 42. Fr. *coutume*.
 consuētūdō 'mala mox inveterata rascit.

consul, ulis, m. a consul (Roman magistrate), 14.
 duō consules reipublicae Rōmānacē erant.

consul-ō. 3. *-āvī, -ātum, v.n. and a.* I look to, consult the interests of (*dat.*), 18.
 quisque sibi consulere consuēvit.

consult-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v. freq. a.* I deliberate, take counsel, 12. Fr. *consulter*.
 Germānī dē fortūnis suis consultābunt.

consultum, *n.a.* decree (senātūs), 26.
ex senātūs consultō prae*mia* dabuntur.

con-sūm-ō3.-psī,-ptum, *v.a.* I spend, pass (of time), 28. Fr. *consumer*. diēs decem in illis rēbus consumpti sunt.

con-surgō. 3. *-surrexi*, *-surrectum*, *v.n.* I rise up, 25. barbari ex insidiis consurrexērē.

con-tabul-ō. 1. *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* 1 cover (with boards), 47. tōtus murus turribus contabulatur.

contemptiō, *ōnis*, *f.* disdain, contempt, 33. dolōrum contemptiō rēs ardua est.

contemptus, *ūs*, *m.* an object of contempt, 45. ignāvia (*cowardice*) omnibus contemptū est.

con-tendō. 3. *-tendī*, *-tentum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I march, hasten, 9, 11; I strive, fight, 37, 41. magnis itineribus īre contendit. utrique summa vī contendunt.

continens, *ntis*, *f.* the continent, mainland, 21 (*abl.* *-i* or *-e*). Fr. *continent*. Labiēnus legātus in continentī relictus erat.

as *adj.* uninterrupted, continuous, 16. trium diērum continens labor.

continenter, *adv.* continuously, 11. tōtā nocte continenter iérunt.

con-tineō. 2. *-tinui*, *-tentum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I keep, detain, enclose, 2, 43. Galli in officiō continentur.

con-tingō. 3. *-tigī*, *-tactum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I touch, reach to, 16. Aedui Lingonum finēs contigérunt.

contio, *ōnis*, *f.* a meeting, assembly 57. dux militum contiōnem habēbit.

contrā, *prep.* *gov.* *acc.* opposite to, facing, 12; against, 22; contrary to, 54. Fr. *contre*. ūnum Britanniae latus contrā Galliam spectat.

contumēlia, *ae*, *f.* abuse, insult, 29. tantam contumēliam non perferēmus.

con-valescō. 3. *-valui*, *v.* *incep.* I regain health, 12. milites ex morbō convaluērunt.

con-veniō. 4. *-vēni*, *-ventum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I assemble, 21. Fr. *convenir*. cōpiae undique convenerant.

conventus, *ūs*, *m.* a meeting, 4; *pl.* assizes, 52. dux militum conventum convocat.

conversus, *a*, *um*, 26. *perf.* *part.* of convertō, *v.v.*

con-vertō. 3. *-vertī*, *-versum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I turn, 6. Fr. *convertir*. Caesar iter in Itāliam convertit.

con-voc-ō. 1. *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I call together, convoke, 10. Fr. *con-roquer*. dux tribūnōs ad sē convocat.

co-rior. 4. *-ortus*, *v. dep.* I arise, begin (of storms, wind, etc.), 10, 51.

grave bellum in his partibus coortum est.

cōpia, *ae*, *f.* (*sing.*) supply, 3; (*pl.*) forces, 2. Fr. *cōpīe*. nonne nāvium magnam cōpiam habēmus?

hostium copiae instruuntur.

cōram, *adv.* personally, in person, 57. dux, sī cōram adesset, vōs laudāret.

cornū, *ūs*, *n.* a flank (of an army). lit. horn, 6, 51. Fr. *cor*. pedites in dextō cornū erant.

corpus, *oris*, *n.* a body, 4. Fr. *corps*. Galli ingentia corpora habēbant.

crātis, *is*, *f.* a hurdle; *pl.* fascines (*milit.*), 47. māteria crātibus attexta est.

crēber, bra, brum, *adj.* many, frequent, 4; *compar.* 52.

crēbra castella à nostris oppugnantur.

cruciātus, ūs, m. torture, 9.
captivus cruciātu adficiētur.

culpa, ae, f. a fault, 57.

tē propter culpam tuam laudare nōn possum.

cum, prep. gor. abl. with, together with, 1; *v.* also Less. 29.
proelium cum hostibus committitur.

cum, conj. when, 11, 12; 'inverse cum,' *v. p.* 201; *indef. frequency,* whenever, 24, 49; although, 54.

cunct-or. 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I delay, hesitate, 42.

dux suōs cunctantēs cohortātūr.

cupidē, adv. eagerly, 14; *compar.* -ius, *super.* -issimē. Fr. *cupidement.*
amicitiam tuam cupidissime petō.

cupidus, a, um, adj. eager, eager for (foll. by *gen.*), 27. Fr. *cupide.*
Helvēti bellandi (*making war*) cupidi erant.

cupiditās, ātis, f. desire, longing (generally in a bad sense), 9, 38. Fr. *cupidité.*

pecūniae cupiditatē inductus.

cup-iō. 3. -īvī (II), -ītum, *v.a.* I desire, wish, 7.

militēs opus confidere cupiēbant.

cūr, adr. why? 4.
cūr id fecisti?

cūra, ae, f. a care, anxiety.
predic. dat. 23. Fr. *cure.*
ea magnae mihi cūrac sunt.

cur-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I cause to be done (with *gerundire*), 19.
obsidēs inter sē dāndōs cūrāvēre.

cursus, ūs, m. a course, 2 (tenēre, 26); running, 27. Fr. *course.*
militēs cursū dēfatigāti erant.

D *“”*

dandus, a, um, 19. *gerundive* of dō, *q.v.*

datūrus, a, um, 22. *fut.* *parts* of dō, *q.v.*

datus, a, um, 11. *perf. part. pass.* of dō, *q.v.*

dē, prep. gor. abl. from, 11; startipg from, 8 (de quarta vigiliā); down from, 16; about, 12; for, 44 (quā dē causā); dē imprōvisō, 33. Fr. *de.*

dēb-eo. 2. -ui, -ituī, *v.a.* I ought, 24 (foll. by *infin.*). Fr. *devoir.*
rectē facere dēbēmus.

decem, num. ten, 43.

id decem diēbus perfectum est.

dē-cernō. 3. -crēvī, -crētum, *v.a.* and *n.* I decide, 42 (foll. by *infin.*). Fr. *décerner.*

his de causis Rhēnum transire dēcrēvit.

dē-cert-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I fight it out, 42.

acquō locō proeliō dēcertēmus!

dēcessus, ūs, m. departure, ebbing (aestus), 42.

dux aestus dēcessum exspectāvit.

decimus, a, um, adj. tenth, 53.
vix decimus quisque cō proeliō superfuit.

de-currō. 3. -cucurri (-curri), -cursum, *v.n.* I run down, 18.
dux ad suōs dēcurrīt.

dē-dō. 3. -didī, -ditum, *v.a.* I give up, surrender, 40.
captivi in supplicium dēdentur.

dē-dūcō. 3. -dūxi, -ductum, *v.a.* bring down, fetch, 22. Fr. *déduire.*
exercitum ex h's regionibus dēdūcit.

dēfatigātus, a, um, 9. *perf. part.* pass of dēfatigō. 1., exhausted.
militēs labōre dēfatigāti.

dēfectiō, ūnis, f. a rebellion, revolt, 9. Fr. *défection.*
subita in Galliā oritur dēfectiō.

dē-fendō. 3. -fendī, -fensum, v.a. I defend, protect, 1. Fr. *défendre*.
centuriō ~~manū~~ sē défendit.

dēfensiō, ōnis, f. a defence, 3. Fr. *défense*.
diū incolae défensiōnem sustinunt.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v.a. I take, carry away, or down, 4.
nuntius epistulam dēferēbat.

dēfessus, a, um, adj. exhausted, wearied, 19.
tōtius diēi labōre dēfessi eramus.

dē-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fēctum, v.n. and a.
I fail, am wanting (*dat.*), 11; I revolt, 36. Fr. *défaire*.
cīvitātēs quac dēfēcērunt pūnientur.

dē-iciō. 3. -iēcī, -iectum, v.a. I throw down, 1, 11.
mulierēs sē dē murō dēiciunt.

deinde, adv. next, thereupon, 2.
deinde sō in castra recipiunt.

dēlectus, ūs, m. a levy, 26.
Caesar delectum habēbit.

dēlectus, a, um, 38. *perf. part. pass.* of dēlīgō. 3. q.v.

dē-leō. 2. -ēvī, -ētum, v.a. I destroy, 2; efface, 41.
urbs Carthágō a Rōmānīs dēlētur.

dē-liber-ō. 1. -ēvī, -ētum, v.a. I liberate, 14. Fr. *délibérer*.
consulēs dē sumimis rēbus dēliberant.

dē-ligō. 1. -ēgī, -ētum, v.a. I tie together, 4, 28.
nautae nāvēs ad terram dēligābunt.

dē-ligō. 3. -lēgī, -lectum, v.a. I choose out, select, 15.
barbari obsidēs dēlēgērunt.

dē-litescō. 3. -litūi, v. *incep. n.* I lie hid, lurk, 12.
nonne ferae in silvīs dēlitescunt?

dēmentia, ae, f. madness, folly, 45. Fr. *démence*.
ēiusmodi dēmentia vitanda est.

dē-migrō. 1. -ēvī, -ētum, v.n. I de-part, remove from, 51.
ex agris in urbēm dēmigrēmus!

dē-minuō. 3. -minūl, -minūtum, v.a. I make smaller, lessen, 57. Fr. *diminuer*.
nihil dē tantā gratulatiōne fortūna dēminuerat.

dēmissus, a, um, 34. *perf. part. pass.* of dēmittō, q.v.

dē-mittō. 3. -misī, -missum, v.a. I let, cast down, 32, 57 (anīmō).
egō animō demittor.

dē-monstrō. 1. -ēvī, -ētum, v.a. I point out, demonstrate, 22. Fr. *démontrer*.
dux sē castra mōtūrum esse demonstrat.

dēmptus, a, um, 56. *perf. part. pass.* of dēmō. 3., taken away.
epistula ad Caesarem dēmpta est.

dēmum, adv. at length, at last, 8.
tum dēmum instant nostri.

dē-pellō. 3. -pullī, -pulsum, v.a. I drive away, 24.
cibō depellitur famēs (*hunger*).

dē-pereō. 4. -ēlī, no supine, v. n. I go to ruin, am lost, 27. Fr. *dépérir*.
magna pars exercitus dēperiit.

dē-pōnō. 3. -posūi, -positum, v. a. I put away, lay aside, 45. Fr. *deposer*.
amicōrum memoriam nē dēposueris!

dē-popul-ōr. 1. -ātus, v. *dep. a.* I lay waste, ravage, 9.
nostrī tōlāni regiōnēm dēpopulābantur.

dē-prehendō. 3. -prehēndī, -prehēsum, v. a. I seize upon, catch, 11, 33.
nuntii in itinere dēprehenduntur.

dē-ser-ō. 3. -uī, -tum, v. a. I desert, abandon, 21.
omnibus castellis oppidisque dēsertis.

dē-sider-ō. 1. -ēvī, -ētum, v. a. I lose, miss, 43. Fr. *désirer*.
in cō proeliō militēs ccc dēsiderāti sunt.

dē-siliō. 4. *-siliū, -sultum, v. n.* I jump down, 28.
equitēs ex equis dēsiliunt.

dē-sistō. 3. *-stiti, -stitum, v. a.* and *n.* I leave off, desist from, 48, 54.
Fr. *désister.*
obsidēs pecuniam pollicēri nōn dēsistunt.

dē-spērō. 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v. n.* and *a.* I despair of, 10; with *dat.*, 49. Fr. *déspéarer.*
Rōmāni dē suā virtūte numquam dēspērabunt.

dē-spiciō. 3. *-spexi, -spectum, v. n.* and *a.* I look down on, despise, 37.
alii sē dīvitias (*wealth*), alii honōrēs despicerē dicunt.

dē-stringō. 3. *-strinxī, -strictum, v.a.* I unsheathe, draw, 13.
gladiōs destringite!

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, v.n. I am wanting, fail, 1, 18; with *dat.*, 53.
hoc ūnum Caesari dēfuit.

dē-tineō. 2. *-tinui, -tentum, v. a.* I detain, keep back, 28. Fr. *détenir.*
tempestas nāvēs in portū dētinuerat.

dētrimentum, i, n. loss, damage, 27.
esp. in battle. Fr. *détriment.*
dux Britannus multa dētrimenta accēperat.

deus, i, m. a god, 24. Fr. *dieu.*
boni deōs colunt.

dē-vehō. 3. *-vexi, -vectum, v. a.* I carry down, convey, 20, 55.
commeātūs ad nāvēs devecti erant.

dē-voveō. 2. *-vōvi, -vōtum, v. a.* I vow, devote, 24. Fr. *dévouer.*
Galli bellō capta deis dēvovēbant.

dexter, tra, trum, adj. right, 54.
dextrum cornū in fugam datur.

dextra, ae, f. the right hand, 50.
dextrae meae tēlō nocitum est.

dīcō. 3. *dixi, dictum, v.a.* I appoint, 3; say, tell, 22; *pass.* I am said, 8.
Fr. *dire.*
diēs conciliō dicitur.

didicī, 37. *perf. indic. act.* of disco, *q.v.*

diēs, ēi, m. or f. a day *pl.* always masc.), 3; in *diēs*, day by day, 33.
tertīo diē hic aderō.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *v.a. and n.* I carry different ways, spread abroad, 51.
ventus ignem undique differt.

difficultās, ātis, f. difficulty, 1. Fr. *diffficulté.*
rēs erat magnae difficultatis.

dif-fidō. 3. *-fisus sum, v.n.* I distrust, despair of (*dat.*), 48.
suae atque omnium salūti diffisi sunt.

dif-fluō. 3. no perf. or supine, *v.n.* I flow in different directions, 2.
nonne in multās partēs diffluit Rēnus?

dignitās, ātis, f. greatness, prestige, 45. Fr. *dignité.*
vir magnac apud suōs dignitatis erat.

dignus, a, um, adj. worthy (*abl.*), 56. Fr. *digne.*
Caesarem-ne omni honōre dignum fuisse putatis?

diligenter, adv. carefully, 25. Fr. *diligemment.*
opus meum diligentissimē perfēci.

diligentia, ae, f. care, diligence, 19. Fr. *diligence.*
in rēbus agendis diligentia uti dēbēmus.

dī-micō. 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v.n.* I fight, 24.
barbari prō patriā proeliō dīmīcēbunt.

dimidium, idī, n. the half, 12. Fr. *de mi.*
quae insula dimidiō minor Britanniā est?

dī-mittō. 3. *-misi, -missum, v.a.* I send in different directions, 18; disolve, break-up, 14; let-slip, 36.
Caesars nuntiōs per omnēs partēs dimisi.

dis-cēdō. 3. *-cessi, -cessum, v.n.* I depart (*ab, ex*), 11.
barbari repulsi ā vallō discēdunt.

discessus, *īs*, *m.* a departure, 43.
post eōrum discessum res quietio-
rēs fac̄e sunt.

disciplina, *ae*, *f.* tuition, training,
2, 23. Fr. *discipline*.
belli disciplina dūra est.

discipulus, *ī*, *m.* a scholar, 57. Fr.
disciple.
qualēs discipuli laudantur?

discō, *3.* *didicī*, no supine, *v.a.* I
learn, 37.
ars nulla sine labore discitur.

discrimen, *inis*, *n.* a crisis, 19.
rēs in summō discrimine erat.

dis-iciō, *3.* *iēci*, *iectum*, *v.a.* I throw
asunder, disperse, 9, 13.
hostēs disiecti terga vertunt.

diū, *adv.* for a long time, 2; *compar.*
-tius; *superl.* *-tissimē*.
Germāni diu resistunt.

diūtinus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* of long dura-
tion, lasting, 57.
diūtinum bellum geritur.

diūturnitās, *ātis*, *f.* long duration, 9.
proeli diūturnitāte décessus
eram.

dives, *it̄is*, *adj.* rich, 25; *v. p.* 269.
quem divitem esse putas?

di-vidō, *3.* *-visi*, *-vīsum*, *v.a.* I divide,
43. Fr. *diviser*.
Gallia omnis in partēs trēs divisa
est.

divinus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* belonging to a
deity, divine, 45. Fr. *divin*.
hominēs saepe divinā ope con-
fidunt.

dō, **dare**, **dedī**, *datum*, *v.a.* I give
(*dat.*), 1; in fugam dō, I put to
flight, 7.
Caesar Helvētiis iter per prō-
vinciam nō dat.

doc-eō, *2.* *-ui*, *-tum*, *v.a.* I teach, 49;
show, 42.
lēgatōs mittit qui dē suō
adventū doceant.

dolor, *ōris*, *m.* pain, 56; grief, 57.
Fr. *douleur*.
quibus nuntiatis magnō dolore
adficuntur.

dolus, *ī*, *m.* a trick, guile, 4.
victōria per dolum paritur.

domus, *īs*, *f.* a house, home, 16;
domum, *adv.* homewards, 16; **domō**,
from home, 19; **domī**, at home, 40.

dubitatiō, *ōnis*, *f.* doubt, uncer-
tainty, 56. Fr. *doute*.
ēius rē dubitatiō nulla est.

dubitō, *1.* *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v. freq. n.* and
a. I hesitate, 39. Fr. *douter*.
hostēs flūmen transire nō dubitā-
vērunt.

dubium est, it is doubtful, uncer-
tain, 39.
nīl dubium est quin tū id feceris.

dūcō, *3.* *duxī*, *ductum*, *v.a.* I lead, 4;
construct, 1; prolong, 18; in
mātrīmōnum, marry, 46.
exercitus per hostium fītēs dūci-
tur.

dum, *conj.* while, 4; *v. p.* 204.
dum haec aguntur, suōs in castra
continet.

duo, *duae*, *duo*, *num.* two, 4. Fr.
deux.
duae legiones in castris re-
linquuntur.

dūrus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* hard, disagree-
able, 21. Fr. *dur*.
nonne servitutis condicio dūris-
sima est?

dux, **ducō**, *m.* a general, leader, 1;
guide, 9. Fr. *duc*.
omnium dueum Rōmanōrum
Caesar summus erat.

E

e(x), *prep. gov. abl.*, from, (out) of,
1; according to, 26; after, 37.
ex periculō incolumis rediit.

ē-dūcō, *3.* *-duxī*, *-ductum*, *v.a.* I
lead out, 25.
cōpiae ex hibernis edūcentur.

efferō, **efferre**, *extuli*, *ēlātum*, *v.a.*
in the pass. I am elated, 34.
miles pugnandi studiō effertur.

ef-ficiō, *3.* *-fēci*, *-fectum*, *v.a.* I
make, 2; manage, 27.
magnus turrium numerus
efficitur.

ēgī, *perf. indic. act. of agō*, *q.v.*

ego, *mei*, *1st pers. pronoun*, I, 2.
ego agricola, tū miles es.

ē-gredior. 3. *-gressus*, *v. dep. n. and a.* I go out, 6; land, 17 (ex nāvi).
hostēs ex suis finib⁹ ēgrediēbantur.

ēgregiē, *adv. excellently, exceeding-ly*, 1.
oppidum egregiē mūnitū est.

ēgregius, *a. um*, *adj. eminent, dis-tinguished*, 57.
vir bellō ēgregius.

ēgressus, *ūs*, *m. a landing*, 26.
illuc ēgressuī bonum invēnit.

ēgressus, *a. um*, 11. *perf. part. of ēgredior*, *q.v.*

ēiciō. 3. *-iēcl*, *-iectum*, *v.a.* I cast out, rush out (with sē), 11.
barbari sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcrunt.

ēiusmodi, *of such a kind, such*, 43.
ēiusmodi erant nāvēs ut in vadis consistere possent.

ēlātus, *a. um*, 31. *perf. part. pass. of effērō*, *q.v.*

ēminus, *adv. at a distance*, 16.
ēminus fundis sagittisque pug-nābant.

ē-mitto, 3. *-misi*, *-missum*, *v.a.* I send out, 33. Fr. émettre.
Caesar, equitatū ēmissō, hostēs in fugam dat.

ēmō. 3. *ēmī*, *emptum*, *v.a.* I buy, 55.
quanti id ēmīstī? magni-ne?

enīm, *conj. for* (usually after the first word of a clause or sentence), 15.

quō factō abiit—vesper enim ad-erat.

ēō, *ire*, *ivI* (ii), *itum*, *v.n.* I go, 22.
contrā hostem ibimus.

ēō, *adv. to that place, thither*, 26.
cō primā luce perventum est.

epistula, *ae*, *f. a letter*, 4. Fr. épître.
Caesar epistulam legit (*reads*).

eques, *itis*, *m. a horseman*, 1.

equitum impetus hostēs per-turbābit.

equester, *tris*, *tre*. *adj. cavalry*, 14.

Fr. équestrc.
cōpiae equestrēs cōgūntur.

equitātus, *ūs*, *m. cavalry (collective-ly)*, 6.
impetus ab equitātū fit.

equus, *ī*, *m. a horse*, 1.

quis equōs nōn amat?

ērectus, *a. um*, 44. *perf. part. pass. of ērigō*. 3. ērōxi, ērectum; lofty, upright.

Venetōrum nāvēs prōris ērectis erant.

ergā, *prep. gov. acc. towards (of feelings and conduct)*, 28.

meus ergā tē amor (*love*) magnus est.

ēripiō. 3. *-ripiū*, *-reptum*, *v.a.* I take, snatch away, 1, 8.

amicum ex hostium manibus ēripiuit.

err-ō. 1. *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.n. and a.* I err, think wrong, 48.

errant qui bellī ēventum sēsō prae dicere (*predict*) posse dicant.

ērumpō. 3. *-rūpi*, *-ruptum*, *v.a. and n.* I burst, sally forth, 11.

nostrī subitō ex castris ērūpere.

ēruptiō, *ōnis*, *f. a sortie*, 11. Fr. *éruption*.

ēruptiōnem ex portis facite!

esedāriūs, *ārl*, *m. a charioteer*, 12.
esedāriūs ex esedō dēsilit.

esedūm, *ī*, *n. a chariot*, 28.
esedā à Britannis contrā nostrōs collocantur.

et, *conj. and*, 1, cō . . . et, both . . . and. Fr. et.

ego et tū adsumus.

etiam, *conj. also*, 8; even, 8 (*Lectiō*). id nōn modo factū sed etiam cō-nātū difficile (*difficult*) est.

etsī, *conj. although*, 54.
barbari, etsī numerō plūrēs erant, tamen fugātī sunt.

ēventus, ū. *n.* consequence, result, 51.
huius bētū ēventus secundis-
simus fuit.

ē-veniō. 4. *-vēnī, -ventum, v.n.* I
happen, 56.
timēbam nē ēvenirent ea, quae
accidērunt.

ē-vocō. 3. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I call
forth, 12; challenge, 29. Fr.
ēvoquer.
Caesar mercātōrēs undique ad se
ēvocat.

exactus, a, um, 54. *perf. part. pass.*
of exigō, q.v.

ex-audīō. 4. *Ivī (i), -itum, v.a.* I
hear clearly, 31.
omnēs ducis vōcem exaudire
poterat.

ex-cēdō. 3. *-cessī, -cessum, v.n.* I
retire from, 9. Fr. excéder.
adventū hominum ferae ex via
excedunt.

ex-cipiō. 3. *-cēpī, -ceptum, v.a.* I pick
up, collect, 11; sustain, stand, 42.
nostri tēla ab hostibus missa ex-
cipient.

ex-citō. 1. *-āvī, -atum, v. freq. a.* I
rouse, incite, 3; kindle, 16; raise,
erect, 4. Fr. exciter.
tuba militēs ē somnō (*sleep*)
excitat.

excruciātus, a, um, 11. *perf. part. pass.*
of excrucīō, tortured.
servus crūdēliter (*cruelly*); ex-
cruciātus est.

ex-cubō. 1. *-cubul, -cubitum, v.a.* I
lie out on guard, keep watch, 16.
trēs legionēs in armis excubā-
bant.

exemplū. *n. agi* example, 8. Fr.
exemplē.
in lectiōnibus complūra cīus-
modi exempla inveniēs.

ex-eō. *-Ire, -iī, -itum, v.n.* I go out, 19;
impers. pass., 29.
miles ē tabernaculō suō exīt.

exercitus, ū. *m.* an army, 2.
exercitus noster parātus est.

ex-hauriō. 4. *-hausī, -haustum, v.a.* I
empty out, 49.
terra manibus exhaūritur.

ex-igō. 3. *-ēgī, -actum, v.a.* I complete,
finish, 54.
exactā aestātē dēpereunt flōrēs
(*flowers*).

ex-istimō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I judge,
think, 2.
bonus-ne esse existimariſ?

expeditus, a, um, 20. *perf. part. pass.*
of expeditio, unincumbered.
duō milia hominum expedita
mittuntur.

ex-pellō. 3. *-pulī, -pulsum, v.a.* I
drive out, 22; remove, 56. Fr.
expulser.
regnō expulsus veniam (*pardon*)
ōrātūm venit.

ex-perior. 4. *-pertus, v. dep. a.* I try
make trial of, 5, 38.
omnia frustrā experiuntur.

ex-piō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I make
amends for, make good, 57. Fr.
expier.
pristina clādēs victōria explāta
est.

explōrātor, ūris, m. a scout, spy, 4.
Fr. explorateur.
rēs per explorātōrēs cognoscitur.

explōrātus, a, um, 51. *perf. part. pass.*
of explōrō, confirmed,
certain.

ex-plōrō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I recon-
noitre, 32. Fr. explorer.
dux omnia loca explōrābat.

ex-pōnō. 3. *-posul, -positum, v.a.* I
set on shore, disembark, 28. Fr.
exposer.
expositis omnibus cōpiis in
hostes contendit.

ex-portō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I carry
away, 3. Fr. exporter.
barbarī sua omnia exportā-
vērunt.

expositus, a, um, 28. *perf. part. pass.*
of exponō, q.v.

ex-pugn-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I take
by assault, storm, 3.
castellum à Rōmānis ex-
pugnātur.

ex-spect-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I
await, wait for, 22.
dux auxiliōrum adventum ex-
spectāvit.

ex-struō. 3. -struxi, -structum, *v.a.*
1 build up, construct, 16.
aggere turribusque exstructis.

ex-timescō. 3. -timui, *v. incep.* *n.*
and *a.* I fear greatly, dread, 44.
num hostium adventum extimes-
cītis?

extremus, a. um. *adj.* farthest, 22;
end of; 43. (*superl.* of *extrā*). *Fr.*
extremē.
Axona flūmen in extrēmis
Itēmōrum finiūs est.

ex-ūrō. 3. -ussi, -ustum, *v.a.* I burn
up, consume, 13.
hostium oppida exusta erant.

F

faber, bri. *m.* a workman, 21.
ex legionib⁹ fabros delēgit.

fābula, ae, *f.* a tale, story, 12. *Fr.*
fable.
fabulac mentes nostras dēlectant
(*delight*).

facile, *adv.* easily, 2. *Fr.* *facile-*
ment.
id facile perfeci.

facilis, e, adj. easy, 25; *compar.* -ior;
superl. -illimus. *Fr.* *facile.*
alterum iter multō facilis erat.

faciō. 3. fēci, factum, *v.a.* and *n.* I
do, 4; make, 7. *Fr.* *faire.*
fabri pontem facient.

facultās, ātis, *f.* opportunity, 17;
supply, abundance, 23. *Fr.*
faculté.
hostibus fugae facultās nōn
datur.

facundus, a. um, *adj.* eloquent, 15.
Cicerō orātor facundissimus
erat.

fāma, ae, *f.* a report, repute, 46.
haec fāma nondum ad nōs per-
lata erat.

familia, ae, *f.* family, household, 34. *Fr.* *famille.*
mātrēs familiae per urbem
passim vagabantur.

familiāris, is, m. a friend, 8. *Fr.* *familier (adj.).*
Aulus familiāris meus est.

fātum, I, n. fate, bad fortune, 8.
fātum suum queruntur.

fax, facis, *f.* a torch, firebrand, 16.
hostes facēs undique comparant.

fera, ae, *f.* a wild beast, 2.
ferae in silvis latent.

ferē, *adv.* about, 9; almost, 12.
totius ferē Galliae lēgātī ad
Caesarem veniunt.

ferrāmentum, I, n. an iron tool, 49.
ferramenta operi dēcerant.

ferreus, a, um, *adj.* of iron, 44. *Fr.* *ferri.*
Britannī tāleis (*bars*) ferreis prō
nummo (*money*) utēbantur.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, *v.a.* and *n.*
1 bring, 1; carry, 7; endūre (toil)
19; (calamity), 33; (storm), 44. Of
abstract subjects. require, allow,
12, 36; *pass.* (of a river), flow, 2.

ferox, ūcis, *adj.* bold, courageous, 2.
Fr. *ſéroce.*
Helvētiōrum gens ferocissima
erat.

ferus, a, um, *adj.* savage, wild, 2.
in bellō hominum animi feri esse
solent.

fervefactus, a, um, 51. *perf. part.*
pass. of *fervefaciō*, heated.
barbari iacula ignī fervefaciunt.

fervens, ntis, *adj.* boiling hot, burn-
ing, 51.
glandes ferventes cōnicēbant.

fidēs, ei, *f.* a promise, assurance, 28;
fidelity, loyalty, 52, 58. *Fr.* *ſoi.*
meam ergā te fidem conservābō.

fidus, a, um, *adj.* trustworthy, 9.
amicōs fidissimōs habēre nonne
iūcundum (*pleasant*) est?

fieri, 6. *pr. infin.* of **fiō**, *q.v.*

filia, *ae*, *f.* a daughter, 46. Fr. *fille*.
quot tibi *filiae* sunt?

• **finis**, *is*, *m.* an end, 17; ad finem
venire, 54. Fr. *fin*.
Ariovistus iniuriis finem nōn
facit.

pl. land, territory, 2.
cōpiās in Aeduōrum finēs
dēdūcīt.

finitus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* neighbouring;
as *pl. noun*, neighbours, 36.
pācēm cum finiēmīs faciāmus!

fiō, *fieri*, factus sum, *v.n.* I am
made, happen, 5; *pass.* of faciō,
v. p. 18.
fiēbat ut, the result was that....
38.

firmiter, *adv.* firmly, steadily, 7. Fr.
fermementum.
num nostri firmiter insistēbant?

firmitūdō, *inis*, *f.* firmness, strength,
44.
pontis firmitūdō summa erat.

flamma, *ae*, *f.* a flame, 51. Fr.
flamme.
Gallī hominēs flammā circum-
ventōs necābant.

fi-eō. 2. -ēvī, -ētūm, *v.n.* I weep, 7.
lēgāti flentēs pācem petunt.

fi-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātūm, *v.n.* and *a.* I
blow, 12.
Zephyrus (*west*) ventus lēniter
(*gently*) flāre solet.

fluctus, *ūs*, *m.* a wave, billow, 41.
Fr. *flot*.
barbari in fluctibus consistēbant.

flūmen, *inis*, *n.* a river, 2.
flūmen ~~ad~~ mage fertur.

fluō. 3. *fluxī*, *fluctum*, *v.n.* I flow, 44.
Helvētiōrum inter finēs et Allo-
brogum Rhodanus fluit.

fore, *fut. infin.* of sum, *q.v.*

forte, *adv.* by chance, 1.
forte in eō oppidō commētūs
erant.

fortis, *e*, *adj.* brave, strong, 1; *com-
par.* -iōr; *superl.* -iissimus. Fr.
fort.
nonne omnēs virum fortem
laudant?

fortiter, *adv.* bravely, 1; *compar.*
fortius; *superl.* **fortissimē**. Fr.
fortement.
urbs ab incolis fortiter defendi-
tur.

fortūna, *ae*, *f.* fortune, 5: *pl.* 49.
Fr. *fortune*.
fortūnam malam aequō animō
ferte!

fossa, *ae*, *f.* a trench, 1. Fr. *fosse*.
castra fossa mūniuntur.

frāter, *tris*, *m.* a brother, 1. Fr.
frère.
frāter meus miles est.

fremitus, *ūs*, *m.* a loud noise, 6.
equorum fremitus auditur.

frequens, *ntis*, *adj.* numerous,
crowded, 37.
senātū frequentissimō habitō.

frētūs, *a*, *um*, *adj.* relying-on (*abl.*),
27.
quā rē hostes frētū confugunt?

frigus, *oris*, *n.* cold; *pl.* 33. Fr.
froid.
frīgora in Britanniā sāepe magna
sunt.

frūmentārius, *a*, *um*, *adj.* of or
belonging to corn, provisions, 8.
rēs frūmentāria a nostris com-
parībantur.

frūment-or. 1. -ātūs, *v.* *dep.* *n.* I
fetch corn, forage, 8.
Rōmāni undique frūmentā-
bantur.

frūmentum, *ī*, *n.* corn, grain, 4.
est-ne in oppidō frūmentī cōpia?

frustrā, *adr.* in vain, to no pur-
pose, 3.
tēla ā barbarīs frustrā mittuntur.

fuga, *ae*, *f.* flight, 1; mē fugae
mandō, 6. *v.* mandō.
hostēs fugā salūtem petunt.

***fugiō.** 3. **fūgi**, **fugitum**, *v.n.* I flee, 7; *pres. part.* **fugiens**, *ntis*, as noun, a fugitive, 25. Fr. *fuir*.
pauci ex caede fūgērunt.

fug-ō. 1. **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I put to flight, rout, 11.
omnis equitātus fugātus erat.

fūl, 42, *perf. tense* of sum, *q.v.*

***fūmus**, *i.*, *m.* smoke, *pl.* 56. Fr. *fumē*.
hostium adventus fūmō atque ignibus significabātur.

funda, *ae*, *f.* a sling, 51.
lapides fundis cōniiciuntur.

funditor, *ōris*, *m.* a slinger, 22.
Caesar funditōrēs praemisit.

fundō. 3. **fūdi**, **fūsum**, *v.a.* I scatter, hurl, 46.
contrā quid hostēs picem fundēbant?

fungor. 3. **functus**, *v. dep.* I perform (*abl.*), 18.
officiō-ne tuō semper fungeris?

fūnis, *is*, *m.* a rope, 41.
fūnibus ancorisque fūmissis.

G

Gadēs, *iūm*, *f. pl.* Cadiz, 10.
Gadēs in Hispania sunt.

galea, *ae*, *f.* a helmet, 18.
capitī galeam impōnō.

Gallia, *ae*, *f.* Gaul, 2.
Gallia multa fūmina habet.

Gallicus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Gaulish, Gallic, 12, 51. Fr. *gaullique*.
quis bellum Gallicum seripsit?

Gallus, *i*, *m.* a Gaul, 2; *pl.* the Gauls, 3.
Gallus quidam cum epistulā mittitur.

Garumna, *ae*, *m.* a river of Gaul, the Garonne, 2.
ubi est Garumna?

gens, *ntis*, *f.* a race, nation, 2.
Gallōrum gens magnae audāciae est.

genus, *eris*, *n.* kind, species, 14; family, 56. Fr. *genre*.
hōc pugnae genus nostris ignōtūm (*unknōlm*) erat.

Germānia, *ae*, *f.* Germany, 12. Fr. *Germanie*.
Germānia Galliac finitima est.

Germānus, *i*, *m.* a German; *pl.* the Germans, 1.
Germani multa cum Rōmāni bella gerebant.

gerō. 3. **gessī**, **gestum**, *v.a.* I carry on, wage, transact, 14.
haec noctū à nostris gerēbantur.

gestūrus, *a*, *um*, 14. *fut. part.* of gerō, *q.v.*

gestus, *a*, *um*, 26. *perf. part. pass.* of gerō; rēs gesta, an exploit, 55.

gladius, *di*, *m.* a sword, 13. Fr. *glaive*.
Rōmāni celeriter gladiōs destrin-gunt.

glans, *ndis*, *f.* a ball of clay (*lit.* acorn), 51.
nostrī glandibus hostēs petunt.

glōria, *ae*, *f.* glory, 29. Fr. *gloire*.
belli glōria quem nōn excitat?

Graecus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Greek 4. Fr. *grec*.
epistula Graecis litteris scripta.

grātia, *ae*, *f.* regard, friendship, 45. Fr. *grāce*.
nonne grātiā meām vis?

grātulātiō, *ōnis*, *f.* congratulation, 57.
Cicerō Caesaris grātulātiōnem accipiet.

grātus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* welcome, 28.
nihil mihi grātiūs esse potest.

gravis, *c.*, *adj.* severe, 3; serious, 15; critical, 51. Fr. *grave*.
tribūnus multā et grāvia vulnera accipit.

graviter, *adv.* severely, violently, 26; *compar. -ius*; *superl. -issimē*.
pericula mēgraviter nōn terrent.

gubernātor, *ōris*, *m.* steersman, pilot, 21. Fr. *gouerneur*.
gubernātor manū nāvem regit (*guides*).

hab-eō. 2. *-ui*, *-itum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I have, 8; deliver (*örätiönem*), 14; hold (*délectum*), 26; consider, 45. Fr. *être*
agricola multa pecora habet.

habit-ō. 1. *-avi*, *-atum*, *v.freq. n.* and *a.* I dwell, 40. Fr. *habiter*. qui in Galliā habitat?

haud, *negative particle*, not at all, 54 (qualif. an *adv.*). urbs haud facile expugnāta est.

Helvētiī, örüm, m. pl. the Helvētiī (modern Swiss), 2. Helvētiī contrā Rōmānōs pugnant.

hiberna, örüm, n. pl. winter-quarters, 2. Labiēnus in hibernis est.

Hibernia, ae, f. Ireland, 12. quid inter Hiberniam et Britanniam est?

hic, haec, hōc, demonstr. pron. and *adj.* this, the latter, he, she, it, 1. hic vir amīcus meus est.

hic, adr. here, 24.

hiem-ō, *-avi*, *-atum*, *v.n.* I pass the winter, 27. ūna legio in Helvētiis hiemabat.

hiems, emis, f. winter, 42. hiems gravissima anni pars est.

Hispānia, ae, f. Spain, 12. Fr. *Espagne*. urbs Gādēs in Hispāniā est.

hōc . . . quod, on this account . . . namely that (because), 28, *q.v.*

hodiē, adv. to-day, 41. domi-ne hodiē māter tua est?

homō, inis, m. a human being, man, 12; *pl.* mankind, human beings. Fr. *homme*. ille homō amīcus meus est.

honor, örös, m. honour, repute, 16; in honōre habēre, 43. Fr. *honneur*. Druidēs magnō erant apud Gallōs honōre.

hōra, ae, f. an hour, 11. Fr. *heure*. hōrā undecimā diēi redibō.

hort-or. 1. *-atus, v. dep.* I encourage; exhort, 14. multae rēs mē ad hōc consilium hortantur.

hosipes, itis, m. a guest, 49. Fr. *hôte*. multi hospitēs apud mē hodiē cénant (*dine*).

hostis, is, comm. an enemy, 22; usually in *pl.*, 1. hostium castella expugnāvimus.

humilis, is, adj. low, 12 (*nāvis*); humble, 27; *superl.* *-illimus*. Fr. *humble*. turrēs humiles aedificātae sunt.

iactio, 3. iēci, iactum, v.a. I throw, hurl, 4. Fr. *jetter*. quae à barbaris iaciuntur?

iact-ō. 1. *-avi*, *-atum*, *v. freq. a.* I throw, 31. argentum dē mūrō iactābatur

iaculum, ī, n. a javelin, 51. nostri hostium iaculis vulnerābuntur.

iam, adv. now, 3; already, 11. *imperf. tense* with iamdiū has meaning of *pluperf.*, 3. 33; with *fut. tense* soon. castra iam diū oppugnābantur.

ibi, adr. there, 19. Fr. *y*. ibi dux praesidium pōnit.

idem, eadem, idem, pron. and adj. the same, 5. cōdēm ferē tempore in Galliam contendit.

idōneus, a, um, adj. suitable, 9. foll. by *ad*, 17; by *det.*, 22. castra in loco idōneō posuit.

igitur, conj. therefore, accordingly, 47 (usually after first word of a clause). Caesar igitur cōpiās ēducit.

ignis, is (abl. ī), m. fire, 11. dux hostium operibus ignem infert.

ignōr-ō. 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v.a.* and *n.* I do not know, am ignorant of, 28.
Fr. ignorer.
 barbarōrum consilia nōn ignōrābāmus.

i-gnoscō. 3. *-gnōvi, -gnōtum, v.a.* I pardon (*dat.*), 25.
 captivis à duce ignoscitur.

'ille, a, ud, demonstr. pron. and adj. that, the former, he, she, it, 2. **Fr. ille, elle.**
 quis illa mulier est?

illic, adv. there, 6.
 Rōmāni illic paucōs diēs remanent.

illō, adv. to that place, 15.
 num illō ventitant mercātōrēs?

immānīs, e, adj. huge, enormous, 2.
 corporum magnitudo immānis est.

immol-ō. 1. *-āvi, -ātum, v.a.* I offer, sacrifice, 24. **Fr. immoler.**
 sacerdotēs (*priests*) animal deīs immolāvērunt.

immortālis, e, adj. immortal, 36.
Fr. immortel.
 Deum immortalem colāmus!

impedimenta, ūrum, n. pl. baggage (of an army), 2.
 magnus impedimentōrum numerus in castris est.

imped-ō. 1. *-īvi (iī), -ītum, v.a.* I hinder, 4.
 is ventus nāvigationēm impediēbat.

impeditus, a, um, 12. perf. part. pass. of *impediō*, encumbered hindered; difficult of passage (locus).

imperator, ūris, m. commander-in-chief, 23. **Fr. empereur.**
 lēgāti nuntiōs ad imperātōrem mittunt.

imperātūm, ī, n. an order, command, 22.
 milites imperātis pārēbunt.

imperitus, a, um, adj. without experience of, unskilled (*gen.*) 22, 45.
 vir reipublicae imperitissimus.

imperium, erī, n. rule, sovereignty, 21. **Fr. empire.**
 populi Rōmāni imperium maximum erat.

imper-ō. 1. *-āvi, ātum, v.n.* and *a.* I order (*dat.*) 6; I order to supply (*acc.* and *dat.*) 6, 22; *pass.*, 18; *impers.*, 25.
 quac imperāveris faciēmus.

impetr-ō. 1. *-āvi, ātum, v.a.* I obtain a request (abl. with *ā* or *ab*), 38.
Fr. impētrer.
 id ab illō impetrāre nōn potui.

impetus, ūs, m. an attack, onset, 2, 43.
 barbarōrum impetus subitus erat.

im-pōnō. 3. *-posui, -positum, v.a.* I impose, inflict upon, 12. **Fr. imposer.**
 victor cīvitāti servitūtem im-pōnet.

importātus, a, um, 5. perf. part. pass. of *importō*, imported. **Fr. importē.**
 Britannī frūmentō importātō ūtuntur.

(dē) **imprōvisō, adv.** unexpectedly 29, 37.
 hostēs imprōvisō in castra irrūpēre.

imprūdens, ntis, adj. not expecting, unaware, 14.
 barbari nostrōs imprūdentēs aggrediuntur.

imprūdentia, ae, f. want of foresight, inadvertence, 53.
Fr. imprudence.
 imprūdentia ducis dētrimentum acceptum est.

in, prep. gov. abl. in, amongst, 1; on, 6; considering, 23. Fr. en.
 milites in hibernis sunt.

gor. acc. against, to, into, towards, at, 1; in longitūdinem, 12.
 nostri in barbarōs tēla cōniciunt.

incendium, dī, n. fire, 56.
Fr. incendie.
 omnia incendiis vastābuntur.

incend-ō. ī . -nsum, <i>v.a.</i> I set on fire, 4.	hostium pediticia à nōbis incenduntur.	infans, ntis, <i>comm.</i> a young child, infant, 34. Fr. <i>enfant</i> .
inceptum, I, <i>n.</i> an attempt, undertaking, 5 ⁹ .	incepta nostra perfecimus.	nē infantibus quidem pepercērunt.
in-cipiō. 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, <i>v.a.</i> and <i>n.</i> I begin, 2, 46.	primā luce iter facere incipiēmus.	inferior, ius, <i>adj.</i> lower, 12; <i>compar.</i> of infra. Fr. <i>inférieur</i> .
in-cit-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, <i>v.a.</i> I urge on, encourage, rouse, 2, 19. Fr. <i>inciter</i> .	multa Caesareo ad id bellum inicitabant.	barbari è locis inferiōribus instant.
incognitus, a, um, <i>adj.</i> unknown, 15. Fr. <i>inconnu</i> .	septentriōnum regiōnēs incognitae sunt.	in-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, <i>v.a.</i> cause, inflict, occasion, 18, 44, 53.
incola, ae, <i>comm.</i> an inhabitant, 1. urbs multōrum incolarūm.		magnam nīhi iniūriām intulisti.
in-colō. 3. -colui, no supine, <i>v.a.</i> and <i>n.</i> I inhabit, 2; dwell, 1.	ūna Galliac pars à Belgis incolēbatur.	infinītus, a, um, <i>adj.</i> unlimited, 22. Fr. <i>infini</i> .
in-columnis, e, <i>adj.</i> safe, unharmed, 19. naves in portum incolumes rediunt.		Rōmāni imperium prope infinītum habēbant.
incommodum, I, <i>n.</i> a disadvantage, 9; misfortune, 32.	repentinō incommodō perterritēbamus.	in-fluō. 3. -fluxi, <i>fluxum</i> , <i>v.n.</i> I flow into, 2.
in-crēdibilis, e, <i>adj.</i> incredible, 4. ea rēs prope incriēbilis est.		nōn longē a mari, quō Rhēnus influit.
in-crepit-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, <i>v.freq.</i> I jeer at, 45.	hostēs nostrōs increpitabant.	ingens, ntis, <i>adj.</i> great, vast, 2.
inductus, a, um, 9. <i>perf. part. pass.</i> of inducō, persuaded, seduced (in a bad sense, as opp. to adductus).	vir cupiditāte inductus malus est.	nonne elephanti ingentia animālia sunt?
induō. 3. indui, inductum, <i>v.a.</i> I put on, 18.		in-gredior. 3. gressus, <i>v. dep. n.</i> and <i>a.</i> I go into, enter, 6, 28.
in-eō, -ire, -iū (ii), -itum, <i>v.a.</i> and <i>n.</i> I enter upon, form, 15. initā aēstāte, at the beginning of summer, 20.	miles galeam capitī induit.	barbari intrā munitionēs nostrās ingredī nōn poterant.
dux noctū consilia nova inibat.		in-iciō. 3. -iēci, -iectum, <i>v.a.</i> I infuse, inspire, 17.
		quō factō maxima nostris iniciēbatur spēs.
		in-iōquus, a, um, <i>adj.</i> uneven, unfavourable, 22, 25. Fr. <i>inique</i> .
		iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committunt.
		initium, iti, <i>n.</i> a beginning, 19, 22.
		pugnao initium ab equilibus fit.
		iniūtria, ae, <i>f.</i> a wrong, insult, 36. Fr. <i>injure</i> .
		tantās iniūriās nonne persequēmur?
		inligātus, a, um, 52. <i>perf. part. pass.</i> of inligō, tied on, attached.
		in quid servus litterās inligat?
		inopia, ae, <i>f.</i> lack, want, 6.
		omnium rērū inopiā permoveor.
		inopīnans, ntis, <i>adj.</i> not expecting, unaware, 9.
		barbari nostrōs inopinantes op̄primunt.

inquam, verb defective, I say, 4. v. p. **245.** **hostēs' inquit explorātor 'ap-
propinquant.'**

**insciens, ntis, adj. unknowing, un-
aware, 14.** illud duce insciente factum est.

**in-sequor. 3. -secūtus, v. dep. I fol-
low up, 6.** nostri Helvētiōrum manūs
cupidus insequuntur.

insidiae, ārum, f. pl. an ambush, 2. Britanni insidiās parant.

**insignis, e, adj. prominent, con-
spicuous, 18. Fr. insigne.** vir insignis virtutis.

insigne, is, n. a badge, 18.

**in-sinuā. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a. I make
my way, steal into, 49. Fr.
sinuer.** flūmen sē inter vallēs insinuat.

**in-sistō. 3. -stīti, no supine v.n. I
stand, stand on, 7.** alter alteri insistit.

**in-stit-ūō. 3. -ul, -ūtum, v.a. I
undertake, begin, 26; make, con-
struct, 47, 57. Fr. instituer.** nāves complurēs institūtae sunt.

**institūtum, ī, n. habits, practices,
56.** (ex) institūto meō, in accordance
with my habits.

**in-stō. 1. -stīti, -stātum, v.n. I press
on, menace, 11.** nostri undique instābant.

in-struō. 3. -struxī, -structum, v.a. I draw up, 10; erect, 15. Fr. in-
struire. acies ā tribunis instructa est.

insula, ae, f. an island, 2. Fr. île
insulam Britanniam incolimus.

in-sum, -esse, -fui, v.n. I am in, 15. in quibus sapientia (wisdom)
inesse solet?

integer, gra. grām, adj. fresh, 25. Fr. integral.
nostri intēgris viribus resistunt.

**intellegō. 3. -exi, -ectum, v.a. I per-
ceive, 22.** hostēs iam instāre intelleximus.

intentus, a, um, 13. perf. part. pass.
of intendō, eager, intent.
omnium oculi mentesque ad
pugnam intentae erant.

**inter, prep. gov. acc. amongst, be-
tween, 6, 19, 41; inter sē, with one
another, amongst themselves. Fr.
entre.** Mona insula inter Britanniam
Hiberniamque est.

**inter-cēdō. 3. -cessi, -cessum, v.n. I
intervene, 34. Fr. intercider.** palūs magna intercēdēbat.

**inter-cipiō. 3. -cēpi, -ceptum, v.a. I
cut off, intercept, 4. Fr. inter-
cepter.** hostēs commēatum nostrum
intercēpērunt.

**inter-clūdō. 3. -clūsi, -clūsum, v.a. I
cut off (abl. of thing), 41.** dux itinere interclūditur.

**interdum, adv. at times, now and
then, 8.** noctū in castris sonī interdum
audiuntur.

**inter-eō, -ire, -il, -itum, v.n. I perish,
36.** in cō proeliō magna pars exercitū
interit.

**inter-ficiō. 3. -fēci, -fectum, v.a. I
kill, 1.** miles sē gladiō interficit.

interim, adv. meanwhile, 3. interim nox appropinquābat.

inter-mitto. 3. -misi, -missum, v.a. and n. I leave off, leave an inter-
val; proelium, 11; spatium, 14;
diēs, 22; ventus, 26.

**militum opus noctū inter-
mittetur.**

**interneciō, īnis, f. extermination,
general slaughter, 36.** dux incolas ad interneciōnem
dēlēvit.

**interpres, etis, comm. a go-between,
interpreter, 8. Fr. interprète.** obsidēs per interpretem inter-
rogat.

**inter-rog-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a. I ask,
question, 8. Fr. interroger.** huic, quod tē interrogō,
respondē!

inter-scindē. 3. *-scidi*, *-scissum*, *v.a.* I break down, 41.
barbari aggerem interscindere cōnantur.

• **inter-sum**, *-esse*, *fui*, *v.n.* I take part in (*Lat.*), 19; am of importance, 45. Fr. *intéresser*.
dux ipse cō proclō nōn interfuit.

intrā, *prep. gor. acc.* within, 4.
Caesar suōs intrā vallum continet.

intus, *adv.* within, 52.
hostēs extra et intus habēmus.

in-veniō. 4. *-vēni*, **ventum*, *v.a.* I find, find out, ascertain, 4, 22. Fr. *inventer*.
locum castris idōneum invēnit.

inventor, *ōris*, *m.* a discoverer, inventor, 24. Fr. *inventeur*.
quem Galli artium inventōrem putābant?

in-veterascō. 3. *-veterāvi*, *v.n. incep.* I become established, 12. Fr.
mala consuētūdō inveterascat.

in-videō. 2. *-vidi*, *-vīsum*, *v.a.* I envy (*dat.*), 25. Fr. *envier*.
amicis meis nōn invidēbō.

invitus, *a. um*, *adj.* unwilling, 14.
Sēquānis invitīs ire non poterat.

ipse, *a. um*, *pron.* self, 1; *sub ipsōs mūrōs*, right up to the very walls, 28.
Caesar ipse militēs laudat.

irātus, *a. um*, 3, 42. *perf. part.* of irascor, angry.
quam (*how*) irātus magister est!

irī, 22. *pres. infin. pass. of cō*, *q.r.* and p. 84.

ir-rideō. 2. *-risi*, *-risum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I laugh at, scoff, 45.
hostēs Rōmānorū turrim irridēbant.

ir-rumpō. 3. *-rūpi*, *-ruptum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I burst, rush into, 19. Fr. *irruption*.
in mediōs hostēs irrumpite!

is, *ea*, *id*, *pron.* and *adj.* he, she, it, that, 1; *abl.* *eo* foll. by *quod*, on

this account . . . because, 28; such (in consecutive clauses), 43; foll. by *quī* (consecutive), 43.
eius rei nōmen ignōrō.

ita, *adv.* so, accordingly, 12; foll. by *ut*, 37.
ita insulac circuitus magnus est.

Italia, *ae*, *f.* Italy, 11. Fr. *Italie*.
nonne in Italia Rōma est?

itaque, *conj.* and so, therefore, 4.
itaque postridē dux castra mōvit.

item, *adv.* also (in enumerations), 11. Sextus et item Balbus domi sunt.

iter, *itineris*, *n.* a journey, march, 5; magnum iter, a forced march, 6.
iter facere, to march, 19; iter dare, to give a passage, 26. Fr. *itinéraire*.
hostēs nostrōs in itinere oppugnant.

iterum, *adv.* a second time, 48.
Caesār consul iterum factus est.

itūrus, *a. um*, 22. *fut. part.* of *eo*, *q.r.*

iubeō. 2. *iussi*, *iussum*, *v.a.* I order, 7; foll. by *infīn.* 11.
iubēcō tē hōc facere.

iūdicō. 1. *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I judge, decide, 44. Fr. *juger*.
dē hāc rē iūdicābō.

iugum, *ī*, *n.* a yoke, 22. This consisted of two upright spears, and a third laid transversely upon them, under which vanquished enemies were made to pass. Hence, sub iugum mittere, to send under the yoke.

iūmentum, *ī*, *n.* a beast of burden, draught animal, 5. Fr. *jument*.
iūmenta agmen Rōmānum impediunt.

Iuppiter, *Iovis*, *m.* Jupiter, king of heaven, 24.
quōrum imperium tenet Iuppiter?

iūs iūrandūm, *iūris iūrandī*, *n.* an oath, 26.
iūre iūrandō tenēri dēbēmus.

iussu, *ī*, *n.* an order, 4.
tribūni ducis iussa militib⁹
renuntiant.
iustitia, *ae*, *f.* justice, 8; clemency,
48. Fr. *justice*.
Caesar iustitiā ergā captivos
ūtetur.

L

L = Lūcius, a Roman name, 14.
labor, *ōris*, *m.* labour, exertion, 16;
hardship, 27. Fr. *labeur*.
quātō cum labōre superāvimus!
labōr-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* I am in
difficulties, 7; work. Fr. *labourer*.
labōrantium clāmōrēs undique
audiēbantur.
lacess-ō. 3. *-īvī* (*īi*), *-Itum*, *v.a.* I
harass, attack, 9.
hostēs nōs proeliō lacessēbant.
lacrima, *ae*, *f.* a tear, 8. Fr. *larme*.
multis cum lacrimis obsecrāre
(beseech) coopt.
lacrim-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* I weep,
shed tears, 10.
quānobrem lacrimās? num ob
dolorem?
laetatiō, *ōnis*, *f.* rejoicing, 57.
magnā cum laetatiōne clāmitā-
bant militēs.
laetitia, *ae*, *f.* joy, 4.
ea rēs mē summa laetitiā adfēcit.
lapis, *idis*, *m.* a stone, 47.
lapides à barbaris coniecti sunt.
lassitūdō, *inis*, *f.* weariness, 19. Fr.
lassitude.
virēs nostris propter lassitūdinem
dēfēcērunt.
lātē, *adv.* far and wide, widely, 38.
compar. *-ius*, 6; *superl.* *-issimō*, 52.
barbari lātius vagābantur.
lat-eō. 2. *-ūi*, no supine, *v.n.* I lurk,
lie concealed, 8, 56. Fr. *latent*
(*adj.*).
ubi ferac latēro consuescunt?
Latīnē, *adv.* in, into Latin, 1.
Latīnē reddite, vertito!

Latinus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Latīn, 20. Fr.
latin.
rēbus-ne Latīnis stūdēs?
lātitūdō, *inis*, *f.* breadth, width, 19.
Fr. *latitude*.
castra in magnam lātitūdinem
patēbant.
lātūs, *a*, *um*, *adj.* broad, wide, 1.
fossa quindecim pedēs lāta.
lātūs, *eris*, *n.* a side, 12.
latus ūnum castrōrum flūmine
mūniēbātur.
laud-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I praise,
19. Fr. *louer*.
dux militēs fortēs laudat.
lectiō, *ōnis*, *f.* a passage for reading,
1. Fr. *lesson*.
lectiō difficilis est.
lēgātiō, *ōnis*, *f.* an embassy (*i.e.* a
number of lēgāti), 25. Fr. *lēgā-
tion*.
hostēs commūnē lēgātiōnē ad
Caesarem mittunt.
lēgātūs, *ī*, *m.* (i) a second in com-
mand, brigadier, 4; (ii) a hostage,
9. Fr. *lēgat*.
lēgātūs bellum bene gerit.
lēgāti à Venetiis mittuntur.
legiō, *ōnis*, *f.* a legion, 2. Fr. *lēgion*.
trēs legiōnēs in Germāniā col-
locantur.
lēnis, *e*, *adj.* calm, mild, 26.
ventus lēnissimus flābat.
lēnitās, *ātis*, *f.* mildness, slowness
(of a river), 41.
Arar flūmen magna lēnitātis est.
liber, *bri*, *m.* a book, 12. Fr. *livre*.
non-omnēs librōs anant.
liberī, *ōrum*, *m. pl.* chilfren, 12.
quot liberī patri tuō sunt?
liber-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I free, 36.
Fr. *libérer*.
cūs adventū incolae periculō
liberāti sunt.
libertās, *ātis*, *f.* freedom, independ-
ence. Fr. *liberté*.
libertātis condiciō grāta est.

licet. 2. *icit* or *itum est*, *v.n.*
impers. it is lawful, allowe

17, 24.
id facere tibi non licet.

lignatiō, *ōnis*, *f.* a felling, procuring
of wood, 16.

alii lignatiōnis, alii frumenti
causā exierant.

ligneus, *a, um*, *adj.* of wood, wooden.
1.

trabs lignea est.

lingua, *ae*, *f.* tongue, language, 20.
Fr. *langue*.

linguae-ne Galliae peritus es?

linum, *i*, *n.* flax, 14. Fr. *lin*.
lini cōpia in Venetis non erat.

littera, *ae*, *f.* a letter (of the alphabet),
4. Fr. *lettre*.

quālibus litteris epistulam scrip-
sit?

pl. a letter, epistle, 4.

litus, *oris*, *n.* the sea-shore, 7.
hostes appropinquantes ex litore

conspeximus.

locus, *i*, *m.* (*nom.* and *acc.* *pl.* *loca*),
a place, spot, position, 1; chance,
room, 19; summo loco natus (*of*
birth), 52. Fr. *lieu*.

omnia loca ab hostibus occu-
pantur.

longē, *adv.* far (*introrsus*), 22; **longō**
abest, 39; by-far, 51; **longē ab**,
away from, 55; *compar.* *ius*. longer
(*of time*), 17; farther (*of place*),
18.

longitūdō, *inis*, *f.* length, 12. Fr.
longitude.

pons in longitūdinem pedum
centum patetbat.

longus, *a, um*, *adj.* long (*of space*), 2;
(*of time*), 3. Fr. *long*.

Rhēnus flumen longum est.

loquor. 3. *locūtus*, *v. dep.* *n.* and *a.* I
speak, talk, 9.

discipuli inter sē loquuntur.

lūna, *ae*, *f.* the moon, 12. Fr. *lune*.
eā nocte lūna plēna erat.

lux, *lūcis*, *f.* light, 21; *prima lux*,
dawn.

lūnae quam sōlis lux minor est.

M

M = Marcus, a Roman name, 38.

māchinātiō, *ōnis*, *f.* machine, engine,
45.

hostēs māchinātiōnem prō-
movent.

maer-eō. 2. no perf. or supine, *v.n.* I
am sad, lament, 45.

puer ob dolōrem maerēbat.

magis, *adv.* more (*of degree*), 37;
compar. *of magnopere*, *q.v.*

magis virtūte quam consilio
vīcimus.

magnitūdō, *inis*, *f.* size, 2.

elephantus immāni magnitūdine
est.

magnopere, *adv.* greatly, 6; *compar.*
magis; *superl.* maximē.

dux suōs magnopere hortatur.

magnus, *a, um*, *adj.* large, great, 2;
magni, at a high price, 45; *compar.*

māior, *i*; *superl.* **maximus**, 4.

magna frumenti cōpia in urbe
erat.

male, *adv.* badly, 10; *compar.* **pēius**;
superl. **pessimē**.

male facere non dēbētis.

mālō, *malle*, *mālūi*, no supine, *v.a.* I
prefer, 9.

pueri lūdere (*to play*) quam
laborāre mālunt.

malus, *a, um*, *adj.* bad, wicked, 20;
compar. **pēior**; *superl.* **pessimus**.

nēmo malos laudat.

mand-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I enjoin,
order (*dat.*), 31; fugae mē mandō, I
commit myself (*i.e.* take) to flight,
6. Fr. *mander*.

Caesar Trebōniō per litterās,
mandāverat.

man-eō. 2. -āsi, -āsum, *v.n.* and *a.* I re-
main, stay, 51; *impers.* 25.

hic manerī diūtius nō potest.

manipulus, *I, m.* a company (division
of the legion), 43.

quot manipuli in legiōne erant?

manus, *ūs*, *f.* a hand, 45; an armed
force, band, 8. Fr. *main*.

in mīlitis manū tēlum est.

mare, is, n. the sea, 6. Fr. *mer.*
nonne marī cingitur Britannia?

maritimus, a, um, adj. of the sea, 15.
Fr. *maritime.*
ea cīvitās maritima omnī est.

Mars, rtis, m. Mars, a Roman god, 24.
Mars, Iovis filius, belli deus
erat.

māter, tris, f. a mother, 31. Fr.
mere.
mātrēs ergā liberōs benignae
(*kind*) sunt.

māteria, ae, f. timber, 4. in *nom.*
and *acc. sing.* also māteri-ēs, -ēm.
māteria à nostris succeditur.

mātrimōnium, nī, n. marriage, 46.
cui Orgetorix filiam suam in mā-
trimōnium dederat?

mātūrē, adv. opportunely, early 7;
compar. -ius; *superl.* -urrimē.
Caesar satis mātūrē proficiscitur.

mātūrēscō. 3. **mātūrūl, v.** *incep.* n.
I become ripe, 12. Fr. *mûrir.*
autumnō pōma (*fruits*) mātūre-
scunt.

mātūr-ō. 1. **āvī, -ātum, v.a.** and *n.* I
hasten, 9; foll. by *injūn.* 25.
dux iter facere mātūrāvit.

maximē, adv. for the most part, 12;
especially, 52; *superl.* of magnō-
pere.

maximus, a, um, adj. very great,
large, 4; *superl.* of magnus, *q.r.*

mediterrāneus, a, um, adj. inland,
remote from the sea, 1. Fr. *mēdi-*
terrānē.
quid in mediterrāneis regionibus
invenitur?

medius, a, um, adj. middle, middle
of, 5, 14.
domus nostra in mediā urbe est.

membrum, I, n. a limb, 20. Fr.
membre.
corpus multa membra habet.

memin-ī, -isse, v.n. I remember, 57.
rectē semper facere mementōte!

memoria, ae, f. memory, 22, 45. Fr.
mémoire; *memoriam* *teneō*, I re-
member, 22 (*gen.*).
cārum rērum memoriam semper
tenēbō.

mens, ntis, f. the mind, 8.
graviter mente perturbor.

mercātor, ūris, m. a merchant, 8.
mercātōres in omnēs terrās eunt.

mercātūra, ae, f. commerce, 24.
nonne Mercurius mercātūrae
deus erat?

Mercurius, urī, m. Mercury, a
Roman god, 24. Fr. *Mercure.*
Mercurius Iovis et Māiae filius
esse dicitur.

meridiānus, a, um, adj. of mid-day,
26. Fr. *méridien.*
meridiānō tempore labōre do-
sistēmus.

meridiēs, ēl, m. the south, 12 (*lit.*
midday)
a meridiē Britanniae Hispania
est.

meritum, ī, n. a service, desert, 57.
lēgātūs propter meritum
laudātor!

mētior. 4. **mensus, v.** *dep.* I measure
out, distribute, 24.
quibus dux frūmentum mētitur?

metus, ūs, m. fear, 8.
metus mentem meam occupāvit.

miles, itis, comm. a soldier, 1.
militēs noctū in castris erunt.

milia, ium, n. pl. of *mille*, thou-
sands, 12. Fr. *mille.*
quattuor milia passuum prō-
gressi sunt.

militāris, e, adj. military, 8, 19.
Fr. *militaire.*
in rēbus militāribus versātur.

militia, ae, f. military service, war;
loc. *militiae.* at the war, 40.
hiemē militēs militiam nōn susti-
nent.

Minerva, ae, f. Minerva, a Roman
goddess, 24.
Minerva sapientiae (*wisdom*) dea
esse dicitur.

minor, us, *adj.* less, 12; *compar.* of *parvus*, *q.v.* Fr. *mineur*, *moindre*.

minus, adv. less, 28; foll. by *abl.*, 49; *compar.* of *paullum*. Fr. *moins*. *minus diēbus quinque opus perfectum est.*

misereor. 2. *miseritus, v. dep.* I pity (*gen.*), 57. *ōrō tē ut meī misereāris.*

miser-or. 1. *-ātus, v. dep.* I bewail, deplore, 8. *militēs fātum inter sē miserāti sunt.*

missus, a, um. 11; *perf. part. pass.* of *mittō*, *q.v.*

mittō. 3. *misi, missum, v.a.* I send, throw, 1. *Rēm subsidia Rōmānīs mittunt.*

modo, adv. only, 8, 18. *nōn modo bonus sed etiam fortis erat.*

modus, ī, m. pattern, fashion, 44, 45. Fr. *mode*. *quem in modum factae sunt nāvēs?*

mollis, e, adj. soft, 28. Fr. *mol*, *molle*. *litus, quō nāvēs instruēbat, molle erat.*

mon-eō. 2. *-uī, -itum, v.a.* I warn, advise, 21. *monet militēs mediā nocte in armis sint.*

mons, ntis, m. a mountain, 2. Fr. *mont*. *montibus circumdatur oppidum.*

morbus, ī, m. disease, illness, 21. *frāter mens morbō adficitur.*

mori-or. 3. *mortuus, v. dep.* I die, 19. Fr. *mourir.* *ō proeliō complūrēs mortui sunt.*

mor-or. 1. *-ātus, v. dep.* *n. and a.* I stop, delay, 6. *illīe paucos diēs morāti sumus.*

mors, rtis, f. death, 33. Fr. *mort*. *mors omnia dēlet.*

mōs, mōris, m. custom, manner, 21; | **mōre suō**, according to his (their) custom, 50. Fr. *mours*. *mōrēs bonōs colere dēbēmus.*

Mosa, ae, m. the river Meuse, 19. *ad ripam Mosae castra pōnit.*

mōtūrus, a, um. 8. *fut. part. act. of moveo, q.v.*

mōtus, a, um. 22. *perf. part. pass.* of *moveō*, *q.v.*

moveō. 2. *mōvī, mōtum, v.a.* I move, 8. Fr. *mouvoir*. *postridiē hostēs sē ex locō mōvērunt.*

mox, adv. soon, 3. *iam in hibernis sunt Rōmāni; mox ab eis discēdant.*

mulier, eris, f. a woman, 19. *mulieres inter barbarōrum ordinēs pugnabant.*

multitūdō, inis, f. a large number, crowd, 4. Fr. *multitude*. *nōstrī hostiū multitūdine circumdantur.*

multus, a, um, *adj.* many, much, 1; *compar.* *plūs*; *superl.* *plūrimus*. *multae in silvā ferae sunt.*

neut. sing. as noun. foll. by *gen.* 15, *multum aestatis*, much of the summer.

multum, adv. much, 10; *compar.* *plūs*; *superl.* *plūrimū*; *multum esse in (abl.)*, to be much engaged in, 10; *multō, adv.* by much, by far, 4, qualifying a *compar.*

mūni-ō. 4. *-īvī (ii), -itum, v.a.* I fortify, 1. Fr. *munir*. *quōmodo mūniuntur castra?*

mūnitiō, ūnis, f. a fortification, rampart, 4. In 46, *lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque* must be taken closely together; wood with which to make a rampart. *Rōmāni sumūno cum studio mūnitionēm faciunt.*

mūrūs, ī, m. a wall, 1. Fr. *mur*. *barbarī dē mūris saxa in nostrōs iaciunt.*

N

nactus, a, um, 9. *perf. part. of nanciscor*, *q.v.*

nam, *conj. for*, 3.

nostris — nam dēfessi erant —
alacritas dēfiebat.

nanciscor. 3. **nactus**, *v. dep.* I meet with, 9.

locum ēgregiē mūnitum nacti sumus.

narr-ō. 1. **āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I tell, relate.

quid hōc mihi narrā: *

nascor. 3. **nātus**, *v. dep.* I am found (*lit. born*), 24. Fr. *naitre*.

plumbum album in Britannia nāscitur.

nātiō, **ōnis**, *f.* a tribe, people, 2, 46. Fr. *nation*.

ēas quoque nationēs adire (*go to*) volebat.

nātūra, *ae*, *f.* nature, 1 (as opp. to *art*, *opus*), shape (of an island), 12. Fr. *nature*.

nātūra loci silvestris erat.

nātus, *a*, *um*, 52. *perf. part. of nascor*, born. Fr. **né**.

vir summō locō nātus.

nātus, *īs*, *m.* birth (used only in *abl. sing.*), 38.

frātrem tuum nātū maximum hodiē vidi.

nauta, *ae*, *m.* a sailor, 21.

tandem nautae in portum incolumēs redibunt.

nauticus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* naval, sea, 43. Fr. *nautique*.

alii nauticis, alii militāribus rēbus intersunt.

nāvālis, *e*, *adj.* naval, 29. Fr. *naval*.

castra nāvālia ad protegendas nāvēs in litore instructās facta sunt.

nāvīgatiō, **ōnis**, *f.* sailing, 58. Fr. *navigation*.

celeri nāvīgatiōne pervenit.

nāvis, *is*, *f.* a ship, 1; **nāvis longa**, a warship, 7. Fr. *navire*. nāvēs iam in portū sunt.

-nē, *interrog. part.* 2; prefixed to the first word of a question, expecting a doubtful (*i.e.* either an affirmative or negative) answer.

Marcum-ne amicūm tuūm vidiſti?

nē, *conj.* that not, lest, 31; not to (after *hortor*, etc.), 36; with 2nd pers. *subj.*, 37; final, 41; with *imperf.* *subj.* = *imperative*, 45. Fr. *ne*.

ōrō tē nē hōe faciās.

nē . . . quidem, *adv.* not even, 19; (emphasise the word between them).

nē minimus quidem ventus fluctus commovēbat (stirred).

necessārius, *a*, *um*, *adj.* needful, necessary, 18. Fr. *nécessaire*. dux rēs necessāriūs comparat.

necesse est, *v. imperf.* it is necessary, 24, foll. by *infin.*

necesse erat id confestim fieri.

neç-ō. 1. **āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.a.* I kill (cruelly), 11.

alii ignī, alii famē (hunger) necāti sunt.

neglegō. 3. **neglexi**, **neglectum**, *v.a.* I am regardless of, 21. Fr. *négliger*. illius in mē injūrias neglexi.

neg-ō. 1. **āvī**, **-ātum**, *v.n. and a.* I say no, deny, 22. Fr. *nier*. speculatōrēs barbarōs adesso negant.

negōtīum, *ti*, *n.* business, affair, 19. Fr. *negocie*. negōtīo confectō domīnū rediū.

nēmō, **nullūs**, *m.* or *f.* no one, 15. hostium nēmō diūtius resistēbat.

nēquāquam, *adv.* by no means, not at all, 17.

legatōrum responsū duci nēquāquam placuit (*pleased*).

neque, *conj.* and . . . not, nor, 3.

neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor, 7.
neque in silvis neque in agris hostes erant.

* **nē-ve (neu)**, *adv.* and not, nor, 32, 45; introduces a negative clause containing a purpose, command, or prohibition.
obsidēs ērant ut sibi parcat, nēve agris suis noccat.

nihil, *indecl. n.* nothing, 15; foll. by *gen.* of noun, 15.
nihil frumenti in oppidō erat.

nihilō-minus, *adv.* none the less, 3 (*lit.* less by nothing).
nostri nihilō minus impetum sustinēt.

nil, 39. = *nihil*, *q.v.*

nisi, *conj.* except, unless, 12, 48.
nisi auxilia vénérint, diūtiū sustinēre nōn poterimus.

nōbilis, e, *adj.* high-born, noble, 16.
Fr. *noble*.
obsidēs nōbilissimī Rēmis imperantur.

nōbilitās, ātis, *f.* the nobility, 43.
Fr. *noblesse*.
omnia civitatis nōbilitās interiūt.

noc-eō. 2. -ui, -itum, *v.n.* I injure.
hurt (*dat.*), 31: *impers.* 25.
dicit sē illis nōn nocitūrum esse.

noctū, *adv.* at, by night, 4.
noctū ferae per silvās errant (*wander*).

nocturnus, a, um, *adj.* of night, 47.
Fr. *nocturne*.
nocturnō tempore quies omnia occupat.

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, *v. irreg.* I do not wish, 12.
dux iniquō locō pugnāre non vult.

nōmen, imis, *n.* a name, 41. Fr. *nom*.
quō nōmine appellāris?

nōn, *adv.* not, 2. Fr. *non*.
incolae urbem nōn défendunt.

nōndum, *adv.* not yet, 17.
nuntiū nondum cum litteris redierant.

nonne, *interrog. part.* not? expecting an affirmative answer, 2.
nonne Pisō frātrem ex periculō ēripit?

nonnūlūs, a, um, *adj.* some, several; *pl.* used as noun, 14.
nonnullae cohortēs intercipiuntur.

nōs, *1st pers. pron.* we, us, 2; (*pl. of ego, q.v.*) Fr. *nous*.

nōster, tra, trum, *adj.* our, 1. Fr. *notre*.
patria nostra à nōbīs amātur.

nostrī, īrum, *m. pl.* our men, soldiers, 1.
instant nostri, et hostes fugant.

nōtūs, a, um, 15. *perf. parl. pass.* of noscō. 3. novi, nōtūm, knōwn.
num tibi urbs Rōma nōta est?

novitās, ātis, *f.* strangeness, 9.
Romani periculi novitāte perterriti sunt.

novus, a, um, *adj.* new, strange, 14; rēs novae, a revolution, 27. Fr. *neuf, neuve, nouveau*.
id pugnae genus nostris novum erat.

nox, noctis, *f.* night, 5. Fr. *nuīt*.
pueri saepe noctem timent.

nūdus, a, um, *adj.* bare, 31. Fr. *nu*. inulieris pectus nūdum est.

nulls, *a, um*, *adj.* no, none, 4.
nullus in oppido inveniūtur hostis.

num, *interrog. part.* expecting a negative answer, 5.
num malōs hominēs laudās?

numerus, I, *m.* a number, 6. Fr. *nombre*.
reliquī, numerō quadringenti, fugantur.

nuntiūs, tī, *m.* a messenger, 4.
nuntiūs cum epistula mittitur.

O *

ob, *prep. gor. acc.* on account of, because of, 37.
ob tempestātem in portū manētur.

obiectus, *a, um*, 12. *perf. part. pass.* of *ob-iectō*, 3. *iēci*, *iectum*, opposite. *insula Sicilia Italiae obiecta est.*

obliquo, *a, um*, *adj.* indirect (*lit.* slanting), 36. Fr. *oblique*. *öratiō aut recta aut obliqua est.*

obses, *idis*, *comm.* a hostage, 6. *ob-sides in castra mittuntur.*

obliviscor. 3. *oblitus*, *v. dep.* I forget (*gen.*), 45. Fr. *oublier*. *nē, militēs, pristinae fortūnae obliiti sitis!*

ob-sideō. 2. *-sēdī*, *-sessum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I blockade, beset, 3. *Cicerō à Nerviis obsidētur.*

obsidō, *ōnis*, *f.* a siege, blockade, 3. *sīpū māior nostris in obsidōne quam in oppugnatiōne erat.*

ob-signō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I seal up, 8. *epistulam mean obsignāvi.*

ob-test-or. 1. *-ātus*, *v. dep.* I entreat, implore, 31. *tē per (by) omnēs dēōs obtestor.*

ob-tineō. 2. *-tinui*, *-tentum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I hold, 1. Fr. *obtenir*. *Caesar tōtius exercitūs imperium obtinēbat.*

occasiō, *ōnis*, *f.* an opportunity, 18. Fr. *occasion*. *barbaris resistendi occasiō nōn erat.*

occāsus, *ūs*, *m.* a setting, 25. *sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit.*

oc-cidō. 3. *-cidi*, *-cāsum*, *v.n.* I go down, set (of the heavenly bodies), 25. Fr. *occident*. *sōliam complūrēs hōrās occiderat.*

oc-cidō. 3. *-cidi*, *-cīsum*, *v.a.* I kill, slay, 7. *ad unum omnēs occiduntur.*

occīsus, *a, um*, 15. *perf. part. pass.* of *occidō*, *q.v.*

occultō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v. freq. a.* I conceal, 12. *ūna legiō à duce in silvis occulta erat.*

occupātus, *a, um*, 14. *perf. part. pass.* of *occupō*, busy, occupied. Fr. *occupēt*.

occup-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I seize, 8; take possession of, 36. Fr. *occuper*. *nōstri loca superiōra occupāvērānt.*

oc-currō. 3. *-currī*, *-cursum*, *v.n.* I face; go or come to meet, 27, 39. *lēgātūs Caesāri venienti occurrīt.*

octingentī, *ae, a, num. adj.* eight hundred, 12. *ex hostibū octingenti occisi sunt.*

oculus, *i, m.* an eye, 13. Fr. *œil*. *quot oculi tibi sunt?*

ōdī, *ōdisse*, *v. irreg. a.* I hate, 57. *dixit sē Marcum ōdisse.*

offendō. 3. *offendī*, *offensum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I offend, vex 54. Fr. *offenser*. *num tē umquam (ever) verbō offendī?*

officium, *icī, n.* duty, obligation, 18. Fr. *office*. *qui officiō suō funguntur laudandi sunt.*

omnīnō, *adr.* at all, 43; altogether, 54. *nulla omnīnō rēs nostris dēerat.*

omnis, *e, adj.* all, 3. *pl.* all men, mankind, 19. *omnēs viae à Rōmānis occupāntur.*

onerō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I load, 17. *nāvēs commētū onerātac in portum pervenient.*

onus, *eris*, *n.* weight, burden, 45. *tantum-ne onus sustinērē potes?*

ope, 50. *abl.* *sīg. of* *ops*, *opis*, *f.* assistance, help, *v. p.* 194.

opera, *ae, f.* incans, agency, 36. *tuā operā id fieri poterat.*

opiniō, *ōnis*, *f.* opinion, belief, 12; expectation, 54. Fr. *opinion*. *complūrēs in cādem opiniōne erant.*

oport-*et*. 2. *uit*, *v. impers.* it behoves, is necessary or proper, 24.
omnēs officia praestāre oportet.

oppidāni, ōrum, m. pl. townsfolk, 23.
oppidāni Caesaris adventū perterriti sē dēdunt.

oppidum, ī, n. a town, 1.
oppidimūnitōnēs firmae (*strong*) sunt.

opportūnus, a, um, adj. seasonable, opportune, 9. Fr. *opportun*.
nihil illarē opportūnus acciderat.

oppressus, a, um, 19. perf. part. pass. of opprimō, q.v.

op-primō. 3. -*pressi*, -*pressum*, *v.a.* 1 overwhelin, overpower, 19. Fr. *opprimer*.
timor Rōmānōs oppressit.

oppugnātiō, ōnis, f. an attack, assault, 3.
nostrī Gallōrum oppugnātiōni resistunt.

op-pugn-ō. 1. -*āvi*, -*ātum*, *v.a.* 1 attack, 4.
Caesar aggere vincisque oppidum oppugnat.

optimus, a, um, 26. superl. of bonus, q.v.

opus, eris, n. work, art (as opp. to *nātūra*), 1; work, outwork (*milit.*) 16; work (ordinary), 17, 24; **opus est**, it is needful, useful, 16, 51.

quantō opere, rel. how greatly, how much, 45.

ōra, ae, f. shore, coast, 15.
Britanniae ūrae periculōsae (*dangerous*) sunt.

ōrātiō, ōnis, f. speech, address, 6. Fr. *oraison*.
hāc ūrātiōne militum animos confirmat.

ordō, inis, m. a rank, 2; **primi ordinēs**, 43, q.v. Fr. *ordre*.
barbari impetum in nostrōs ordinēs faciunt.

orior. 4. **ortus, v. dep.** I rise (of a river), 2; of a shout, 6; of fear, 8; of the sun, 12; of descent, 22; of dawn, 26.
nonne ex Alpibus oritur Rhēnus?

ōr-ō. 1. -*āvi*, -*ātum*, *v.a.* and *n.* I be-seech, ask, 31.
ōrant Caesarem nō sē necet.

ortus, a, um, 22. perf. part. of orior, q.v.

ostend-ō. 3. -*ī*, -*sum* and -*tum*, *v.a.* I show, reveal, 14.
barbari sē ex silvis subitō ostendērunt.

ōvum, ī, n. an egg, 2. Fr. *œuf*.
in avis nīdō (nest) tria ūva sunt.

P

P = Publius, a Roman name, 11.

pābul-or. 1. -*ātus*, *v. dep.* I forage, 17.
trēs legiōnēs pābulatum missae sunt.

pābulum, ī, n. food, fodder, 48.
nulla pabuli cōpia nostris supererat.

paene, adv. almost, 16.
non sōlum illa legiō sed paene totus exercitus déperīt.

paenit-*et*. 2. -*uit*, *v. impers.* it repents (acc. of person and gen. of thing), 24.
nonne tē consili mali paenituit?

pāgus, ī, a canton.
Helvēti multos pāgōs habēbant.

palam, adv. openly, publicly, 12.
nōn ex insidiis sed palam.

palūs, ūdis, f. a marsh, 27.
Rōmāni palūdem transire cōnāntur.

par, paris, adj. equal, 12.
turrēs paris magnitūdinis aedificātæ erant.

parātus, a, um, 18. perf. part. pass. of par-ō, ready, prepared, 18.
Fr. *paré*.
parātus ad omnēs cāsūs (*emergencies*) sum.

parcō. 3. *pepercī*, *parsum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I spare, do not injure (*dat.*), 34.
hostium aedificiis parcēbātur.

pār-eō. 2. *-uī, -itum, v.n.* I obey (*dat.*), 50.
puerī, magistrō pārēte!

pariō. 3. *peperī, paritum* and *partum, v.a.* I procure, *vn* (*victoriām*), 51.
reliqui salūtem sibi peperēre.

par-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v.a.* I prepare, *get ready*, 9. Fr. *parer*.
turrēs testūdines-que parantur.

pars, rtis, f. a part, 2; direction, 6; some, 11; some . . . others, 12; season (*annū*), 12. Fr. *part*.
maxima pars in militum in castra redeunt.

parum, adv. too little, 25 (qualifying another adv.).
equitēs parum celeriter auxilio reliquis vénérunt.

parvī, 58; *gen. or lot.* of value, *v. pp.* 191, 192.

parvulus, a, um, adj. dim. very small, 27; (of age), 27.
proelium parvulum commissum est.

passim, adv. hither and thither, in every direction, 19.
barbari per agrōs passim sparsi (scattered) sunt.

passus, fīs, m. a pace, 12; mille passus, 1000 paces, a Roman mile.
multa milia passuum prōgrediuntur.

passus, a, um, 31. *perf. part. pass.* of pandō. 3. pandi, passum, out-stretched.
mulier passis manibus clamitābat.

pat-eō. 2. *uī*, no supine, *v.n.* I extend (of territory).
quōrum finēs longē patēbant?

pater, tris, m. a father; *pl.* fore-fathers, 37. Fr. *père*.
ea rēs patrūm nostrōrum memoriā facta est.

patior. 3. *passus, v. dep.* I suffer, allow, 6; foll. by *infīn.*
captivi supplicium grave patiuntur.

patria, ae, f. native land, 39. Fr. *patrie*.
quis patriam suam nōn amat?

paucus, a, um, adj. few, 6, 45.
pauci solum incolae in oppidō remanent.

paulatim, adr. gradually, little by little, 8.
nostrī paulatim barbaros fugam dant.

paulisper, adr. for a little while, 9. hic, puer, paulisper remanē!

paulō, adv. by a little, somewhat, 6, 16.
paulō minus hōris tribus redibō.

paulum, adr. a little, 16 (*of time*). post paulum ē castris ēgressi sumus.

pauper, eris, adj. poor, 57. Fr. *pauvre*.
nonne argentum pauperibus dare débemus?

pax, pācis, f. peace, 9. Fr. *paix*.
pax a Caesare cum barbaris facta est.

pectus, oris, n. breast, 34.
tribūnus pectore vulnus accipit.

pecūnia, ae, f. money, wealth, 24.
pecūniām comparūtam servābō.

pecus, oris, n. cattle, 22.
pecora in agris sunt.

pedes, itis, m. a foot soldier, 32.
dux peditēs hortātur firmiter resistant.

pedester, tris, tre, adj. foot, 11. Fr. *pédestre*.
proelium pedestre committitur.

peditātus, fīs, m. foot-soldiers, infantrī, 22.
peditātū coactō iter facit.

pellis, is, f. a skin, 15; *pl.* tent (*sub pellibus*, under 'canvas'), 2. Fr. *peau*.
nonne hieme militēs sub pellibus erunt?

pellō. 3. *pepuli, pulsum, v.a.* I drive back, rout (*milit.*), 14.
barbari omnēs ā Galliae finibus pellentur.

per, *prep. & adv.* *acc.* through, 2; by means of, 4; **per vim**, by force, 31; **per mē**, as *far* as I am concerned, 24.
 per quōrum finēs Rhēnus fertur?
per-eō, -ire, -iū, -itum, *v.n.* I perish, die, 14. Fr. *périr*.
 illō diē māior pars militum perit.

perfacilis, *e*, *adj.* very easy, 38.
 num disciplina cognitū perfacilis est?

per-ferō, -ferre, -tūll, -lātum, *v.a.* I carry (litterās), 46; announce (fūnam), 47; submit to, endure, 44. tantae iniūiae perferrī nōn possunt.

per-ficiō, 3. -fēci, -fectum, *v.a.* I accomplish, complete, 14. 49.
 noctū opus à militibus perficitur.

perfidia, *ae, f.* treachery, 19.
 hostēs perfidia ūsi nostrōscircumvēnēre.

per-fringō, 3. -frēgi, -fractum, *v.a.* I break through, 13.
 bābari munitionēs perfringere nōn poterant.

per-fugiō, 3. -fūgi, no supine, *v.n.* I desert, 52.
 ex hostibus multī ad Rōmānōs perfūgērunt.

periculum, *I*, *n.* danger, 1. Fr. *péril*. Rōmānī periculum nou recūsant.

pēritus, *a, um*, *adj.* skilful, experienced (foll. by *gen.*), 24.
 multārum rērum peritus sum.

perlectus, *a, um*, 56. *perf. part. pass.* of *per-legō* 3. -lēgi, -lectum, read through.
 litteraeq; ducē perlectae sunt.

per-maneō, 2. -mansi, -mansum, *v.n.* I continue, persist, 21.
 hostēs in officiō permanēre nōlunt.

per-mittō, 3. -misi, -missum, *v.a.* I allow, permit, 14. Fr. *permettre*. Caesar captivis discēdere permisit.

permōtus, *a, um*, 8. *perf. part. pass.* of *per-moveo*, 2. -mōvi, -mōtum, influenced, excited.
 nostri, spē victōriac permōti, instant.

perniciēs, *ēi, f.* ruin, disaster, 15.
 quantō cum dolōre perniciēm illam vidēbam!

perpaucus, *a, um*, *adj.* very few, 19.
 perpaucā à nostris vulnera accepta erant.

perpetuus, *a, um*, *adj.* unbroken, continuous. in *perpetuum* (*sc. tempus*), for all time, 36. Fr. *perpétuel*.

per-rumpō, 3. -rūpī, -ruptum, *v.n.* I break or rush through.
 per hostium ordinēs per-rumpēmus.

per-scribō, 3. -scripsi, -scriptum, *v.a.* I write a full account of, 55.
 perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse.

per-sequor, 3. *secūtus*, *v. dep.* I follow up, 7; take vengeance on, 37.
 fugientēs ad flumen persequimur.

persevēr-ō, 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.n.* and *a.* I persist (foll. by *infīn.*), 37.
 nē id facere persevērāvēs!

per-solvō, 3. -solvi, -solutum, *v.a.* I pay, suffer (pocnas), 52.

per-spiciō, 3. -spexi, -spectum, *v.a.* I see through, 43.
 silva nōn modo nōn intrari (entered) sed ne perspici quidem poterat.

per-suādeō, 2. *suāsī, -suāsum*, *v.a.* I persuade (*dat.*) 4; *impers.* 25. Fr. *persuader*.
 dux servō prae*mō* persuādet.

per-terr-eō, 2. -uī, -itum, *v.a.* I frighten thoroughly, 6, 41.
 puer ferū perterrētur.

per-territus, *a, um*, 6. *perf. part. pass.* of *perterreō*, *q.v.*

per-tin-eō, 2. -uī, no supine. *v.n.* I reach, extend, 12.
 Belgae ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni pertinent,

per-turb-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I throw into confusion, 2. ordinēs nostri nōn perturbantur.

per-veniō. 4. -vēni, -ventum, *v.n.* I come to, reach, 9; *imp. s.* 25. Fr. *parvenir*. Germāni in finēs Eburōnum per vēnērunt.

pes, pedis, m. a foot, 16. Fr. *pied*. quot pedēs tibi sunt?

pet-ō. 3. -ivI (-II), *Itum, v.a.* I attack, 4; ask, 7; sue for, 9; make for, 11; seek, look for, 16. barbari nostrōs saxis sagittisque petēbant. légāti pācem à Caesare petunt.

phalanx, ngis, f. a battle formation of the Gauls and Germans, forming a parallelogram, 13, 29. Helvēti, phalange factā, instabant.

pilum, ī, n. a javelin, 13. primō nōstrī pila coniciunt.

pilus, ī, m. regularly joined with primus, *v. less.* 43.

piscis, is, m. a fish, 2. Fr. *poisson*. piscēs in mari natant (*swim*).

pix, picis, f. pitch, 16. hostes turres nostrās pīce incendunt.

plānus, a, um, adj. flat, 42. dux nāvēs in litore plāno constituit.

plēnus, a, um, adj. full, 12 (*gen.* and *abl.*). Fr. *plein*. quārum rērū domus tua plena est?

plērique, raeque, rāque, adj. very many, most, 11. plērique Belgae contrā Caesarem coniūrāverant.

plērumque, adv. for the most part, 15.

plumbum, ī, n. lead; **plumbum album, tin, 4.** Fr. *plomb*. in quibus Britanniae partibus plumbum album invenitur?

plūrimum, plūrimus, v. plūs. plūs, plūris, (*compar.* of ~~multus~~ *plus*), more; pl. several, 2, 14; as *adv.* with posse; 54 (*nom.* and *acc. pl.* plūrēs, plūra; *gen.* plūrium). Fr. *plus*.

plūrimus, a, um, (superl. of plūltus) very many, most, 24, 38.

plūrimum, adr. very much, exceedingly; with valēre, 30; with posse, 39.

poena, ae, f. a penalty, 52. Fr. *peine*. barbari poenīs gravibus adfecti sunt.

polliceor. 2. **pollicitus, v. dep.** I promise, 5 (takes the *fut. tense* of the *infin.*). nonne pecūniā mihi pollicēris?

pondus, eris, n. weight, 27. magnum argenti pondus in hostium castris repertum est.

pōnō. 3. **posūi, positum, v.a.** I pitch (castra), 9; put, 11, 46; lay down, 37. dux castra iniquo locō pōnit.

pons, ntis, m. a bridge, 19. Fr. *pont*. in eō flūmine pons erat.

poposcī, 26. perf. indic. act. of poscō, *q.v.*

popul-or. 1. **ātus, v. dep.** I lay waste, ravage, 41. Rōmāni Rēmōrum agrōs populati erant.

populus, ī, m. a people, 2. Fr. *peuple*. senatus populusque Rōmānus (S. P. Q. R.)

porta, ae, f. a gate, 15. Fr. *porte*. subitō ex omnibus castrōrum portis ēruptiō fit.

port-ō. 1. -āvi, -ātum, *v.a.* I carry, 28. Fr. *porter*. militēs frūmentum ad castra portant.

portus, ūs, m. a harbour, 1. Fr. *port*. Ostia Rōmæ portus erat.

poscō. 3. **poposcī, no supine, v.a.** I demand, 16; with two accs. dux hostēs légātos poscet.

positus, a, *pnm.* perf. part. pass. of pōnō; *in. n. pl.* 'things placed,' 24.

possum, posse, potuī, *v.n. irreg.* 1 am able, can, 4; plūs posse, to have more power, influence, 54; plūrimum posse, to have very great power, 39.

post, *prep. gov. acc.* after, 3; behind, 19; barbari post montem sē occultav- erant.

adv. afterwards, 11, 26.

postea, *adv.* after this or that, 26. paulo posteā pax facta est.

posterus, a, *um.* *adj.* following, next, 4.

postcrā nocte dux cōpiās eduxit.

postquam, *conj.* after, when, 12. eō postquam Caesar pervenit, obsidēs poposicit.

postrēmō, *adv.* at last, finally, 45. postrēmō etiam virēs nostris deerant.

postrīdiē, *adv.* on the following day, 48.

postrīdiē proficisci constituit.

postul-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* I demand, request, 8.

quod à mē postulas dare nōn possum.

potentia, ae, *f.* power, authority, 45.

ēius hominis potentia summa erat.

potestās, ātis, *f.* ability, opportunity, 17, 19.

ēius ne rei facienda potestātem habēs?

potiōr. 4. potitus, *v. dep.* I get possession of, 5 (*abl.* or *gen.*).

imperiō tōtius Galliae potitur.

prae, *prep. gov. abl.* in comparison with, 45.

dives prae ceteris est.

prae-caveō. 2. -cāvī, -cautum, *v.n.* I take heed, use precaution, 25.

tibi satis praecavendum nōn erat.

prae-cēdō. 3. -cessi, -cessum, *v.a.* 1 exēl, 56. Fr. *précéder.*

Aulus Tiberium disciplinā iam praeccēdet.

praeceutum, I, *n.* an order, injunc- tion, 33. Fr. *précēpte.*

hōc praeceptō datō abiit.

prae-cipiō. 3. -cēpī, -ceptum, *v.a.* I instruct, order, 33, 34.

dux suōs praeccipit proelium renovent.

praeccipit-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a.* and *n.* I throw headlong, 19. Fr. *pre- cipiter.*

incolae sē dē murō praeccipitā- bant.

prae-d-or. 1. ātus, *v. dep.* I make booty, plunder, 17.

nonnulli praedātum missi erant.

prae-fectus, I, *m.* officer, 8. Fr. *préfct.*

praefecti suōs hortabantur.

prae-ficiō. 3. -fēcī, -fectum, *v.a.* I place over, at the head (*acc.* and *dat.*), 27.

Caesar classi Q. Atrium prae- ficit.

prae-mittō. 3. -misī, -missum, *v.a.* I send forward, 17.

legiōnēs in Hispaniam prae- missae sunt.

prae-mium, mi, *n.* a reward, 4.

post victoriā dux suis praemia dabit.

prae-sentia, ae, *f.* (animi), presence of mind, 51. Fr. *présēnce.*

nostrī magnam animi prae- sentiam praestiterunt.

prae-sertim, *adv.* especially, 45.

tantae prae-sertim multitudini frūmentum deflēbat.

prae-sidium, id, *n.* protection, garri- son, 4; *predic. dat.* 23.

prae-sidium in oppidō collocātur.

prae-stō. 1. -stitti, -stātum and -stītum, *v.n. and a.* I exhibit, mani- fest, 57.

nostrī magnam virtūtem prae- stītēre.

praestat, *impers.* it is better, preferable, 25.

prae-sum, *-esse*, *-fui*, *v.n.* I am over, in command (*dat.*), 41.
aliquem mittit qui urbē ~~h~~ aesis.

praeter, *prep. gov. acc.* except, 15.
nihil commeātūs erat praeter
quod in castris habebant.

premō. 3. *pressī*, *pressum*, *v.a.* I press hard, oppress, 22.
hostēs nostrōs premere coe-
perant.

prendō (prehendō). 3. *prendi*, *pren-
sum*, *v.a.* I grasp, take, 50. Fr.
prendre.
facere nōn potui quin eius dex-
trām prenderem.

pridiē, *adv.* on the day before, 47.

primipilus, *I. m. v.* Less, 43 (Lectiō).

primus, *a. um.* *adj.* (*superl. of prae*),
first, 11; **primō**, *adv.* at first, 16;
primum, *adv.* at first, first, *~,*
quam primum, as soon as possible,
40.

princeps, *ipis*, *adj.* and *comm. noun*.
first (in time or order), chief, leader,
6, 22, 52.
Caesar hostium principes ad sé
vocavit.

pristinus, *a. um.* *adj.* former, early,
19.
rēs in pristinum statum (*state*)
redierunt.

priusquam, *conj.* before, 15; **prius
... quam**, 34.
priusquam tibi respondeō, hōc
mihi dic!

privātus, *a. um.* *adj.* private, apart
from the state, 15. Fr. *privé*.
in privātis meis rēbus versor.

prō, *prep. gov. abl.* in front of, 16;
in proportion to, 29; in return for,
33; instead-of, 43; in accordance
with, 48; as (prō hoste habēre),
51.

prob-ū. 1. *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I try, test,
19; approve, 52. Fr. *prover*.
virtūs in bellō probāri potest.

prō-cēdō. 3. *-cessi*, *-cessum*, *v.n.* I
advance, 18.
eō diē milia pasuum xv prō-
cessit.

prōconsul, *is*, *m.* a *proconsul*, 14.
prōconsulēs plērumque prōvinciis
praeerant.

procul, *adv.* from a distance, 4.
nōn procul à mari castra pōnit.

prō-currō. 3. *-cucurri* and *-curri*,
-cursum, *v.n.* I rush forward, 49.
barbari è silvis prōcurrunt.

prō-dūcō. 3. *-duxī*, *-ductum*, *v.a.* I
lead forward, out, 57. Fr. *pro-
duire*.
cōpiis prō castris prōductis.

proeli-or. 1. *-ātus*, *v.dep.* I fight, 5.
legiōnēs iniquō locō proeliantur.

proelium, *-li*, *m.* a battle, skirmish, 1.
proelium à Rōmānis com-
mittitur.

profectiō, *ōnis*, *f.* a departure, 55
quartā vigiliā profectiō fiet.

profectus, *a. m.* 9. *perf. part.* of pro-
flicscor, *q.v.*

proficiscor. 3. *profectus*, *m. dep.* I
set out, start,
Caesar in Illyricum proficis-
citur.

pro-fiteor. 2. *-fessus*, *v. dep.* I pro-
pose, offer, 36. Fr. *professer*.
sē posterō diē ventūrum profes-
sus est.

pro-fugiō. 3. *-fūgī*. no supine, *v.n.* I
flee, escape, 14.
noctū oppidāni ex oppidō pro-
fugiunt.

prō-gredior. 3. *-gressus*, *v. dep.* I
advance, 10.
dux longius prōgredī nōluit.

pro-hib-eō. 2. *-ui*, *-itum*, *v.a.* I
hinder, debar, stop, 6, 7, 31; pro-
tect, 49.
Helvētiī Germānōs finibus suis
prohibent.

prō-mineō. 2. *-minui*, no supine, *v.n.*
I bend forward, 34.
mulier dē mūrō prōminēbat.

prō-moveō. 2. *-mōvi*, *-mōtum*, *v.a.* I move forward, 45.
 aggor in urbēni prōmovēbātur.

prōmunturiūn. *rī*, *n.* a headland, • promontory, 43. Fr. *promontoire*.
 oppīlum in prōmunturiō positus est.

prō-nunti-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I announce, proclaim, 22. Fr. *prononcer*.
 • *ducis consilium palam prō-nuntiātum est.*

prope, *prep. gor. acc.* near, 41.
 flūnen prope castra nostra erat.
 adv. almost, 36.

prō-pellō. 3. *-pulī*, *-pulsum*, *v.a.* I drive before, defeat, 46.
 • *barbari nostrōs à sinistrō cornū prōpellēbant.*

propius (*compar.* of *prope*), *prep. gov. acc.* nearer, 3; *adv.* nearer, 4.

prō-pōnō. 3. *-posui*, *-positum*, *v.a.* I offer (*praemium*), 33; intend, purpose, 34. Fr. *proposer*.
 Caesar militibus frūmentum praeium prōpōnit.

prō-pugn-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* I make sallies, 28.
 nostrīs studium prōpugnandī erat.

propter, *prep. gov. acc.* on account of, owing to, 3.
 propter tempestatēs militēs exire nōn poterant.

proptereā(quod), *adv.* on that account, 4, 46.

prōrā, *ae. f.* the prow (of a ship), 44. Fr. *prore*.
 quālēs erant Venetōrum nāvium prōrāe?

prō-spiciō. 3. *-spexī*, *-spectum*, *v.n.* I provide for, take care of, 25.
 consulite vōbis, prospicite patria!

prō-tegō. 3. *-texī*, *-tectum*, *v.a.* I cover, protect, 4. Fr. *protéger*.
 comitem scūtō prōtexit.

prōtinus, *adv.* forthwith, 41.
 ex fugā prōtinus auxilia discesserunt.

prōvectus, *a, um.* 26. *perf. part.* pass. of *pro-vehō*. 3. *-vexī*, *-vectum*, carried forward.
 nāvēs in altum prōvectae sunt.

prō-vidō. 2. *-vīdi*, *-visum*, *v.a.* I see to, 11. Fr. *pourvoir*.
 frūmentō exercitū prōvisō iter fecit.

prōvinciā, *ae. f.* a province, 9. Fr. *province*.
 senātūs Caesarem prōvinciæ praeſicet.

proximus, *a, um.* *adj. (superl. of prope)*, nearest, 8; next (diēs), 47; **proximē,** *adv.* shortly before or after, last, 11.

publicus, *a. um.* *adj.* public, 55. Fr. *public*.
 rēbus publicis interest.

puer, *eri*, *m. a child*, 51; *pl. children*, 19.
 māter puerum laudat et amat.

pugna, *ae. f.* a battle, 9.
 pugna usque ad medium noctem facta est.

pugn-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* I fight, 7; *impers. pass.* *pugnātūr*, *pugnatum est*, etc.
 pugnātūr ūnō tempore omnibus locis.

pulsus, *a. um.* 14, 22. *perf. part.* pass. of *pellō*, *q.v.*

pulvis, *eris, m.* dust, cloud of dust, 36.
 speculatōrēs magnum pulvērem animadvertisunt.

punī-ō. 4. *-ivī* (*-ii*), *-itum*, *v.a.* I punish, 4. Fr. *punir*.
 dux ignāvōs (cowardly) militēs pūniēt.

puppis, *is. f.* the stern (of a ship), 44. Fr. *poupe*.
 nāvium puppēs, firmās (strong) esse oportet.

put-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I think, consider, 25.
 Caesar proficiscendum sibi nōn putat.

Q=Quintus, a Roman name, 28.

quā, *adv.* where, 26.

dux in eum locum prōgreditur,
quā frumentī copiam fīsse cog-
nōvit.

quadrūngenti, *a*, *a*, *adj.* four hun-
dred, 54.

ea silva quadringenta mīlia pas-
sum patebat.

quaerō, 3 *quaesīvi* (-sī), *quaesītūm*,
v.a. I look for, ask, 20.

Caesar ab captīvis quaesiit.

quālis, *e*, *adj.* what like? 1.

quāllibus māris mūnītur
oppidum?

quam, *adv.* than (after a *compara-
tive*), 6; after *idem*, as, 24; wit-
supcrl. of *adjs.* and *advbs.*, as
... possible, 33, 52.

quamobrem, *adv.* why? (*lit.* on
account of what thing?), 14; in
Indirect Questions, 44.

quamobrem nostrī perterriti
sunt?

quamquam, *conj.* although (*indic.*),
54.

militēs, quamquam fessi erant,
tamen fortiter resistēbant.

quamvis, *adv.* (qualifying an *adj.*) as
much as you will, ever so, 21.

fortes, quamvis pauci, à pugnā
nōn fugient.

conj. although (*subj.*), 54.

quamvis sis sapiens, id stultum
(*foolish*) fēcisti.

quandō, *indef. adv.* (after *si*) at any
time, 49.

si quandō male fēceris, pūniēris.

quantus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* how great,
either *interrog.* or *rel.* 33, 44, 45:
neut. sing. foll. by *gen.* of *noun*,
47; preceded by *tantus*, as great
... as, 27.

quantō opere, how greatly, how
much, 45.

quantō ... tantō, by how much ...
by so much, the ... the, 27, 52.

quantō diūtius abes, tantō magis
tē cupiō.

quārē, *adv.* why? 6; *rel.* 42.

quārē id quod iussi tōn fēcisti?

quartus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* fourth, 6. Fr.
quart.

militūm quarta pars occīsa est.

quattuor, *num.* *adj.* four, 1. Fr.
quatre.

nonne equō quattuor pedēs sunt?

-que, *conj.* and, 1.

tēla lapides-que cōnīciuntur.

quemadmodum, *adv.* in what
manner, how; *rel.* 42, *v. p.* 177.

queror, 3. *questus*, *v. dep.* I bewail,
lament, 8.

cūr fātūm frūstrā quereris?

questum, 46, *supīne* of *queror*, *q.v.*

qui, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.* who,
which, 1; (after *idem*) as, 24; *quod*,
a thing which, 43.

ei, qui rectē faciunt, laudantur.

quia, *conj.* because, 16.

urbs, quia bene mūnīta erat, nōn
expugnāta est.

quicunque, *quaecumque*, *quod-
cumque*, *pron. rel.* whoever, what-
ever, 16. Fr. *quiconque*.

quaecumque à mē petēs, nōn
imprētrābis.

quid, *neut. sing.* of *quis*, *quid*, *q.v.*
why? wherefore? 48.

quidam, *quaedam*, *quoddam* and
quiddam, *pron. indef.* a certain, a
certain one, 4.

accurrit quidam nōtūs mihi
nōmine tantum (*merely*).

quidem, *adv.* indeed, 49; also, 51.

nē ... **quidem**, not even, 19, 51.

quiētus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* quiet, peaceful,
27.

animō ne quiēto es?

quiētū, *conj.* who not, but, that, etc.
v. Less. 39.

nōn recūsō quīn tibi succurrām.

quindecim, *num.* *adj.* fifteen, 25.
Fr. *quinze*.

quingentī, ae, a. *adj.* five hundred, 12.

Rōmāni ex barbarīs quingentōs interfecērē.

quinque, num. adj. five, 8. Fr. *cinq.*

quintus, a, um. *adj.* fifth, 12. Fr. *quint.*
quintā diēi hōrā.

quis, quid, pron. interrog. who? which? what? 1; **qui, quae, quod** is used adjectivally, 11. Fr. *qui?*
ā quibus défenditūr urbs?

pron. indef. any one, any, 15; after *quæ*, 32.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or **quidquam, pron. indef.** any one, anything, any, 15.

neque ex ordinibus dēcessit quisquam.

quisque, quaeque, quodque and **quicque, pron. indef.** each, everybody, everything, 16; with *superl.* 16, 20; as *adj.* 49.
suam quisque patriam maximē amant.

quō, adv. whither? 6; *rel.* 12.
quō fugiunt hostēs?

used instead of *ut* in final clauses containing a comparative 42, *q.v.*

quoad, adv. as long as, 11; until, 48.
quoad potestis, sustinēte!

quod, conj. because, 7; namely that, 28.

nāvēs, quod ventō tenēbantur, ad portum sérō (*late*) veniunt.

quōminus, conj. that not, from (after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc.), 39 *q.v.*

num tē prohibui quōminus id facerēs?

quōmodo, adv. how? (*lit.* in what way!), 1.

quōmodo militū animī confirmantur?

quoniam, conj. seeing that, because, 4.

quoniam nulla spēs salūtis erat, incolae sē dēdiderunt.

quoque, conj. also, too, 3.

nōn sōlum peditēs, sed equitēs quoque.

quot, adj. pl. indecl. how many? 14.
quot diēs annō sunt?

quoties, adv. as often as, 49.
quotiens nostri irrūpērunt, ex hostibus multi cadunt.

quotus, a, um, adj. which, what (in number, order, etc.), 16.
quota pars militū incolumis redit?

R

rapiditās, ātis, f. swiftness, 19. Fr. *rapidité.*

barbari flūminis rapiditāte op- pressi sunt.

rapiō. 3. rapui, raptum, v.a. 1 carry off, plunder, 4.

nostri multa pecora rapūrunt.

ratiō, ōnis, f. theory (as opp. to *flūsus*, practice), 10; plan (pugnac), 41; reason, 51. Fr. *raison.*

ratio equestris proeli haec erat.

recens, ntis, adj. fresh, recent, 45. Fr. *récent.*

equitātus noster recenti proeliō ēlatus erat.

receptus, fls, m. a retreat, retiring; in phrase, **receptū canere.** to give the signal for retreat, 23, 34.

recessus, fls, m. a retreat, 51.

nostri recessum ad auxilia nōn habēbant.

re-cipiō. 3. -cēpī, -ceptum, v.a. with reflexive *pron.* I retreat, 15. Fr. *recesser.*

Britanni sē in silvā ad suōs recēpēre.

re-cit-ō. 1. -āvī, ātum, v.a. I read out (in public), 4. Fr. *réciter.*

quid Cicerō recitat?

rectē, adv. right, 57.
qui rectē faciunt, laudantor!

rectus, a, um, adj. (opp. to *obliquus*) direct, 36.

hanc ḥratiōnem rectam in obliquam vertite!

re-cūsō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. I refuse, 19. Fr. *récuser*.
nōlētē populi Rōmānī amīctiam
recusāre!

red-dō. 3. -didi, -ditum, v.g. I give
up, surrender, 32; transl., 1. Fr.
rendre.
dux captivōs reddere recūsāvit.

red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, v.n. I return,
17.
unde redis?

red-igō. 3. -ēgi, -actum, v.a. I reduce,
bring, 36.
Caesar Aeduōs in servitūtem
redigīt.

re-dūcō. 3. -duxī, -ductum, v.a. I
lead back, 41. Fr. *réduire*.
dux snōs intrā mūnitionēs re-
duxit.

re-ferō. -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v.a. I
carry back, 33.
frūmentum om̄ne ad sē referri
iubet.

re-ficiō. 3. -fēci, -fectum, v.a. I re-
pair (nāvem), 26; with *reflexīcē*
pron. I refresh, restore myself, 11.
Fr. *refaire*.
exercitus sē ex pugnā reficit.

refractus, a, um, 15. perf. part.
pass. of *re-fringō*. 3. -frēgi, -frac-
tum, broken up, burst.
nostri oppidi portas refringunt.

regiō, ōnis. f. a district, 4. Fr.
région.
multae regiōnēs a Rōmānīs
vastantur.

regnum, ī, n. crown, kingdom, 1. 36.
Fr. *règne*.
is homō regnum occupāverat.

re-iiciō. 3. -iēci, -iectum, v.a. I throw
back, 41. Fr. *rejeter*.
telis in hostēs rēiectis.

re-languescō. 3. -langūi, no supine
v. incep. n. I grow languid, become
enfeebled, 12.
quibus rēbus relanguescunt
animi?

relictus, a, um, 12. perf. part. pass.
of *relinquō*, q.v.

re-linquo. 3. -liquī, -lictum, v.a. I
leave, 3; abandon, raise (obsidi-
ōnem), 56.
quot cohōrtēs in castris re-
linquuntur?

reliquus, a, um, adj. remaining;
other, 16; *pl.* *reliqui*, the remain-
der, rest, 8.
oppida, vicōs, reliqua privāta
aedificia incendunt.

re-maneō. 2. -mansī, no supine, v.n.
I stay behind, remain, 9.
domī propter morbum re-
mansit.

re-miniscor. 3. no perf. part., v. dep.
I remember (*gen.*), 32.
quārum rērum Hélvētiī Caesarem
monent reminiscātur?

re-mittō. 3. -misī, -missum, v.a. I
send back, 32; resign, give up, 51.
Fr. *remettre*.
lēgātū in hīberna cum legiōno
remisit.

re-mollescō. 3. no perf. or supine,
v. incep. n. I become soft, ener-
vated, 12.
sōle remollescit glaciēs (ice).

re-moveō. 2. -mōvī, -mōtum, v.a. I
remove, 13. Fr. *remuer*
castra sex milia ab oppidō re-
mōvit.

ré-mus, ī, m. oar, 26. Fr. *rame*.
nāvis rémis incitātur.

re-novō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. I renew,
restore, 9.
Rōmānī, ducis verbis incitāti,
proclūm renovābunt.

re-nuntiō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, v.a. I
bring back word, report, 22.
explorātor sē hostium cōpiās con-
spexisse renuntiat.

re-pellō. 3. -ppuli, -pulsum, v.a. I
drive back, *repulst*, 14. Fr. *re-
pousser*.
nostri, aēriter in cōs impetū
factō, hostēs reppulērunt.

repentinus, a, um, adj. sudden,
unexpected, 34.
repentina Gallōrum coniūratiō
orta est.

re-periō. 4. <i>pperi</i> , <i>-pertum</i> , <i>v.a.</i> I find oft, discover, 22.	re-vocō. 1. <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātum</i> , <i>v.a.</i> I call off, recall, 18.
Caecas auxilia missa esse reperit.	Caesar legionēs equitātumque revocat.
re-poscō. 3. <i>no perf.</i> or supine, <i>v.a.</i> I ask for, require, 51.	Rhēnus, ī, <i>m.</i> the Rhine, 2. Fr. <i>Rhin</i> , ubi est Rhēnus?
ēius rei quae causa sit reposcō.	Rhodanus, ī, <i>m.</i> the Rhone, 36. Fr. <i>Rhône</i> .
repulsus, a, <i>um</i> , 28. <i>perf. part. pass.</i> of repellō, <i>q.v.</i>	Rhodanus et Rhēnus ex Lēpontis oriuntur,
rēs, rei, <i>f.</i> a thing, matter, business, etc., 1; way, means, 18.	Ripa, ae, <i>f.</i> a bank, 25. Fr. <i>rive</i> , postridiē ad ripas fluminis per ventum est.
his dē rēbus consilium capiam.	rogō. 1. <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātum</i> , <i>v.a.</i> I ask (a question), 31; request, 46.
rēs* publica or rēspūblica, <i>f.</i> the state, civil affairs, 29.	quid hōc mē rogās?
resistō. 3. <i>-stitti</i> , no supine, <i>v.n.</i> I stand my ground, resist (<i>dat.</i>), 3, 19.	Rōmānus, a, <i>um</i> , <i>adj.</i> Roman; <i>pl.</i> Rōmāni, <i>ōrum</i> , <i>m.</i> the Romans, 1. Fr. <i>romain</i> .
legionēs hostibus resistebant.	num scūtum tēlum Romanum erat?
re-spiciō. 3. <i>-spexi</i> , <i>-spectum</i> , <i>v.n.</i> and <i>a.</i> I look behind, about, 51.	rostrum, ī, <i>n.</i> the beak (of a ship), 41, 50.
guānquam rēs in periculō erat, nēmō respiciēbat.	hostēs nāvibus Rōmānis rostris nocēre conantur.
re-spondeō. 2. <i>-spondi</i> , <i>-sponsum</i> , <i>v.a.</i> I answer (<i>dat.</i>), 25. Fr. <i>répondre</i> , cūr mīhi nōn respondes?	rursus, <i>adv.</i> again, 28.
responsum, ī, <i>n.</i> an answer, 19. Fr. <i>réponse</i> .	amicō rursus circumventō subsidium fert.
• nullō ab nostris datō responso.	
re-tineō. 2. <i>-tinui</i> , <i>-tentum</i> , <i>v.a.</i> I keep back, detain, 19; hold fast (memoriam), 45; maintain (virtūtem), 56. Fr. <i>retenir</i> .	S
quattuōr diēs in portū retentī sunt.	saepe, <i>adv.</i> often, 12; <i>compar.</i> <i>-ius</i> ; <i>superl.</i> <i>-issimē</i> , 43.
re-vortor. 3. <i>-versus</i> , <i>v.n.</i> I return, 16. (The perf. forms, with the exception of the part. <i>reversus</i> , are from the <i>Act.</i> <i>vol.</i> e.g. <i>reverti</i> , <i>reverterō</i> , <i>reverteram</i> , etc.)	saepe et multum hoc mēcum cōgitavi.
postero die lēgūf ad eum revertērunt.	sagittārius, āri, <i>m.</i> an archer, 22.
re-vinciō. 4. <i>-vinci</i> , <i>-vinctum</i> , I bind, fasten, 44.	Caesar sagittārios prōgredi iussit.
ancora firmiter revincit.	sagulum, ī, <i>n.</i> a small military cloak, 49.
re-vinctus, a, <i>um</i> , 44. <i>perf. part. pass.</i> of re-vinciō, <i>q.v.</i>	imperator sagulum purpureum (<i>purple</i>) portat.
	salūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i> safety, 3. Fr. <i>salut</i> .
	barbari salutem fūgā pariunt.
	sanctus, a, <i>um</i> , <i>adj.</i> sacred, inviolable, 36. Fr. <i>saint</i> .
	Germāni hospites sanctōs habēbant.

sapiens, ntis, adj. wise, 45.
sapientium verba magnō ūsui sunt.

sarmentum, ī, n. brushwood, fascine, 1, (usually in *pl.*). Fr. *sarment*.
Rōmānī sarmentōrum cōpiam comparant.

satis, adv. sufficient, enough, 28; qualifying an *adj.* 34: foll. by *gen.* of noun, 42. Fr. *assez* (ad *satis*).
Caesar id praesidium satis esse arbitratus est.
with *faciō*, I give satisfaction (*dat.*) 42. Fr. *satisfaire*.

saxum, ī, n. a stone, 4; rock, 41.
saxa dē mūris ab incolis cō-
cīuntur.

scālae, ārum, f. pl. a scaling ladder, 51. Fr. *échelle*.
Caesar scalas ad oppugnatiōnem fieri iussit,

scapha, ae, f. a light boat, skiff, 7.
scapha militibus complētur.

sciō, 4. sciī, scitum, v.a. I know, 36.
dux hostēs adesse sciebat.

scribō, 3. scripsi, scriptum, v.a. I write, 4. Fr. *écrire*.
quālibus litteris epistulam scrip-
si t̄

scūlum, ī, n. an oblong shield (made of wood and leather), 4. Fr. *cu.*
miles scūlum sinistrā tenet.

sē (sē), pron. reflectiv. himself, herself, itself, themselves. 1. Fr. *se*.
barbarus sē gladiō dēfendit.

sēcum, with himself, etc. 28.

secundum, prep. por. acc. along (of place); next to (in rank, value), 28.
Rōmānī castra secundum mare habuērunt.

secundus, a, um, adj. favourable, propitious, 33; *superl.* 45.
aliquot (*some*) secunda proelia facta sunt.

sēcūrus, a, um, adj. free from care, 46.
noctū puer sēcūrus dormit (*sleeps*).

secūtūrus, a, um, 10. fut. part. of sequor, q.v.

sed, conj. but, 4.
Titus sapiens, sed Lūcius sapien-
tior est.

sēdecim, num. adj. sixteen, 41. Fr. *seize*.

seges, etis, f. a cornfield, 8.
frūmentum in segete iam succi-
dētrur.

semper, adv. always, 6.
castra semper vallō fossāque circumdabāntur.

senātus, ūs, m. the senate (council of elders at Rome), 1. Fr. *sénat*.
senātūs auctōritās maxima erat.

senex, senis, comm. an old person, 15.
senēs bonum consilium saepe dant.

sententia, ae, f. a way of thinking, sentiment, 39. Fr. *sentence*.
variae (*various*) sententiāq; ab utrisque dictae sunt.

sentīō, 4. sensi, sensum, v.a. I perceive, think, 52. Fr. *sentir*.
monet eos ut unum qm̄nes sentiant (i.e. to be unanimous).

septem, num. adj. seven, 36. Fr. *sept.*

septentriōnēs, um, m. pl. the north, (lit. the seven stars near the north pole), 12.
omnis Galliā ad septentriōnēs vergit.

septimus, a, um, adj. seventh, 28. Fr. *septième*.
legiō septima in hibernis relecta est.

septingentī, ae, a, num. adj. Seven hundred, 12.

septuāgintā, num. adj. seventy, 1.

sequor, 3. secūtus, v. dep. I follow, 6. Fr. *suivre*.
Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris sequuntur.

servitū, ūtis, f. slavery, 21. Fr. *servitude*.
nēmō servitutem amat.

serv-ō. I. **-āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I keep, retain, 7.
militēs p̄ter territō ordinēs nōn servant.

servus, i, m. a slave, servant, 52.
dives illē vir multōs servōs habet.

sescenti, ae, a. num. adj. six hundred, 43.
decem centuriis circiter sescenti militēs erant.

sēsē, v. sē.

sex, num. adj. six, 11. Fr. *six*.

sexāgintā, num. adj. sixty, 43. Fr. *soixante*.

sextus, a, um, adj. sixth, 58.
sexta circiter hora profecti sunt.

sī, conj. if, 4; sī quandō, if at any time, 49. Fr. *si*.
sī incolae resistent, urbs oppugnabitur.

sic, adv. thus, so, 1; as follows, 12.
sic vulneratus ab hostibus circumdatur.

sicuti, adv. as if, 51.
nostrī, sicuti re perfecta, ē proelio excedunt.

signifer, feri, m. a standard-bearer, ensign, 9.
signifer comitēs suos cohortātur.

signific-ō. I. **-āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I show, signify, 8. Fr. *signifier*.
quid militēs significābant?

signum, i, n. stafford (milit.).
signal, 7; signa subsequi, to keep in order of battle. Fr. *signe*.
militēs ab signis discēdere nōn dēbent.
signum tubā datur.

silva, ae, f. a forest, wood, 11.
barbari in silvās perfūgērunt.

silvestris, e, adj. wooded, 43.
nonne in locis silvestribus latent feræ?

similis, e, adj. like; (foll. usually by *gen.*, sometimes *dat.*), 6; superl. *-illimus*. Fr. *semblable*.
profectiō fugae simillima erat.

simul, adv. at the same time, also, 6.
simul nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dimittit.

simulācrum, i, n. effigy, statue, 24.
cūis apud Gallōs plūrima simulacra erant?

sīn, conj. but if, 37.
sīn autem resistere vellent, virtutē locus non relinquēbatur.

sine, prep. gov. abl. without, 15.
nostrī nōn sine magnā victoriāe spē instant.

singulāris, e, adj. one by one, alone, unparalleled, remarkable, 16. Fr. *singulier*.
aliquem singulārem conspexi.

singuli, ae, a, distrib. num. adj. one to each, 27.
singulhs centuriis singuli centuriōnēs grant.

sinister, tra, trum, adj. left, 6;
sinistra, ae, f. the left hand, 13. Fr. *sinistre*.
ūna legio in sinistrā parte aciei constituerū.

situs, ūs, m. situation, 43. Fr. *sitc.*
misit qui castrōrum situm cognoscerent.

sive . . . sive, conj. whether . . . or 41.
res facilis est, sive manemus, sive proficisciāmūr.

socius, ci, m. an ally, 22.
Nervii sociōs ad sé arcessunt.

sōl, sōlis, m. the sun, 12. Fr. *soleil*.
sōl ex oriente oritur.

soleō. 2. **solitus sum, v.n.** I am accustomed, 12.
quomodo castra mūniri solebant?

sollertia, ae, f. ingenuity, 16.
Gallōrum gens summae sollertiae est.

sollicit-ō. I. **-āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I incite (to revolt), try to win over, 36.
lēgāti ad sollicitandam civitātem missi sunt.

sōlum, adv. only 11. Fr. *seulement*.
nōn sōlum interdiū (by day) sed etiam noctū labōrabant.

solvō. 3. **solvi, solūtum, v.a.** I set free, loose; **nāvem (ēs) solvō.** I set sail, 17; without **nāvem (ēs)**, 9.
Caesar primā lūce solvet.

sonus, ī, m. a sound, noise, 1. Fr. *son.*
armōrum sonus auditur.

spatiū, tī, n. space, distance, 2; interval, period (of time), 14. Fr. *espace.*
nostrī magnum spatiū pauci diēbus conficiunt.

speciēs, ēi, f. appearance, form, 45. Fr. *espèce.*
barbari, nāvium nostrārum speciē perterriti, fugiunt.

spect-ō. 1. **āvī, -ātum, v. freq. a.** (of localities) to look, face, be situated, 12.
Aquitania inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs spectat.

speculātor, ūris, m. a scout, spy, 22. speculatōres ducem dē hostiū adventū certiōrem faciunt.

speculor. 1. **ātus, v. dep.** I spy out, explore, 17.
nonnulli militū speculatū missi erant.

spēr-ō. 1. **āvī, -ātum, v.a.** I hope, expect, 22. Fr. *espérez.*
Caesar se vīctōriā potiū posse spērāvit.

spēs, spei, f. hope, 3; promise, 45.
hōc proelium nostris militib⁹ spēm auxit.

spoli-ō, -āvī, -ātum, v.a. I rob, despoil, 43.
Helvētiī prōvinciam nostrām spoliāverant.

statim, adv. at once, immediately 36.
quō factō lēgāti statim dē pace mittuntur.

statiō, ūnis, f. a post (*milit.*); in statiōne, on guard. Fr. *station.*
trés cohortēs in statiōne erant.

statuō. 3. **statuī, statūtum, v.a.** I determine, 16; with gerund, 25; with gerundive, 28.
dē tertīa vigilia proficisci statuit.

statūra, ae, f. statuīs, 27. Fr. *stature.*
Galli hominēs magnacē statūrae erant.

stipendium, dī, n. tribute, 12.
Caesar Ambiofigērī stipendiō liberāverat.

strāmentū, i, n. straw, (hatch, 51, quae strāmentis tecta erant?)

studeō. 2. studiū, no supine, v.a. and n. I apply myself to (*dat.*), 27. Fr. *étudier.*
alii disciplinacē, alii agricultūrae student.

studium, di, n. zeal, eagerness, 17. Fr. *étude.*
nostrī magnum studium praestābant.

sub, prep. gov. acc. towards, about (of time), 28; under, up to (after vb. of motion), 22. Fr. *sous.*
sub sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit.
gov. abl. under, 2: at foot of, 11; sub sinistrā, on the left hand, 26.
Caesar sub monte considit.

sub-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, v.n. and a. I submit to, undergo, 18. Fr. *subir.*
tantam contumēliām nōi subibō.

subitus, a, um, adj. sudden, unexpected, 19. Fr. *subit.*
Gallorūm consilia subita et repentina sunt.

subitō, adv. suddenly, unexpectedly, 6. Fr. *subitement.*

sublātūs, a, um, 9. perf. part. pass. of tollō, q.v., elated.
hāc vīctōriā hostēs sublātī sunt.

sub-mittō. 3. **-misi, -missum, v.a.** I send off, despatch, 7.
Caesar auxiliū labōrāntib⁹ submisit.

sub-sequor. 3. **-secūtus, v. dep.** I follow up, 6.
omnibus cōpiis barbarōs subsequēmur.

subsidiū, idī, n. assistance, reserves (*milit.*), 7, 22.
nullum erat subsidium quod dux submittere poterat.

suc-cendō. 3. *-cendi, -censum, v.a.* I set on fire, 16.
hostēs p̄ntem succenderant.

suc-cidō. 3. *-cidī, cīsum, r.a.* I cut down, 4.
frūmentum in agris iam succidetur.

suc-currō. 3. *-currī, -cursum, v.n.* I run to assist, (*dat.*), 1.
• comitī vulnerātō succurrit.

sudis, is, f. a stake, 47.
Nervii multas sudēs comparant.

sum, esse, fui, no_o supine, v.n. irreg.
I am, 3.
Rhodanus Galliae flūmen est.

summus, a, um, adj. (*superl.* of suprā) very great, exceeding, chief, 8, 11, 16.
nostri summō timōre occupābantur.

sūmō. 3. *sumpsī, sumptum, v.a.* I inflict (supplicium), 39; take, 43.
• dē quibus supplicium sumptum est?

sumptus, a, um, 43. *perf. part. pass.* of sūmō, q.v.

superic̄. us, adj. (*compar.* of supra) higher (loens), 11; victorious, 14; former, previous, 26, 31. Fr. supérieur.
hostēs omnia loca superiōra occupāverant.

super-ō. 1. *-āvi, -atum, r.a.* and *n.*
I overcome, vanquish, 8.
Caesar maximās natiōnēs superāvit.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, v.n. I am left, remain, 15.
ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum cxxx superfuērunt.

supplicite_r, ade_r, humbly, 9.
lēgāti suppliciter pācem petunt.

supplicium, ici, n. punishment (usually of the death penalty), 3. Fr. supplice.

captivī ad supplicium dēduntur.

sup-port-ō. 1. *-āvi, -atum, v.a.* I convey, carry, 54. Fr. supporter.
comētū ex agris supportātō.

suprā, adr. before, previously, 43.
ut suprā dēmonstrātū est.

sus-cipiō. 3. *-cēpī, -ceptum, v.a.* I undertake, 25.
id bellum sibi suscipiendum esse putāvit.

suspīcīō, ūnis, f. mistrust, suspicion, 31 (*pl.*); 39 (*sing.*). Fr. soupçon.
quā rē Gallis augēbatur suspicīō.

suspīc-or. 1. *-ātus, r. dep.* I conjecture, suspect, 54.
hostes prius instābant quā quisquam cōs adesse suspicārētur.

sustent-ō. 1. *-āvī, -ātum, v. freq. a. 1* hold out, endure, 46.
nullā frūmentī cōpīa dū sustenātārī nō potuit.

sus-tineō. 2. *-tinui, -tentū, v.a.*
I withstand, 22. Fr. soutenir.
incolae oppugnātōnēm diūtius sustinērē non poterant.

suus, a, um, adj. his, her, its, their, 13. Pisō frātrem suum dēfendit.

sui, ūrum, m.pl. his, their men, 5; **sua, n.pl.** their belongings, 45.

T

tabernāculum, ī, n. a tent, 8.
militēs noctū in tabernaculis erunt.

talentum, ī, n. a talent (sum of money equivalent to about £210), 55. Fr. talent.

tālis, e, adj. such, such like, 38. Fr. tel.
talibus verbis eis persuādet.

tam, adv. as, so, qualifying an *adj.*, 43; an *adv.*, 46; foll. by *ut* (consecutive), 43.
tam subitus cōrūm impetus erat
ut in fugam daremū.

tamen, adv. nevertheless, however, 1. barbari virtūtēm praestant; frus-trā tamen resistunt.

tametsī, conj. although, 54.
quae tametsī intellegēbat, tamen exspectandū statuit.

tandem, *adv.* at length, 16.
 tandem fugientēs défessi in cas-
 tra redeunt.

tantus, *a.* *um*, *adj.* so great, 19;
 tantus . . . quantus, as great . . .
 as, 27. Fr. *tant*.
 tantum labōrem subibāmus.

tantī, *gen.* of price; for so much, 45.

tantulus, *a.* *um*, *adj. dim.* so little,
 so small, 27.
 tantulīs rebus studēre nōn oportē-
 tet.

tard-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I hinder,
 impede, 16. Fr. *tarder*.
 palūs nostrōs tardābat.

tectus, *a.* *um*, 51. *pcrf. part. pass.* of
 tegō, *q.v.*

tegō. 3. *texī*, *tectum*, *v.a.* I cover, 51.
 Fr. *toit* (*tectum*).
 militis caput galea tegitur.

tēlum, *i.* *n.* a weapon (offensive),
 missile, 1.
 pilum telum Romanum erat.

temerē, *adv.* (preceded by *nōn*)
 easily (*lit.* without design), 15;
 rashly, 19.
 nōn temerē Britanniā adēunt.

temeritās, *ātis*, *f.* rashness, 57. Fr.
témérité.
 dux militū temeritatēm re-
 prehendit (*blames*).

tempestās, *ātis*, *f.* a storm, 2;
 weather, 9. Fr. *tempête*.
 nāvēs propter tempestatēm in-
 portū continentur.

tempus, *oris*, *n.* time, 3; *pl.* 34. Fr.
temp.
 id tempus nōn idōneum erat.

ten-ō. 2. *-ūi*, *-ātum*, *v.n.* and *a.* I de-
 tain, 1; control (lacrīmās), 8; hold,
 occupy (montem), 22; keep (cur-
 sum), 26; hold fast, bind (iūciū-
 randō), 26. Fr. *tenir*.
 Sabinus castris sēsō tenēbat.

tenuis, *e*, *adj.* weak, delicate, 47.
 quis tenuī valētūdine erat?

tergum, *i.* *n.* the back, 49; **terga**
 vertere, to turn the back, *i.e.* flee,
 46.

hostēs post tergum relinquere
 non vult.

terra, *ae*, *f.* land, 12; *soil*, earth, 49.
 Fr. *terre*.
 quae regiō in terris nostri nōn
 plēna labōris?

terr-eō. 2. *-ūi*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I
 frighten, 2.
 omnēs mortis metū terrentur.

terr-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v. freq. a.* I
 terrify, 12.
 dux barbarōs suppliciō territā-
 bat.

terror, *ōris*, *m.* dread, terror, 48. Fr.
terreur.
 equitibus imperat ut quam maxi-
 mum hostibus terrōrem in-
 ferant.

tertius, *a.* *um*, *adj.* third, 4.
 Celtae tertiam Galliae partēm
 incēbant.

testāmentum, *i.* *n.* a will, 8. Fr.
testament.
 cūr militēs testāmenta ūbsigna-
 bant?

testimōnium, *nī*, *n.* evidence, 57.
 Fr. *témoignage*.
 testimōniō virtutis ab Cicerōne
 datō.

testūdō, *inīs*, *f.* a shelter, shed
 (*milit.*) formed of the shields of the
 soldiers held over their heads, 20.
 (*lit.* tortoise).
 nostrī testūdine factā mūris
 appropinquant.

tim-eō. 2. *-ūi*, no supine, *v.a.* and *a.* I
 fear, am afraid, 14; with *ut* and
nē v. Less. 54.
 infants saepe sine causā timent.

timor, *ōris*, *m.* fear, alarm, 8.
 nostrīs timor subitō inicitur.

toler-ō. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *v.a.* I support,
 sustain, 55. Fr. *tolérer*.
 omnium rerum inopia diūtius
 tolerāri nōn poterat.

tollō. 3. **sustuli, sublātum, v.a.** I raise, lift up (in *perf. part. pass.* elated, *v. sublātus*), take away, 13.

tormentum. i, *n.* an instrument of torture, rack, 11; an engine for hurling missiles, 41.

fēmina tormentō excruciat̄ur.

torreō. 2. **torrui, tostum, v.a.** I scorch, burn, 51.

sōl terram aestāte torret.

tot, num, adj. indecl. so many, 9.

tot civitātum coniuratiō.

tōtus, a, um, adj. the whole, all the, entire, 3. Fr. *tout*.

incolae toto mūrō saxa innostrōs cōniciunt.

trabs, trabis, f. a beam, 1.

barbari trabēs mūnitionē com̄parabant.

trād-ō. 3. **-idi, -itum, v.a.** I give up, surrender, 13; propound, teach, 24. Fr. *trahir*.

Aedui obsidēs Caesari trādērunt.

trā-dūcō. 3. **-duxī, -ductum, v.a.** I lead across, over, 11 (often with a *doule* acc.).

Caesār exercitūm flūmen transdūxit.

trāgula, ae, f. a javelin (thrown by means of a strap to which it was attached), 4.

trāgula a Gallō cōnīcitur.

trans, prep. gor, acc. across, 17.

cōpiā trans Rhenūm in Galliām duxerat.

trans-eō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itum, v.n. and a. I cross, go across, 7; *pass.* 36.

Caesar in Britanniā transire cōstituit.

trans-ferō, -ferre, tulī, -lātum, v.a. I translate (*lit.* carry across), 21.

lectiōnē ē lingua Latinā trans-ferēmus.

trans-port-ō. 1. **-āvi, -ātum, v.a.** I carry over, across, 28; with *two* accs. 32. Fr. *transporter*.

nāvēs ad exercitūm trans-portandum parantur.

trepid-ō. 1. **-āvi, -ātum, v.n.** I hurry in alarm, am agitated, 12.

tū cūr trepidās? nullum perīulum est.

trēs, tria, num. adj. three, 6. Fr. *trois*.

trium flūminum nōmina mihi dic

triārī, örūm, m. pl. a class of Roman soldiers who formed the third rank of the 'triplex aciēs', 43, q.v.

tribūnus, i, m. an officer, tribune, 8. There were six to each legion, and they commanded in turn, each two months at a time. Fr. *tribun*.

tribūni suōs cohortantur.

tribūd. 3. **tribūi, tribūtum, v.a. (with magnopere)**, I set store by, make much of, 37.

nōli tuae magnopere virtūti tribueri!

tribus, ii, dat. or abl. pl. of trēs, tria, q.v.

triduum, i, n. (sc. spatium), a three days' space, three days, 26; **tridūd** (sc. spatiō), in three days, 26.

tridūo intermissō.

trinī (ternī), ae, a, distr. num. adj. three each, three, 27.

triplex, icis, adj. threefold, triple, 43.

dux aciem trīplicem instruit.

trīquētrus, a, um, adj. triangular, 12.

insulæ forma (*shape*) triquētra est.

triumphus, i, m. a triumphal procession (in honour of a successful general), 26. Fr. *triomphe*.

triumphus Caesari dēcretus (*decreed*) est.

tū, 2nd pers. pron. thou, you, 2. Fr. *tu*.

tū puer, ille adulescens est.

tuba, ae, f. trumpet, 18.

proclī committendi signum tubā dabitur.

tueor. 2. **tuitus, v. dep. a.** I defend, protect, 36.

dux suōs hortāt̄ur castra diligenter tueantur.

tuli, *perf. indic. act.* of *ferō*, *q.v.*
tum, *adv.* then, 2, 26.
 magnae tum silvae in his locis
 erant.
tumultus, **ūs**, *m.* uproar, commotion,
 34. Fr. *tumulte*.
 magnō cum tumultū castris
 ēgressi sunt.
tumulus, **ī**, *m.* a raised heap, mound,
 24.
 illic tumulus terrēnus (*of earth*)
 satis magnus erat.
tunc, *adv.* then, 48 (- *tum*, and
 demonstr. suffix *-ce*).
turma, **ae**, *f.* a squadron of horse,
 49.
 paucis turmis subsidiō labōranti
 but missis.
turpis, **e**, *adj.* disgraceful, unseemly,
 29.
 quid illō turpius esse potest?
turpitūdō, **inis**, *f.* disgrace, 41.
 quōmodo turpitūdinem fugae
 delēbimus?
turris, **is**, *f.* (*acc. -im* and *-em*), a
 tower, 1 (for defence of a camp or
 city walls). Fr. *tour*.
 hostes turrim cēminus telis
 petunt.
tūtus, **a**, **um**, *adj.* safe, 26.
 id praesidium tutum esse non
 arbitratus est.
tūtō, *adv.* safely; *compar.* *ius*, 41;
super. *issimē*.
tuus, **a**, **um**, *adj.* thy, your, 28.
 quid in dextrā tuā est?

U

ubi, *adv.* where? 2; where (*rel.*), 37;
 when, 25; whenever, 49. Fr. *où*.
 ubi Rōma est?
ubiquē, *adv.* wheresoever, every-
 where, 51.
 nāvium quod ubiqūē erat in īnum
 locum cōgit.
ulciscor. 3. **ultus**, *v. dep.* I take
 vengeance on, 18, 41.
 nōn sōlum publicās sed etiam
 privatās iniūriās ultus est.

ullus, **a**, **um**, *adj.* any (usually in
 negative sent.), 3; after *sing.* 52.
 nostri sine ullō vulnēre in castra
 redeunt.
ultimus, **a**, **um** (*superl.*, of 'ultra'),
adj. last, uttermost. In 51 *ultimi*
 (sc. hominēs), the farthest people.
 ultimās Galliae partēs pro-
 fectus est.
ultrō, *adv.* without provocation, 39;
 against his wish, 47.
 nē aliis iniūriās ultrō inferāmus!
ūnā, *adv.* together, in company, 5.
 peditēs ūnā cū equitibus prae-
 mittuntur.
unde, *adv.* *interrog.* from where?
 from what? 6; *rel.* whence, 14.
 unde oritur Rhēnus?
undecimus, **a**, **um**, *adj.* eleventh, 5.
 Fr. *onzième*.
undique, *adv.* *indeſ.* from, on all
 sides, everywhere, 2.
 hostēs undique circumdantur.
ūnus, **a**, **um**, *num. adj.* one, 2; only,
 alone, 11, 51. Fr. *un*, *une*.
 erat omnīō in Gallia ceteriore
 legio una.

ūrbs, **bis**, *f.* a city, 1.
 à quibus urbs Roma incolitur?

usque, *adv.* all the way to, con-
 tinuously, 25 (with *ad*). Fr. *jusque*.
 usque ad hostium castra accessit.

ūsus, **a**, **um**, 9. *perf. part.* of *ūtor*,
q.v.
 ūsus, **ūs**, *m.* practice, exercise, ex-
 perience, 2, 8, 49; ūsūl (23) or **ex**
 ūsūl (29) *esse*, to be of use, to be
 advantageous, serviceable. Fr.
usage.
 ūsū nauticārum rērū cētēs
 praecēdunt.

utī, *adv.* as, 12.
conj. that, in order that, to; after
 persuādeō, ḥrō, imperō, etc., 38;
 final, 41; consecutive, 43; concessive (=although), 51.

uter, **tra**, **trum**, *pron.* which of two;
 in Indirect Questions, 44, 53.
 itinerum utrum facilius esset
 iūdicāre nōn poterat.

uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que, pron. each of two, both, 16. **vectigális, e, adj.** paying tribute, tributary, 27.

hostés ab utrōque cornū instābant. Rōmāni multās nātiōnēs sibi vectigálēs fēcēre.

utí, 56, v. ut. **vehementer, adv.** very much, exceedingly, 9. Fr. *vehémentement*. hoc à té vehementer petō.

utilis, e, adj. useful, 28. Fr. *utile*. nonne cibis hominibus rēs utilissima est?

utinam, adv. oh that! would that! would to heaven! 31. utinam id fuisse! quod spērābam!

útor, 3. ūsus, v. dep. I use (abl.), 5. magnō studiō útēbāmūr.

útrum, adv. introducing an alternative question (direct or indirect) whether, 6; foll. by an, or, 6. útrum mē an illum magis laudās?

uxor, ūris, f. a wife, 11. qui uxorēs interficiēbant?

V

vadum, i, n. a shallow place, ford, 7. dux cōpiās vadum trādūcit.

vag-or, 1. -ātus, r. dep. I wander, 6. Ge'hāni lātiūs iam vagābantur.

val-eō, 2. -ui, -itum, v.n. I am strong, powerful (with plūrīmūm, etc.), 27; of health, 51. Fr. *raloir*. Caesar equitatū plūrīmūm valēbat.

valētūdō, inis, f. state of health, 47. quālis valētūdo tua est?

vallēs(is), is, f. a valley, 31. Fr. *vallée*. is vicus in valle positus est.

vallum, i, n. a stockade, intrench-ment, 20. barbari sub ipsum vallum succēdunt (approach).

vānus, a, um, adj. fruitless, vain, 54. Fr. *rain*. vānā spē sublātūs es.

vast-ō, 1. -āvi, -ātum, v.a. I lay waste, devastate, 3. Caesar magnam prōvinciae partem vastāvit.

vectigális, e, adj. paying tribute, tributary, 27.

Rōmāni multās nātiōnēs sibi vectigálēs fēcēre.

vehementer, adv. very much, exceedingly, 9. Fr. *vehémentement*. hoc à té vehementer petō.

vel, conj. or, 43. militūm qui equōs habent, equitēs vel equitātūs appellantur.

velle, pres. infin. of volō, q.v.

vēlum, i, n. a sail, 44. Fr. *voile*. vēlīs rēmīsque insulam capere cōnāti sunt.

vēnātiō, ūnis, f. hunting, 10. tū-ne vēnātiōnī studēs?

vend-ō, 3. -idī, -itum, v.a. I sell, 36. Fr. *vendre*. dux ea, quae ex urbe capta sunt, vendidit?

veniō, 4. vēni, ventum, v.n. I come, 8; *impers.*, 25. Fr. *venir*. posterō diē in hostiūm fīnēs vēnimus.

ventit-ō, 1. -āvi, -ātum, v. freq. n. I come often, resort, 12. cō ventitāre consuēvi.

ventus, i, m. wind, 1. Fr. *vent*. Caesar secundūm ventūm exspectābat.

vēr, vēris, n. spring, 40. vēr prima anni pars est.

verbūm, i, n. a word, 1; *hīs verbīs*, as follows, 11; *verbō*, verbally, orally, 21. Fr. *verbe*. cūius verba militēs excitant?

vereor, 2. veritus, v. dep. I fear, 5; with *dat.* nāvibus, for the ships, 28; with *nē, nē nōn (ut)*, 54. nullum periculum verēmur.

verg-ō, 3. no perf. or supine, v.n. (of places) to lie, be situated, 12. collis ad flūmēn Sabim vergēbat.

veritus, a, um, 4. (perf. part. of vereor, with present meaning), fearing, 4.

vérō, *adv.* but, 7, 45 (introducing a sentence strongly opposed to a preceding sentence).

trēs iam cōplārum partēs flūmen
transierant, quarta vérō pars
in castris reducta erat.

vers-or. 1. -ātus, *v. dep.* I take part, busy myself, 6, 30, 41.

nonne in vitae (*life*) periculis
laboribusque omnes versamur?

vérō. 3. *verti, versum, v.a. and n.*
I turn; with **terga**, to turn one's back, run away, 46; I translate, 20.

omnēs hostēs celerrimē terga
vertunt.

vesper, eris and erī, *m.* evening, 33.
Fr. *vépre*.

sub vespere urbē appropin-
quātum est.

vester, tra, trum, adj. your (*pl.*), 21.
Fr. *votre*.

hostium bona vestrum, militēs,
praemium erunt!

vestis, is, f. clothing, clothes, 31.
Fr. *vêtement*.

Suēvi minimam vestem habē-
bant.

vestitus, is, m. clothing, 20.

~ Indi (*the Indians*) vix ullō vestitū
ütuntur.

vet-ō. 1. -ūi, -itum, *v.a.* I forbid, 28.
dux militēs ab opere discēdere
vetuit

vetus, eris, adj. old, former, 32. Fr.
vieux.

nostri vetere victoriā clāti sunt.

vex-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v. freq. a.* I in-
jure, molest, 19.

militum pars hostium agrōs
vexandī causā missi sunt.

via, ae, f. a road, journey, 1. Fr.
voie.

ea viā ire nōn poterāmus.

vicēni, ae, a. *distrib.* num. *adj.*
twenty each, 27.

viciēs, num. adv. twenty times, 12.
viciēs centum.

victor, ōris, m. a conqueror, 3.

victōrum praeda (*booty*) maxima
est.

victōria, ae, f. victory, 3. Fr.
victoire.

dux militēs ob victoriā laudat.

victus, a, um, 12. *perf.* *part. pass.*
of **vincō**, *q.v.*

vicus, ī, m. a village, 2.
barbarōrum vici vastantur.

videō. 2. *vidi, visum, v.a. and n.*
I see, 7; *pass.* I am seen, or in a
deponent sense, I seem, 6; **vidētur**,
it seems good, 24. Fr. *voir*.

id turpissimum esse vidētur.

vigilia, ae, f. a watch (period of
time), 6. Fr. *veille*.

nox in quattuor vigiliās divisa.
(*divided*) est.

vincō. 3. **vici, victum, v.a. and n.** I
conquer. Fr. *raincre*,

Gallia bellō à Caesare victa est.

vīnea, ae, f. amantlet (kind of shed
for sheltering besiegers), 20.

vineis ad mūrum actis.

vinum, ī, n. wine, 12. Fr. *vin*.
Bacchus vīni deus erat.

vir, virī, m. a man (of coura-
'e), 1, 19.
hostēs l'isōnēm, virum fortissi-
mum, circumdant.

virēs, pl. of vis, q.v.

virtūs, ūtis, f. courage, valour, 5.
Fr. *vertu*.

barbari magnam virtūtem prac-
stabant.

vis, f. force, strength, violence, 19,
31, 44; (*acc. vim, gen. wānting, abl.*
vi), *pl. virēs. ium*, strength.
nonne elephātōrum vis magna
est?

visū, 8. *supine in -ū of videō, q.v.*

vīt-ō. 1. -āvī, -ātum, *v.a. and n.* I
avoid, seek to escape, 31.
Britannī mortem fugā vītabant.

vīvō. 3. **vixi, victum, v.n.** I live,
support myself (foll. by *abl.*) 2. Fr.
vivre.

Suēvi lacte (*on milk*) atque pecore
vīvunt.

vīvus, a[•]um, adj. alive; in phrase vīvā vōcē , orally, 1.	vox, vōcis, f. a voice, 1; word, saying. 8. Fr. <i>voix</i> .
vix, a[•]rv. scarcely, with difficulty, 27, 46. •	tribūnī magnis vōcibus suōs in- citant.
hostium vix quarta pars ad castra redit.	vulgō, a[•]dr. everywhere, 8. mītēs vulgō ab signis discēdē- bant.
vocō , 1. āvī, ātum, r.a. and n. 1 call (by name), denominate, 43; summon, 48. Caesar hostium ducem ad sē • vocat.	vulgus, ī, n. the populace, common people, 15. quos vulgus circumsistit?
volō, velle, volui, v. irreg. a. I wish, 4; (with <i>two</i> accs.) I want some- thing of somebody, 51. Fr. <i>vouloir</i> . • eās quoque régionēs cognoscere volēbat.	vulnerō , 1. āvī, ātum, r.a. I wound, 1. nostrī tēlis undique vulnerantur.
voluntās, ātis, f. good-will, affec- tion, 28. Fr. <i>volonté</i> . Caesar Dūminorigis summam in sē voluntātem cognōverat.	vulnus, eris, n. a wound, 1. multa et gravia vulnera à Pisōne accipiuntur.
vōs, 2nd pers. pron. you, 2; (<i>pl.</i> of tū, q.v.). Fr. <i>vous</i> .	vult , 4. <i>3rd pers. sing. pres. indic.</i> , <i>volō, q.v.</i> v -- x. 4. as a numerical sign = 10.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

- The numbers after Verbs refer to their Conjugation.
- The Perfect Tenses and Supines of Verbs are given after the numbers.
- Where part of a word is bracketed, *e.g.* anything, (ali)quid, either the whole word or the part outside the brackets may be used.

A

able, I am, <i>v. can.</i>	advance, I, <i>prō-gredior.</i> 3. <i>-gressus</i> ; <i>prō-cēdō.</i> 3. <i>-cessi,</i> <i>-cessum.</i>
about, prep. <i>dē</i> (abl.).	advice, <i>consilium, ilī,</i> n.
— adv. <i>circiter, ferē.</i>	after, prep. <i>post</i> (acc.).
about-to, sign of <i>fut. part.</i>	— conj. <i>postquam.</i> 2.
absent, <i>absens, nūis.</i>	afterwards, <i>postea.</i>
accomplish, I, <i>con-ficiō.</i> 3. <i>-fici,</i> <i>-fectum.</i>	afraid, I am, <i>v. fear.</i>
according-to, <i>e(r)</i> (abl.).	again, <i>rursus</i> ; <i>iterum</i> (a second time).
accordingly, <i>itaque, igitur</i> (after first word of a clause).	against, <i>contrā, in</i> (acc.).
accustomed, I am, <i>sol-eō.</i> 2. <i>-itus sum, v. p.</i> 282 ; <i>con-</i> <i>suescō.</i> 3. <i>-suēvi, -suētum, v.</i> <i>p.</i> 48.	age, <i>actās, nūis,</i> f.
across, <i>trans</i> (act.).	aged, <i>nālus, a, um.</i>
added, there is, <i>v. impers.</i> <i>accēdit</i> ; perf. <i>accessit.</i>	agreed, it is, <i>constat</i> ; <i>per-</i> <i>constitit.</i>
	agriculture, <i>agricultūra, ae,</i> f.
	aid, <i>auxilium, ilī,</i> n. ; <i>sub-</i> <i>sidium, idī,</i> n.

all, <i>omnis</i> , <i>a</i> ; <i>totus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ,	appearance, <i>speciēs</i> , <i>ēt</i> , f. ; (=the whole of).
allow, <i>I</i> , <i>patior</i> . 3., <i>passus</i> (infin.).	appoint, <i>I</i> , <i>con-stituō</i> . 3. <i>-stituō</i> , <i>-stitutum</i> .
ally, <i>socius</i> , <i>ci</i> , m.	approach, <i>I</i> , <i>appropinquō</i> . 1.
almost, <i>ferē</i> : <i>paene</i> .	<i>ārī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> (dat.) ; <i>ac-cēdō</i> . 3.
alone, adj. <i>solus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . . adv. <i>sōlum</i> .	<i>-cessī</i> , <i>-cessum</i> (ad).
along, <i>ānā</i> .	archer, <i>sagittarius</i> , <i>ārī</i> , m.
already, <i>iam</i> .	arise, <i>I</i> , <i>orior</i> . 4. <i>ortus</i> (of a shout) ; <i>co-orior</i> . 4. <i>ortus</i> (of a storm).
also, <i>autem</i> (after first word of a clause), <i>practereā</i> .	armour, arms, <i>arma</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , n. pl.
although, <i>quamquam</i> , <i>quamvis</i> , etc., v. p. 228.	army, <i>exercitus</i> , <i>ās</i> , m. ; <i>agmen</i> ,
am, <i>I</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>fūl</i> .	<i>inīs</i> , n. (on the march); <i>aciēs</i> ,
ambassador, <i>lēgātus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	<i>ēt</i> , f. (in battle array).
ambush, <i>insidiae</i> , <i>ārum</i> , f. pl.	arrival, <i>adventus</i> , <i>ās</i> , m.
among, amongst, <i>inter</i> , <i>apud</i> (acc.).	arrive, <i>I</i> , <i>per-veniō</i> . 4. <i>-venī</i> , <i>-ventum</i> (in. acc.).
anchor, <i>ancora</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	arrogance, <i>arrogantia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f. ; <i>contumēcia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
ancient, <i>antiquus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	arrow, <i>sayitta</i> , <i>ar</i> , f.
and, <i>et</i> , <i>atque</i> , <i>āc</i> , <i>-que</i> .	as, <i>ut</i> , <i>cum</i> (=since, v. Less. 46, p. 196).
announce, <i>I</i> , <i>prō</i> or <i>re-nuntiō</i> 1. <i>-ārī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .	— follows, <i>tālia</i> , <i>ium</i> , n. pl. ; <i>sic</i> .
any, <i>illus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (in negative sentences).	— possible, <i>quam</i> with superl. of adj. or adv.
anyone, <i>quis</i> (indefinite), v pp. 58, 272.	— soon as, <i>cum prīnum</i> ; <i>simul āc</i> , v. Less. 48.
anything, (<i>ali</i>) <i>quid</i> (indefinite), v. pp. 58, 272.	— soon as possible, <i>quam prīnum</i> .

ascent, <i>ascensus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	B
ask, I (a question) (<i>inter</i>) <i>roy-ō</i> .	baggage, <i>impedimenta</i> , <i>ōrum</i> ,
1. <i>-ivī</i> , <i>-itum</i> .	n. pl.
assemble, I, <i>con-veniō</i> . 1. <i>-vēnī</i> ,	band, <i>manus</i> , <i>ī</i> , f.
<i>-ventum</i> .	battle, <i>pugna</i> , <i>ae</i> , f. ; <i>proelium</i> ,
assistance, <i>v. aid</i> .	<i>lī</i> , n.
assizes, <i>conventūs</i> , <i>uum</i> , m. pl.	bear, I, <i>ferō</i> , <i>ferre</i> , <i>tulī</i> , <i>lātum</i> .
at, <i>in</i> , <i>ad</i> (acc.) ; (of time)	beast-of-burden, <i>iūmentum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
simple abl.	because, <i>quod</i> , <i>proptereā quod</i> ,
— home, <i>domī</i> .	<i>quia</i> , <i>cum</i> (subj.).
— night, <i>noctū</i> .	become, I, <i>fiō</i> , <i>fieri</i> , <i>factus</i> <i>su:n</i> .
— the same time, <i>simul</i>	beech, <i>fāgus</i> , <i>ī</i> , f.
(adv.) ; <i>cōdēm tempore</i> .	before, adv. <i>ante</i> ; <i>anteī</i> .
Athens, <i>Athēnae</i> , <i>ārum</i> , f. pl.	— prep. <i>ante</i> (acc.).
attack, I, <i>op-pugn-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	— conj. <i>antequam</i> ; <i>p̄iūs-</i>
<i>-ātum</i> ; <i>pet-ō</i> . 3. <i>-īrī</i> (<i>ii</i>), <i>-itum</i> ;	<i>quam</i> .
<i>ag-gredīor</i> . 3. <i>-gressus</i> (open-	beg, <i>ōr-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> ; <i>pet-ō</i> .
ly) ; <i>ad-ōrīor</i> . 4. <i>-ortus</i>	3. <i>-īrī</i> (<i>ii</i>), <i>-itum</i> (<i>ā</i> . abl.).
(secretly) ; <i>lācess-ō</i> . 3. <i>-īvī</i> ,	began, I, <i>cōcipī</i> . 3.
<i>-itum</i> ; <i>impētum faciō</i> . 3.	begin, I, <i>in-cipiō</i> . 3. <i>-cēpī</i> , <i>-ceptū</i> .
<i>fēcī</i> , <i>factum</i> (in. acc.).	beginning, <i>initium</i> , <i>ītī</i> , n.
attack, noun, <i>impētus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	beginning of summer, <i>inita</i>
attend-to, I, use dat. sing. of	<i>aestūs</i> , <i>ātīs</i> , f.
<i>cūra</i> , <i>ae</i> , f., v. p. 96.	— of, <i>prīmus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (ob-
auxiliaries, the, <i>auxilia</i> , <i>ōrum</i> ,	<i>sidiō</i>).
n. pl.	believe, I, <i>crēd-ō</i> . 3. <i>-īlī</i> , <i>-itum</i> .
avert, I, <i>pro-hib-ēō</i> . 2. <i>-ūvī</i> ,	beseach, I, v. beg.
<i>-itum</i> .	besiege, I, <i>ob-sideō</i> . 2. <i>-sēdī</i> , <i>-ses-</i>
await, I, <i>ex-spect-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	<i>sum</i> .
<i>-ātum</i> .	betake myself, I, <i>mē re-cipiō</i> .
	3. <i>-cēpī</i> , <i>-ceptū</i> .

betray, <i>prō-dō.</i> 3. <i>-diūt̄,</i>	broad, <i>lāt̄us, a, um.</i>
<i>-dit̄um.</i>	bronze, <i>aes, aeris, n.</i>
better, it is, <i>praestat;</i> perf.	burden, <i>onus, eris, n.</i>
<i>praestit̄.</i>	burst, I, <i>ir-rumpō.</i> 3. <i>-rūp̄i,</i>
bind, I, <i>ob-stringō.</i> 3. <i>-strinxi,</i>	<i>-ruplum</i> (in. acc.).
<i>-strictum.</i>	business, (=thing), <i>r̄is, rei, f.</i>
birth, of high, say 'born in a	but, <i>sed, at, autem</i> (after first
high place.'	word of a clause).
blame, I, <i>culp-ō.</i> 1. <i>-av̄i, -āt̄um;</i>	— that, <i>quīn</i> (sub.j.)
<i>reprehend-ō.</i> 3. <i>-i, -nsum.</i>	by, <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> (abl.) or simple
block, I, <i>ob-struō.</i> 3. <i>-struxi,</i>	abl. of Instrument.
<i>-structum.</i>	— far, <i>longē.</i>
blockade, I, <i>ob-sideō.</i> 2. <i>-sēdi,</i>	— night, <i>noctū.</i>
<i>-sessum.</i>	
body, <i>corpus, oris, n.</i>	
boldly, <i>audacter.</i>	
born, I, am, <i>nascor.</i> 3. <i>nāt̄us.</i>	C
born, adj. <i>nāt̄us, a, um.</i>	Caesar, <i>Caesar, aris, m.</i>
both, <i>uterque, ultraque, utrumque.</i>	calamity, <i>calamit̄is, āt̄is, f.</i>
both . . . and, <i>et . . . et.</i>	call together, I, <i>con-vocō.</i> 1.
bravely, <i>fortiter.</i>	<i>-av̄i, -āt̄um.</i>
bridge, <i>pons, nt̄is, m.</i>	calm, noun, <i>tranquillit̄is, āt̄is, f.</i>
brigadier, <i>Jēgāt̄us, ī, m.</i>	camp, <i>castra, ōrum, n. pl.</i>
bring, I, <i>(ad)ferō, ferr̄, tuli,</i>	camp-follower, <i>cālō, ōnis, m.</i>
<i>lāt̄um;</i> <i>(ad)port-ō.</i> 1. <i>-av̄i,</i>	can, I, <i>possum, posse, potuī.</i>
<i>-āt̄um.</i>	canton, <i>pāgus, ī, m.</i>
bring-about, I, <i>efficiō.</i> 3. <i>-fecī,</i>	capture, I, <i>capiō.</i> 3. <i>cēp̄i,</i>
<i>-fectum.</i>	<i>captum.</i>
Britain, <i>Britannia, āē, f.</i>	captured, <i>captus, a, um.</i>
Britons, the, <i>Britanni, ōrum,</i>	care, <i>cūra, ae, f.</i>
m. pl.	carefully, <i>diligenter.</i>
	carry, I, <i>port-ō.</i> 1. <i>-av̄i, -āt̄um;</i>
	<i>com-port-ō.</i> 1. <i>-av̄i, -āt̄um.</i>

carry on, I, <i>gerō</i> . 3. <i>gessī</i> ,	civilisation, <i>cultus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.
<i>gestum</i> .	civilised, <i>hūmānus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
out, I, <i>per-ficiō</i> . 3. <i>-fēcī</i> ,	clemency, <i>mansuētūdō</i> , <i>inis</i> , f. ;
<i>-fectum</i> .	<i>clēmentia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> .
cart, <i>carrus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	climb, I, <i>a-scendō</i> . 3. <i>-scendī</i> ,
Carthage, <i>Carthīgō</i> , <i>inis</i> , f.	<i>-scensum</i> (in. acc. or simple
catch-sight-of, I, <i>con-spiciō</i> . 3.	acc.).
<i>-spēxī</i> , <i>-spectum</i> .	clothing, <i>restitus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.
cattle, <i>pecus</i> , <i>oris</i> , n.	cohort, <i>cohors</i> , <i>rtis</i> , f.
cause, <i>cāusa</i> , <i>aē</i> , f.	coin, <i>nummus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m. ; gen. pl.
cautiously, <i>cautē</i> .	<i>nummum</i> for <i>nummōrum</i> . "
cavalry, noun, <i>equitēs</i> , <i>um</i> ,	cold, adj. <i>frīgilus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
m. pl. ; <i>equitātus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	collect, I, <i>com-parō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,
— adj. <i>equester</i> , <i>tris</i> , <i>tre</i> .	<i>-ātum</i> ; <i>cōqō</i> . 3. <i>coēgī</i> , <i>coac-</i>
cease, I, <i>dē-sistō</i> . 3. <i>-stītī</i> ,	<i>tum</i> (troops, etc.).
<i>-stītum</i> .	come, I, <i>venīō</i> . 4. <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventum</i> .
centurion, <i>centuriō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , m.	come frequently, I, <i>vefētīō</i> . 1.
certain, a, <i>quīdam</i> , <i>quædam</i> ,	<i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .
<i>quiddam</i> or <i>quoddam</i> .	command, I, <i>iubeō</i> . 2. <i>iussī</i> ,
chance, <i>facultās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.	<i>iussum</i> ; <i>imperō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,
chariot, <i>essēdum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	<i>-ātum</i> (dat.) ; <i>mandō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,
charioteer, <i>essēdārius</i> , <i>ārī</i> , m.	<i>-ātum</i> (dat.).
chief, adj. and comm. noun,	commander-in-chief, <i>imperātor</i> ,
<i>princeps</i> , <i>cipis</i> .	<i>ōris</i> , m.
chiefly, <i>maximē</i> .	common, <i>commūnis</i> , <i>e</i> .
children, <i>liberī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl. ;	compel, I, <i>cōgō</i> . 3. <i>coēgī</i> , <i>coactūm</i>
<i>puerī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.	(infin.).
choose, I, <i>dē-ligō</i> . 3. <i>-lēgī</i> ,	complain of, I, <i>queror</i> . 3.
<i>-lectum</i> .	<i>questus</i> (acc.).
Cicero, <i>Cicerō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , m.	complete, I, <i>con-</i> or <i>per-ficiō</i> . 3.
city, <i>urbs</i> , <i>bīs</i> , f.	<i>fēcī</i> , <i>-fectum</i> .

comrade, <i>socius</i> , <i>cī</i> , m. ; <i>comes</i> ,	cover, I, <i>in-tegō</i> . 3. <i>-texī</i> ,
<i>itīs</i> , comm.	<i>-tectum</i> .
conference, <i>colloquīum</i> , <i>qui</i> , n.	crisis, <i>summum perīculum</i> , <i>ī</i> ,
conquer, I, <i>vincō</i> . 3. <i>victī</i> ,	n. <i>extremus cāsus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m. ;
<i>victum</i> : <i>super-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	<i>discrīmen</i> , <i>inīs</i> , n.
<i>-ātūm</i> .	cross, I, <i>trans-eō</i> , <i>-ire</i> , <i>-īvī</i> (ii), <i>-itum</i> .
conquered, <i>victus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	custom, <i>consuetūdō</i> , <i>inīs</i> , f. ;
conqueror, <i>victor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.	<i>mōs</i> , <i>mōris</i> , m.
consider, I, <i>existimō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	cut-down, I, <i>cr-cidī</i> . 3. <i>-cidī</i> ,
<i>-ātūm</i> ; <i>arbitr-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātūs</i>	
• (dep.) ; <i>hab-cō</i> . 2. <i>-ūtī</i> , <i>-itum</i> .	
considered, I am, <i>habeo</i> . 2.	
<i>habitus</i> .	• D
conspire, I, <i>con-iūrō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	daily, adj. <i>colūdiānus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>-ātūm</i> ; <i>con-spūrō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,	danger, <i>perīculum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
<i>-ātūm</i> .	dangerous, <i>perīculōsus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
consul, <i>consul</i> , <i>ulīs</i> , m.	dare, I, <i>audeō</i> . 2. <i>ausus sum</i> ,
consulship, in the . . . of, say,	<i>v. p. 282</i> .
. . . being consul (abl.	dawn, <i>prīma lux</i> , <i>lūcis</i> .
absol.).	day, noun, <i>diēs</i> , <i>cī</i> , comm. in
contest, <i>certāmen</i> , <i>inīs</i> , n.	sing., m. in pl.
continent, <i>coextīnens</i> , <i>ntīs</i> , f.	— adj. <i>diurnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
(abl. <i>-ī</i> or <i>-ē</i>).	day-by-day, <i>in diēs</i> (in sen-
contrary, <i>adversus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	tences containing a com-
corn, <i>frūmentum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n. ; <i>rēs</i>	parative).
<i>frūmentāria</i> .	death, <i>mōrī</i> , <i>rīs</i> , f.
council, <i>concilium</i> , <i>ilī</i> , n.	deceit, <i>fraus</i> , <i>dis</i> , f. ; <i>dolus</i> , <i>ī</i> ,
country (=fatherland), <i>patria</i> ,	<i>m.</i>
<i>ae</i> , f.	decide, I, <i>statūō</i> . 3. <i>-ī</i> , <i>-ūtum</i> .
courage, <i>animus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m. ; <i>virtūs</i> ,	defeat, <i>clādes</i> , <i>is</i> , f.
<i>ūtīs</i> , f. ; <i>audācia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	defence, <i>praesidium</i> , <i>idī</i> , n.

defend, I, *dē-fendō*. 3. *fendī*, | discouraged, I am, *inē animō
-fensum*. *dē-mittō*. 3. *-mīstī*, *-missum*.

delay, I, *mor-or*. 1. *-ātus* (*v. n.* and *a.*). discover, I, *reperiō*. 4. *repertī*, *repertum*.

— noun, *mora*, *ae*, f. discuss, I, *agō*. 3. *ēgī*, *actum* (*dē*).

deliberate, I, *dē-liber-ō*. 1. *-ārī*, disease, *morbus*, *i*, m.

— *-ātum*. disgraceful, *turpis*, *e*.

deliver, I, *trā-dō*. 3. *-didī*, dislodge, *sum-moveō*. 2. *-mōvī*, *-ditum* (impart.); *dē-dō*. 3. *-didī*, *-dītum* (give up).

despise, I, *postul-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*. disperse, I, *dis-pergō*. 3. *-persī*, *-persum*.

despise, I, *neg-ō*, 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*. distant, I am, *ab-sum*, *-esse*, *āfūi*.

depart, I, *dis-cēdō*. 3. *-cessī*, *-cessum* (ab or ex. abl.); *proficis* or *proficis* or. 3. *profectus*.

departure, *discessus*, *ūs*, m. disturbed, I am, *animō pr-*
turb-or. 1. *-ātus*.

deserve, I, *mereor*. 2. *meritus*. do, I, *faciō*. 3. *fēcī*, *factum* ;
agō. 3. *ēgī*, *actum* ; pass. *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus*.

designedly, *consultō*. doubt, I, *dubit-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum*.

despair, I, *dē spērō*. 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*. draw-up, I, *in-struō*. 3. *-strūxī*, *-structum*.

destroy, I, *dēl-eō*. 2. *-āvī*, *-ātum*. drive, I, *com-pellō*. 3. *-pulī*, *-pulsum* ; *agō*. 3. *ēgī*, *actum*.

determine, I, *statu-ō*. 3. *-ī*, *-ātum* ; *con-stitū-ō*. 3. *-ī*, *-ātum*. duty, *officium*, *icī*, n.

die, I, *morior*. 3. *mortuus* ; *inter-eō*, *-īre*, *-īlī*, *-ītum*.

difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.

directions, in all, *in omnēs partēs*, *passim*.

disastrously, *incommode*.

E

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* or *quicque*, *v. p. 61*.

early, *mātūrē*, *compar*. *-ius* ; superl. *-urrimē*.

easily, <i>facile</i> .	except, conj. <i>nisi</i> .
eight, <i>octō</i> .	exchange, to, <i>inter se dare</i> .
eighth, <i>octāvus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	exertion, <i>labor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
eighty, <i>octōvintā</i> .	exhort, <i>v</i> . encourage.
either . . . or, <i>aut . . . aut</i> ; <i>vel . . . vel</i> .	expect, I, <i>ex-spect-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> .
enclose, I, <i>con-tineō</i> . 2. <i>-tinūi</i> , <i>-tentum</i> .	expel, I, <i>ex-pellō</i> . 3. <i>-pulū</i> , <i>-pulsum</i> (ex).
encourage, I, <i>(co)hort-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātus</i> .	eye, <i>oculus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
endeavour, I, <i>v</i> . try.	
endure, I, <i>per-ferō</i> , <i>-ferre</i> , <i>-tulī</i> , <i>-lātūm</i> .	
enemy, <i>hostis</i> , <i>is</i> , comm. usually in pl. 'the enemy.'	F
engage battle, I, <i>proelium com- mittō</i> . 3. <i>-mīstī</i> , <i>-missum</i> ; <i>con- fligō</i> . 3. <i>-flīstī</i> , <i>-flictum</i> (<i>cum</i>).	fact, the . . . that, <i>quod</i> .
engaged, <i>occupātus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	faithful, <i>fidēlis</i> , <i>e</i> .
engine, <i>tormentum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.	fall, I, <i>cadō</i> . 3. <i>ecclī</i> , <i>cūsum</i> ; <i>con-cidō</i> , 3. <i>-cidī</i> , no supine ; <i>de-cidō</i> , 3. <i>-cidī</i> , no supine.
enquire, I, <i>quaerō</i> . 3. <i>quesīvī</i> (<i>sū</i>), <i>quaesītūm</i> .	famine, <i>famēs</i> , <i>is</i> , f.
entire, <i>tōtus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	famous, <i>clārus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
entrust, I, <i>com-mittō</i> . 3. <i>-mīstī</i> , <i>-missum</i> .	far off, I am, (<i>longē</i>) <i>ab-sunt</i> , <i>-esse</i> , <i>āfū</i> .
envy, I, <i>in-videō</i> . 2. <i>-vīdī</i> , <i>-vīsum</i> (dat.).	farmer, <i>agricola</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.
every, <i>omnis</i> , <i>e</i> . every tenth man, <i>v</i> . p. 62.	farther, <i>longius</i> (compar. of <i>longē</i>).
every-year, <i>quotannīs</i> .	fate, <i>fātūm</i> , <i>i</i> , n.
except, prep. <i>praeter</i> (acc.).	fear, noun, <i>metus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m. ; <i>timor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
	fear, I, <i>tim-eō</i> . 2. <i>-ūi</i> , no supine ; <i>verc-or</i> . 2. <i>veritus</i> ; <i>metu-ō</i> . 3. <i>-i</i> , <i>-ūtūm</i> .
	feed-on, I, <i>vescor</i> . 3. no perf. part. (abl.).

few, *paucus*, *a*, *um*. fleet, *classis*, *is*, *f*. *f*
 fewness, *paucit s*, *atis*, *f*. flesh, *car *, *carnis*, *f*. *
 field, *ager*, *gr *, *m*. flight, *fuga*, *ae*, *f*.
 fierce, *ferus*, *a*, *um*. fling, *I*, *pr -ici *. 3. *-ic *, *iectum*.
 fiercely, *vehementer*; *ferociter*. foe, *v*. enemy.
 fifteen, *quindecim*. follow, *I*, *sequor*. 3. *sec tus*.
 fight, noun, *v*. battle. follow up, *I*, *in-* or *sub-sequ r*.
 — *I*, *pr gn- *. 1. *-av *, *-atum*; 3. *-sec tus*.
proelium *com-mitt *. 3. *-m s *,
-missum; *pr ucl * *contend- *. foot, noun, *pes*, *pedis*, *m*.
 3. *-i*, *-tum*. adj. *pedester*, *tris*, *tre*.
 fighting, *pr gnandum*, *i*; for, (=instead of, or on behalf
bellandum, *i*. of), *pr * (abl.); after *pro-*
 fill, *I*, *com-pl *. 2. *-pl v *, *f f scor*, *in* (acc.); duration
-pl tum. of time, *e.g.* for forty years,
 find, *I*, *reperio*. 4. *repper *, express by acc. case.
repertum; *quaer *. 3. *quaes r *, — sign of dat. case.
 (*s i*) *quaes tum* (=look for); — conj. *nam*; *en p* (after
inveni . 4. *-v n *, *-v ntum*. first word of a clause).
 find-out, *I*, *co-gnosc *. 3. *-gn r *, — a while, *p ulisper*.
-gn tum. — the most part, *pl r umque*.
 finish, *I*, *confici *. 3. *-f c *, — the sake of, *caus * (gen.).
-f ctum. forbid, *I*, *vet- *. 1. *-u *, *-itum*.
 fir, *ab s*, *et s*, *f*. forces, *c p iae*, * rum*, *f*. pl.
 fire, *ignis*, *is*, *m*; *incendium*, forest, *silva*, *ae*, *f*.
di, *n*. form, *I*, *c pi *. 3. *c p *, *captum*
 first, adv. *pr m *, *pr num*. (consilium).
 fixed, *certus*, *a*, *um*. former, *pr st nus*, *a*, *um*.
 flee, *I*, *f gi *. 3. *f g i*, *f gitum*; fortification, *m n ti *, * nis*, *f*.
f g ae m  mand- . 1. *-av *, *-atum*. fortified, *m n t s*, *a*, *um*.
 fortify, *I*, *m n -i *. 4. *-v * (*i *),
-itum.

forty, <i>quadraginta</i> .	general, <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i> , m.;
four, <i>quattuor</i> .	<i>imperator</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
fourteenth, <i>quartus decimus</i> .	German, <i>Germānicus</i> , a, um.
fourth, <i>quartus</i> , a, um.	Germans, the, <i>Germāni</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.
fray, <i>v.</i> battle.	
free, I, <i>liber-ō</i> . 1. <i>-ārī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .	get-possession-of, I, <i>potior</i> . 4.
frequent, <i>crēber</i> , <i>bra</i> , <i>brum</i> .	<i>potitus</i> (abl. or gen.).
friend, <i>amicus</i> , i, m.	— together, I, <i>com-par-ō</i> .
friendly, <i>amicus</i> , a, um.	1. <i>-ārī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .
friendship, <i>amicitia</i> , ae, f.	give, I, <i>dō</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>dūlī</i> , <i>datum</i> (dat.).
frighten, I, (<i>per</i>) <i>terr-ō</i> , 2. <i>-ūt</i> , <i>-itum</i> .	go, I, <i>eō</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>irī</i> (i), <i>itum</i> .
frightened, I am, use pass. of	— away, I, <i>ab-eō</i> , <i>-ire</i> , <i>-irī</i> (ii), <i>-itum</i> .
above, or of <i>per-turb-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> .	— out, I, <i>ex-eō</i> , <i>-ire</i> , <i>-itum</i> .
from, <i>ā</i> , <i>ab</i> ; <i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> ; <i>dē</i> (=down from), or simple abl.	god, a, <i>deus</i> , i, m.
above, <i>dēsuper</i> .	good, <i>bonus</i> , a, um.
all sides, <i>undique</i> .	goose, <i>anser</i> , <i>eris</i> , m.
fugitive, <i>fugiens</i> , <i>ntis</i> , comm.	gradually, <i>paulatim</i> .
full, <i>plēnus</i> , a, um (abl. or gen.).	great, <i>magnus</i> , a, um; (compar. <i>māior</i> ; superl. <i>maximus</i>); <i>summus</i> , a, um.
funeral, <i>fūnus</i> , <i>eris</i> , n.	greatly, <i>magnopere</i> .
G	
Gallic, <i>Gallicus</i> , a, um.	ground, <i>locus</i> , i, m. nom. and acc. pl. <i>locū</i> , as if neuter.
garrison, <i>prāesidium</i> , <i>idī</i> , n.	guard, I, <i>tuer</i> . 2. <i>tuitus</i> .
gate, <i>porta</i> , ae, f.	— noun, <i>custōs</i> , <i>ōdis</i> , comm.;
Gaul, <i>Gallia</i> , ae, f.	<i>prāesidium</i> , <i>idī</i> , n. (=protection).
Gauls, the, <i>Gallī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.	

	H	hide, <i>corium</i> , <i>rī</i> , n.
hamper, I, <i>v.</i> hinder.		high (of birth), <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> ,
hand, <i>manus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , f.		
happen, (of events), use <i>pass.</i>		higher, <i>superior</i> , <i>iūs</i> (locus).
of <i>gerō</i> . 3. <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestum</i> ; or		hill, <i>collis</i> , <i>is</i> , m. ; <i>iugum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
of <i>agō</i> . 3. <i>ēgī</i> , <i>actum</i> .		him (=himself), <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> .
happened, it, <i>accidit</i> .		himself, <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; in oblique
harass, I, <i>lacess-ō</i> . 3. <i>-īvī</i> (<i>ii</i>),		cases <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> .
- <i>ītum</i>		hinder, I, <i>impedīō</i> . 4. <i>-īvī</i> (<i>ii</i>),
harbour, <i>portus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.		- <i>ītum</i> .
hare, <i>lepus</i> , <i>oris</i> , m.		his-men, <i>sūi</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.
hasten, I, <i>proper-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,		his-own, <i>suus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
- <i>ītum</i> ; <i>con-tendō</i> . 3. <i>-tendī</i> ,		hither, adj. <i>citerior</i> , <i>iūs</i> .
- <i>tentum</i> .		hold, I, <i>ten-eō</i> , 2. <i>-ūi</i> , <i>-tum</i> ;
have, I, <i>habeō</i> . 2. <i>-ūi</i> , <i>-ītum</i> .		<i>hab-eō</i> . 2. <i>-ūi</i> , <i>-ītum</i> (cor-
headlong, <i>praeceps</i> , <i>cipitis</i> .		cilium).
hear, I, <i>aud-īō</i> . 4. <i>-īrī</i> (<i>ii</i>),		hold-out, I, <i>sus-tineō</i> , 2. <i>-tinuī</i> ,
- <i>ītum</i> .		- <i>tentum</i> .
hear-of, I, say 'I am in-		honour, <i>honor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
formed.'		hope, <i>spēs</i> , <i>eī</i> , f.
heavy, <i>gravis</i> , <i>e</i> .		horse, <i>equus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.
help, noun, <i>auxilium</i> , <i>īlī</i> ; sub-		— (=cavalry), <i>v.</i> cavalry.
<i>sidium</i> , <i>īlī</i> , n.		hospitality, <i>hospitium</i> , <i>īlī</i> , n.
— I, <i>suc-currō</i> . 3. <i>-currī</i> ,		hostage, <i>obsēs</i> , <i>īdis</i> , comm.
- <i>cursum</i> (dat.); <i>ad-iuvō</i> . 1.		hour, <i>hōra</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
<i>-īrī</i> , <i>-ūtum</i> ; <i>auxili-or</i> . 1.		how, rel. <i>quemadmodūm</i> .
- <i>ātus</i> (dat.).		— great, rel. <i>quantus</i> , <i>a</i> ,
hen, <i>gallīna</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.		<i>um</i> .
hesitate, I, <i>dubit-ō</i> , 1. <i>-āvī</i> ,		however, <i>tamen</i> ; <i>autem</i> .
- <i>ītum</i> .		— qualifying an adj., <i>quam-</i>
hesitation, <i>cunctatiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.		<i>vīs</i> .

huge, <i>ingens</i> , <i>ntis</i> .	incredible, <i>incrēdibilis</i> , <i>c.</i>
humble, <i>humilis</i> , <i>e</i> ; compar. - <i>ior</i> ; superl. - <i>illimus</i> .	influence, <i>auctōritās</i> , <i>ālis</i> , <i>f.</i>
hundred, <i>centūm</i> .	inform, <i>I</i> , <i>certiōrem(ēs)</i> <i>faciō</i> ,
hunting, <i>rēnatiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>	3. <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factum</i> ; pass. <i>certior</i> ,
hurl, <i>I</i> , <i>iaciō</i> , 3. - <i>ēcī</i> , <i>iactum</i> ;	<i>fīō</i> , <i>fierī</i> , <i>factus</i> (<i>dē</i>).
inhabit, <i>I</i> , <i>in-colō</i> . 3. <i>colū</i> , no	inhabit, <i>I</i> , <i>in-colō</i> . 3. <i>colū</i> , no
- <i>cōn-iciō</i> . 3. - <i>ēcī</i> . - <i>iectum</i> :	supine.
mittō. 3. <i>mīstī</i> , <i>missum</i> .	inhabitant, <i>incola</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>comm.</i>
I	
if, <i>st.</i>	injure, <i>I</i> , <i>nocēō</i> , 2. - <i>uī</i> - <i>itum</i> (dat.).
— not, <i>sī nōn</i> , <i>nisi</i> .	instead-of, <i>prō</i> (abl.).
imitate, <i>I</i> , <i>imit-or</i> . 1. - <i>ātus</i> .	intention, <i>consilium</i> , <i>īlī</i> , <i>n.</i>
immediately, <i>statim</i> .	interrupt, <i>I</i> , <i>inter-mittō</i> . 3. - <i>mīstī</i> , <i>-missum</i> .
in-part, <i>I</i> , <i>commūnic-ō</i> . 1. - <i>ārī</i>	into, <i>in</i> (acc.).
- <i>ātum</i> . (<i>aliquid cum aliquō</i>).	iron, adj. <i>ferreus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
implōne, <i>I</i> , <i>implōr-ō</i> . 1. - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātūm</i> .	— mine, <i>ferrāria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
in, <i>in</i> (abl.), or simple abl.	Italy, <i>Italia</i> , <i>āe</i> , <i>f.</i>
— accordance with, <i>prō</i> (abl.).	javelin, <i>iaculum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> (Gaulish); <i>pilum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> (Roman).
— all directions, <i>undique</i> , <i>passim</i> , <i>in omnēs partēs</i> (with verbs of motion).	journey, noun, <i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , <i>n.</i>
— front of, <i>prō</i> (abl.),	— <i>I</i> , <i>iter faciō</i> . 3. <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factum</i> .
order that, <i>ut</i> or <i>rel.</i> foll. by subj. In final clauses containing a comparative, <i>quō</i> with subj.	joy, <i>gaudium</i> , <i>dī</i> , <i>n.</i> ; <i>laetitia</i> ; <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
— proportion to, <i>prō</i> (abl.).	jump, <i>I</i> , <i>dē-siliō</i> . 4. - <i>siluī</i> , - <i>sultum</i> (<i>dē</i>).
— vain, <i>frustrā</i> , <i>nēquāquam</i> .	Jupiter, <i>Iuppiter</i> , <i>Iovis</i> , <i>m.</i>

K

keenness, *alacritas*, *atīs*, f.keep, I, (=detain) *con-tinēō*. 2.
-*tinuī*, -*tentum*. “kill, I, *inter-ficiō*. 3. -*fēci*, -*fec-tum*; *occidō*. 3. *occūlī*, *occīsum*;
-*nec-ō*. 1. -*ārī*, -*ātum* (cruelly).kind, *genus*, *eris*, n.know, I, *sciō*. 4. *sciūī*, *scītum* :
-*co-gnōo*. 3. -*gnōrī*, -*gnītum*
(*get to know*); *certior fū*,
fieri, *jactus* (dē).knowledge, *scientia*, *ae*, f.known, *nōtus*, *a um*.lacking, I am, *dē-sum*, -*esse*,
-*fū*.land, *ager*, *grī*, m. ; *solum*, *ī*, n.large, *magnus*, *a*, *um* ; compar.
-*māior* ; superl. *maximus*,— number, *multitūdō*, *inis*, f.last, adj. *extrēmus*, *a um*.launch, I, *dē-dūcō*. 3. -*duxī*,
-*ductum*.law, *lex*, *lēgis*, f.lay-waste, I, *vast-ō*. 1. -*ārī*,
-*ātum*.lead, I, *dūcō*. 3. *dūxī*, *ductum* ;
-*dē-dūcō*. 3. -*duxī*, -*ductum*.leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m. ; *prīnceps*,
-*cipis*, m.leap down, I, *v. jump*.learn, I, *v. know*.leave, I, *re-līquō*. 3. -*līquī*,
-*līctum* ; *dis-cēdō*. 3. -*cessī*,
-*cessum* (ab) ; *ex-cēdō* (ex) ;
ex-eō, -*īre*, -*ītī*, -*ītum* (ex).left (hand), adj., *sinister*, *tra*,
-*trum*.legion, *legiō*, *ōnis*, f.less, adj. *minor*, *us*.— adv. *minus*.lest, *nī* (subj.).

let, sign of subj. mood.

letter, *lītterae*, *ārum*, f. pl. ;
epīstula, *ae*, f.liberty, *lībertas*, *atīs*, f.lie, I, *iaceō*. 2. *ui*, -*itum*.life, *vīla*, *ae*, f.like, *similis*, *e*, (gen. or
dat.).limb, *membrum*, *ī*, n. •line-of-battle, *aciēs*, *ātī*, f.little, *a*, *paulum*.live, I, *vīvō*. 3. *vīxī*, *vīctum*.long, adj. *longus*, *a*, *um*.— adv. *diū* (=for a long
time).longer, adv. *diūtius* (=for a
longer time).

look-to, **I**, *cūrō*. 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*.
 lose, **I**, *ā-mīltō*. 3. *-mīstī*, *-mīs-*
 • *-sum*; *per-dō*, 3. *-dūlī*,
 • *-dūtum*.
 loud, *magnus*, *a*, *um* (of noise).

M

made, I am, *fiū*, *fieri*, *factus*.
 magnitude, *magnitūdō*, *inis*, f.
 • snake, I, *jurīō*. 3. *fēcī*, *factum*;
 • *ef-ficiō*. 3. *fēcī*, *-fectum* (=
 render, or of concrete ob-
 jects); pass. *fiō*.
 man, *homō*, *inis*, comm. (=
 human being), *vir*, *ī*, m. (as
 opp. to a woman).
 manifest, I, *praeb-eō*. 2. *-ui*
 • *-tum*.
 • mantlet, *vīnea*, *ae*, f.
 many, *multus*, *a*, *um*; compar.
plūs; superl. *plūrimus*.
 march, **I**, *iter faciō*. 3. *fēcī*,
 • *factum* (in. acc.).
 march, noun, *iter*, *itineris*, n.
 marsh, *palūs*, *ūdis*, f.
 matter, *rēs*, *reī*, f.
 meanwhile, *interim*, *intereū*.
 meet, I, *oc-currō*. 3. *-currī*,
 • *-cūrsum* (dat.).
 melted, *fervefactus*, *a*, *um*.

men, *homīnēs*, *um* (=man,
 kind).
 merchant, *mercātor*, *ōris*, m.
 mere, adj., *ipse*, *a*, *um*.
 messenger, *nuntius*, *ī*, m.
 method, *ratiō*, *ōnis*, f.
 middle-of, *medius*, *a*, *um*.
 midnight, *media nos*, *noctis*.
 mile, *mille passūs*; pl. *mīlia*
 • *passuum*.
 military, adj. *mīlitāris*, *e*.
 milk, *lac*, *lactis*, n.
 mind, *mens*, *ntis*, f.
 mine, *cūniculus*, *ī*, m.
 mining, use pl. of *cūniculus*, *ī*,
 m.
 money, *pecūnia*, *ae*, f.;
 • *argentum*, *ī*, n.
 moon, *lūna*, *ae*, f.
 more, adv. *amplius*, *plūs* (of
 quantity); *magis* (of de-
 gree).
 moreover, *autem*, *præterēā*.
 most, adj. *plūrimus*, *a*, *um*.
 mostly, adv. *maximam partem*.
 mountain, *mons*, *utīs*, m.
 move, I, *moveō*. 2. *mōvī*, *mōlum*
 (v.a.); *moveor*, or *mē moveō*
 (v.n.).
 much, adv. *multum*.
 multitude, *multitūdō*, *inis*, f.

muscle, <i>nervus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	new, <i>novus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
must, I, <i>dēb-eō</i> . 2. <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> (infin.); <i>oportet</i> . 2. <i>-uīt</i> , <i>v</i> .	next (=afterwards), <i>deciude</i> .
Less. 24; or use gerund or gerundive, <i>v</i> . Less. 17-19.	next day, <i>posterō diē</i> , <i>postridiē</i> .
my, <i>meus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	night, noun, <i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> , <i>i</i> .

N

naked, <i>nudus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (abl.).	new, <i>novus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
name, <i>nōmen</i> , <i>inis</i> , n.	next (=afterwards), <i>deciude</i> .
namely that, <i>quod</i> .	next day, <i>posterō diē</i> , <i>postridiē</i> .
narrow, <i>angustus</i> , <i>μ</i> , <i>um</i> .	night, noun, <i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> , <i>i</i> .
native, adj. <i>barbarus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	—, adj. <i>nocturnus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
natives, the, <i>barbarī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.	ninth, <i>nōmus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
nature, <i>nātūra</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	no, <i>nullus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
near, prep. <i>apud</i> (acc.).	no one, <i>nōmō</i> , <i>nullius</i> .
nearer, prep. <i>propius</i> (acc.).	none the less, <i>nihilō minus</i> .
nearest, <i>proximus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	nor, <i>neque</i> , <i>nec</i> .
necessarily, <i>necessāriō</i> .	not, <i>nōn</i> , <i>nē</i> (in negative com- mands or petitions).
neglect, I, <i>neglegō</i> . 3. <i>neglexī</i> , <i>neglectum</i> ; <i>praeter-mittō</i> . 3. <i>-mīsl</i> , <i>-missum</i> .	— to, <i>nē</i> (subj.).
neighbours, <i>finitimī</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.	— yet, <i>nondum</i> .
neither, <i>neque</i> .	nothing, <i>nihil</i> , <i>nīl</i> .
neither . . . nor, <i>neque</i> . . . <i>neque</i> ; <i>nec</i> . . . <i>nec</i> .	number, <i>numerus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.

O

oar, <i>rēmus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.	oath, <i>iūs</i> <i>iūrandum</i> , <i>iūris</i> <i>iūrandī</i> , n. (or <i>iūsiūrandum</i> , etc.).
obey, I, <i>obtemper-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātum</i> (dat.); <i>pār-eō</i> , 2. <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> (dat.).	occurrence, <i>cāsūs</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.
of, sign of gen. case; some- times <i>ex</i> , e.g. <i>ex hostibus</i> <i>centum</i> .	of, sign of gen. case; some- times <i>ex</i> , e.g. <i>ex hostibus</i> <i>centum</i> .
— this kind, <i>ēiusmodī</i> .	— this kind, <i>ēiusmodī</i> .

officer, *tribūnus*, *i*; *praefectus*, our, *noster*, *tra*, *trum*.
i, *m.*
 often, *sæpe*.
 on, *in* (abl.), or simple abl. e.g. of time; after vb. of motion, *in* (acc.).
 — all sides, *undique*, *passim*.
 — foot, *pedibus*.
 — the other hand, *contrā*.
 — this account, *hōc*, *eā*.
 — this side of, *citrā*, *cis* (acc.).

one, *ūnus*, *a*, *um*.
 — at a time, *singulī*, *ac*, *a*.
 only, adj. *sōlus*, *a*, *um*.
 —, adv. *sōlum*.
 open, *apertus*, *a*, *um*.
 opinion, *opīniō*, *ōnis*, f.
 opportunity, *occāsiō*, *ōnis*, f. ; facultās, *ātis*, f.
 or, *aut*, *vel* ; *nō-ve* (in negative commands, or petitions); preceded by 'whether' in indirect questions, *an*.
 order, I, *iub-eō*. 2. *iussī*, *iussum* ; *imper-ō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.) ; *mandō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātum* (dat.) ; *praē-cipiō*. 3. *-cēpī*, *-ceptum* (acc. and dat.).
 other, *alius*, *a*, *ud.*
 ought, *v. must*.

— men, *nostrī*, *ōrum*, *m.* *pl*
 — selves, *ipstī*.
 outstretched, *passus*, *a*, *um*.
 outwork, *agger*, *cris*, *m*.
 overtake, I, *ad-sequor*. 3. *-secū-tus*.
 overwhelm, I, *op-primō*. 3. *-pressī*, *-pressum*.
 owing to, *prōpter*, *q̄d* (acc.).

P

pacify, *pāc-ō*. 1. *-ārī*, *-ātum*.
 parley, *colloquium*, *quīl*, *n*.
 part, *par*, *rīs*, *f* ; *regiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.
 (=district).
 people, *populus*, *i*, *m*.
 perceive, I, *intellegō*. 3. *in-tellexī*, *intellectum* ; *anim-advert-ō*. 3. *-i*, *-rsum* ; *sentiō*.
 4. *sensī*, *sensum* (=feel).
 perform, I, *fungor*. 3. *functus*.
 perish, I, *per-eō*, *-ire*, *-iū*, *-itum* ; *inter-eō*, etc.
 persuade, *per-suādeo*. 2. *-suāsī*, *-suāsum* (dat.).
 pick-up, I, *ex-cipiō*. 3. *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*.
 pitch, *pīx*, *pīcis*, *f*.
 place, *locus*, *i*, *m*. *v. ground*.

place, I, <i>pōnō</i> . 3. <i>posuī, positum</i> .	provisions, <i>commeātus, n̄s, m.</i>
plainly, <i>plinē</i> .	(used in either sing. or pl.).
plan, <i>consilium, ilī, n.</i> ; <i>ratiō, ōnis, f.</i> (of battle).	punish, I, <i>pūn-iō</i> . 4. <i>-īvī (ii), -ātūm.</i>
pleases it, <i>plac-ēt</i> . 2. <i>-uit</i> or <i>-itum est</i> .	put, I, <i>pōnō</i> . 3. <i>posuī, positum</i> .
pleasure, <i>voluptūs, ātis, f.</i>	— to flight, I, <i>fug-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> ; in <i>fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum</i> ; in <i>fugam convertō</i> . 3. <i>-vertī, -versum</i> .
plough, I, <i>ar-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> .	
plunder, I, <i>praed-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātūs</i> (v. n. <i>ſſ. dī-rīpiō</i> . 3. <i>-ri</i> -ceptum (v. a.).	
poet, <i>poētā, ae, m.</i>	queen, <i>rēgīna, ae, f.</i>
point out, I, <i>dē-monstr-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> .	quickly, <i>celeriter</i> ; compar. <i>celerius</i> ; superl. <i>celerrimē</i> .
poor, <i>pauper, eris</i> .	quiet, adj. <i>quiētus, a, um.</i>
position, <i>locus, ī, m.</i>	
post, I, <i>col-loc-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> .	R
powerful, <i>potens, ntis</i> ; compar. <i>-ntior</i> ; superl. <i>-ntissimus</i> .	race, <i>gens, ntis, f.</i> ; <i>genūs, eris, n.</i>
prepare, I, <i>par-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, ātūm</i> .	rank, <i>ordō, inis, m.</i> (of sol- diers) ; <i>dignitās, ātis, f.</i> (of position).
prevail, I, <i>super-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> .	reach, I, <i>per-veniō</i> . 4. <i>-vēnī, -rentum</i> (in. acc.).
priest, <i>sacerdōs, ātis, comm.</i>	
private, <i>privātus, a, um.</i>	
promise, I, <i>pollic-ēor</i> . 2. <i>-itus</i> (takes fut. tense of the infin.).	reason, <i>causa, ae, f.</i>
property, <i>possessiōnēs, um, f. pl.</i>	receive, I, <i>ac-cipiō</i> . 3. <i>-ēpī, -ceptum.</i>
protection, <i>praesidium, idī, n.</i> ; <i>fidēs, ei, f.</i>	refuse, I, <i>recūs-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī, -ātūm</i> .
	reinforcements, <i>ampliōrēs cōpiae, ārum, f. pl.</i> ; <i>subsidiā, ārum, n. pl.</i>

relate, *I*, *dicō*. 3. *dixi*, *dictum*; resource, *consilium*, *īlī*, n. (wonderful) to relate, use rest, the, or rest-of, *v.* remainder. supine in *-ū*.

relying-on, *fūtūs*, *a*, *um* (abl.).

remain, *I*, (*re*)*maneō*. 2. *mansi*, *mansum*.

remainder, the, *reliquī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.; *cēterī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.

remember, *I*, *memorium* retineō. 2. *-tinūt*, *-tentum* (gen.); *reminiscor*. 3. no perf. part. (gen.).

remove, *I*, *re-moveō*. 2. *-mōvī*, *-mōtūm*.

repair, *I*, *re-ficiō*. 3. *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.

repent, *I*, use *paenit-ēt*. 2. *-uit* (acc. of person, gen. of thing).

reply, *I*, *re-spondeō*, 2. *-spondī*, *-sponsūm* (dat.).

report, *I*, (*re*)*nuntiō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātūm*.

republic, *rēs publica*, *reī publīcae* (or *respublica*, *reipublīcae*).

reserves, the, *auxilia*, *ōrum*, n. pl.

resist, *I*, *re-sistō*, 3. *-stītī*, *-stītūm* (dat.).

resolve on, *I*, *con-stituō*. 3. *-stitūtī*, *-stītūtūm*.

resource, *consilium*, *īlī*, n. (wonderful) to relate, use rest, the, or rest-of, *v.* remainder.

retire, *v.* retreat.

retreat, *I*, *mē re-cipiō*. 3. *-cēpī*, *-ceptūm*; *cēdō*. 3. *cessī*, *cessum*.

return, *I*, *red-eō*, *-ire*, *-ītī*, *-itūm*; *re-vertō* or *-vertor*. 3. *-vertī*, *-versus* (perf. tenses except *reversus*, having returned, are formed from the act. root).

reward, *praemium*, *mī*, n.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*, *ī*, m.

rights, *iūs*, *iūris*, n.

rising, *a*, *mōtūs*, *ūs*, m.

river, *flūmen*, *inīs*, n.

road, *via*, *ae*, f. ; *itēr*, *itineris*, n.

Roman, *Rōmānus*, *a*, *um*.

Romans, the, *Rōmānī*, *ōrum*, m. pl.

Rome, *Rōma*, *ae*, f.

rope, *fūnis*, *is*, m.

rouse, *I*, *excitō*. 1. *-āvī*, *-ātūm*.

rule, *imperium*, *erī*, n.

rumour, *rūmor*, *ōris*, m.

run up, *I*, *ac-currō*. 3. *-cucurri* and *-currī*, *-cursum*.

running, *nōun*, *cursus*, *ūs*, m.

rush at, *I*, *impētūm faciō*. 3. *fēcī*, *factūm* (in. acc.).

S	send forward, I, <i>prae-mittō</i> . 3.
safe, <i>tūtus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>incolumis</i> , <i>c.</i>	- <i>missi</i> , - <i>missum</i> .
safely, <i>tūtō</i> .	— out, I, <i>dū-mittō</i> . 3. - <i>missi</i> , - <i>missum</i> .
safety, <i>salūs</i> , <i>ūtis</i> , <i>f.</i>	
sail, I, <i>nāvīgō</i> . 1. - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātūm</i> .	set-fire-to, I, <i>incendō</i> . 3. - <i>ī</i> , - <i>nsum</i> : <i>ignem in-ferō</i> , - <i>ferre</i> , - <i>tulī</i> , - <i>lātūm</i> (dat.).
— noun, <i>vēlūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i>	
sailing, <i>nāvīgātō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>	— out, I, <i>proficiscor</i> . 3. <i>pro- -ruptūm</i> (ex).
sally, I, <i>ē-rūmpō</i> . 3. - <i>rūptī</i> ,	
— <i>ātūm</i> .	
same, <i>thē-sidēm</i> , <i>eadēm</i> , <i>idēm</i> .	several, <i>complūrēs</i> , <i>a</i> , (gen. - <i>īum</i>).
— save, I (con)servō. 1. - <i>āvī</i> ,	
— <i>ātūm</i> .	severe, <i>gravīs</i> , <i>e.</i>
say, I, <i>dīcō</i> . 3. <i>dīcī</i> , <i>dictūm</i> .	ship, <i>nāvīs</i> , <i>īs</i> , <i>f.</i>
says, he, <i>ait</i> , <i>inquit</i> (in direct speech).	shortness of stature, <i>ōrevītās</i> , - <i>ātīs</i> , <i>f.</i>
scantiness, <i>exigūtās</i> , <i>ātīs</i> , <i>f.</i>	shout, noun, <i>clāmōr</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>f.</i>
scarcely, <i>vīx</i> .	siege, <i>obsidīō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>
scout, <i>explōrātōr</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>m.</i>	sight, <i>conspectus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i>
sea, <i>mare</i> , <i>īs</i> , <i>n.</i>	signal, <i>signūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i>
— board, <i>ōra</i> (<i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>) <i>mari- tīmā</i> .	since, <i>quoniam</i> (indic.), <i>cum</i> (subj.), <i>v.</i> because, and Less. 46.
secretly, <i>clām</i> .	six, <i>sex</i> .
see, I, <i>videō</i> . 2. <i>rīdī</i> , <i>visūm</i> .	size, <i>magnitūdō</i> , <i>inīs</i> , <i>f.</i>
seek, I, <i>petō</i> . 3. - <i>īvī</i> (<i>ii</i>), - <i>ītūm</i> .	skilful, <i>perītūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (gen.).
seem, I, <i>videor</i> . 2. <i>visūs</i> .	skin, <i>pellīs</i> , <i>īs</i> , <i>f.</i>
seize, I, <i>occupō</i> . 1. - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātūm</i> .	skirmish, <i>proelīum</i> , <i>īt</i> , <i>n.</i>
self, <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	slaughter, <i>caedēs</i> , <i>īs</i> , <i>f.</i>
sell, I, <i>rendō</i> . 3. - <i>īvī</i> , - <i>īfūm</i> .	slave, <i>servūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i>
senate, <i>senātūs</i> , <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i>	sleep, <i>somnūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i>
send, I, <i>mittō</i> . 3. <i>missī</i> , <i>missūm</i> .	sling, <i>funda</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>

slinger, <i>funditor, ōris</i> , m.	standard, <i>signum, ī, n.</i>
smoke, <i>fūmus, ī, m.</i>	— bearer, <i>aquilifer, erī, m.</i>
; so, <i>tam, ita.</i>	stake, <i>māteria, ae, f.</i> (lit. timber).
— great, <i>tentus, a, um.</i>	start, I, <i>proficiscor.</i> 3. <i>profectus.</i>
soldier, <i>mīles, itis, comm.</i>	some, <i>nonnullus, a, um;</i> <i>aliquis,</i>
some, <i>nonnullus, a, um;</i> <i>aliquis,</i>	state, <i>cītās, ātis, f.</i>
<i>id; aliquot</i> (diſs).	matters, <i>rēs publicae,</i>
— men, <i>alī;</i> some . . .	<i>rērum publicarūm, f. pl.</i>
others, <i>alī . . . alī.</i>	stature, <i>statūra, ae, f.</i>
son, <i>filius, lī, m.</i>	steep, <i>praeceps, cīpīs.</i>
soon, <i>mox: iam</i> (with tenses	stir up, I, <i>sollicit-ō.</i> 1. <i>āvī;</i>
referring to fut. time).	āvī -ātum.
sortie, <i>eruptiō, ōnis, f.</i>	stockade, <i>vallum, ī, n.</i>
sound, <i>sonus, ī, m.;</i> <i>sonitus,</i>	stone, <i>saxum, ī, n.</i>
<i>ūs, m.</i>	stop, I, <i>mor-or.</i> 1. <i>-ātus, v.n.</i>
Spain, <i>Hispānia, ae, f.</i>	and a.
spare, I, <i>parcō.</i> 3. <i>peperī,</i>	storm, I, <i>ex-pugn-ō.</i> 1. <i>-āvī,</i>
<i>parsum</i> (dat.).	āvī -ātum.
speak, I, <i>loquor.</i> 3. <i>locūtus.</i>	storm, noun, <i>tempestās, ātis, f.</i>
speech, <i>sermō, ōnis, m.;</i> <i>ōratiō</i>	stoutly, <i>v. bravely.</i>
<i>ōnis, f.</i>	stranger, <i>hospes, itis, m.</i>
speedily, <i>vēlociter;</i> <i>celeriter.</i>	strength, <i>vīrēs, ium, f. pl.</i> (pl. of <i>vīs</i>).
speedy, <i>celer, eris, ere.</i>	strengthen, I, <i>con-firm-ō.</i> 1.
spot, <i>v. place.</i>	āvī -ātum.
spring, <i>vēr, vēris, n.</i>	strenuously, <i>strēnuē.</i>
spy, <i>explorātor, ōris, m.</i>	such, <i>tālis, e;</i> <i>tantus, a, um</i>
squadron, <i>turmu, ae, f.</i>	(=so great), <i>is, ea, id</i> (in conſe. clauses); of such a
(equitum).	kind, <i>ēiusmodī.</i>
stand, I, <i>st-ō.</i> 1. <i>-ētī, -ātum.</i>	sudden, <i>subitus, a, um.</i>
stand my ground, I, <i>re-sistō.</i>	
3. <i>-stītī, -stītum.</i>	

suddenly, <i>subitō</i> .	temper, <i>animus</i> , <i>i</i> , m.
suffer, <i>I</i> , <i>patior</i> . 3. <i>passus</i> .	tent, <i>tabernaculum</i> , <i>i</i> , n.
sufficient, <i>satis</i> .	tertīth, <i>decimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
suitable, <i>aptus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (ad.); <i>idoneus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (dat. or ad.).	tertīms, <i>condicō</i> , <i>inis</i> , f. (sing. or pl.).
summer, <i>aestās</i> , <i>alīs</i> , f.	territory, -ies, <i>finēs</i> , <i>ium</i> , m. pl. ; <i>agri</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl.
summit, <i>summa</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	than, <i>quam</i> or simple abl.
supply, <i>cōpia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	that, demonstrative pron. and adj. <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> ; <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> .
support, <i>I</i> , <i>alō</i> . 3. <i>-ūtī</i> , <i>-tum</i> and <i>sitēm</i> ; <i>toler-ō</i> . 1. <i>-ātī</i> , <i>-ētum</i> (hiemem).	that, rel. pron., <i>v</i> . which.
surround, <i>I</i> , <i>circum-dō</i> , <i>-dare</i> , <i>-dedī</i> , <i>-datum</i> ; <i>circum-veniō</i> . 4. <i>-vētī</i> , <i>-ventum</i> ; <i>circum-sistō</i> .	that (=in order that), introducing indirect state- ments, omit.
3. <i>-stetī</i> , no supine; <i>cingō</i> . 3. <i>cinxi</i> , <i>cinctum</i> .	the (before a comparative), <i>eō</i> or <i>hōc</i> , <i>v</i> . Less. 28.
suspend, <i>I</i> , <i>inter-mittō</i> . 3. <i>-misi</i> , <i>-missum</i> (opus).	their, <i>eōrum</i> ; <i>suus</i> , <i>ū</i> , <i>um</i> (=their own).
sway, <i>imperium</i> , <i>erī</i> , n.	themselves, <i>ipsi</i> ; in oblique cases, <i>sē</i> , <i>sēcē</i> .
swōrd, <i>gladius</i> , <i>dī</i> , m. ; <i>ferrum</i> , <i>i</i> , n. (ignī ferrōque).	then, <i>tum</i> , <i>deinde</i> (=next).

T

take, <i>I</i> , <i>capiō</i> . 3. <i>cīpī</i> , <i>captum</i> .	thence, <i>inde</i> .
— part, <i>I</i> , <i>vers-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātus</i> (in. abl.).	there, <i>illīc</i> .
up a position, <i>I</i> , <i>con- sistō</i> . 3. <i>-stītī</i> , <i>-stītum</i> .	therefore, <i>itaque</i> ; <i>igitur</i> (after first word of a clause.)
talk, <i>I</i> , <i>v</i> . speak.	thigh, <i>femur</i> ; <i>oris</i> , or <i>inis</i> , n.
tall, <i>altus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	thing, <i>rēs</i> , <i>rei</i> ; often trans- lated by n. sing. or pl. of a pronoun, e. g. 'those things,' <i>ea</i> .
tell, <i>I</i> , <i>v</i> . inform.	

think, I, <i>pul-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> ;	top-of, <i>summus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
ex-istim-ō. 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> ;	torture, <i>cruciātus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.
arbitr-or. 1. <i>-ātūs</i> .	towards, <i>in</i> (acc.); of feelings,
third, <i>tertīus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	etc., <i>ergā</i> (acc.).
thirty, <i>trīgintā</i> .	tower, <i>turris</i> , <i>is</i> , f. acc. <i>turr-im</i>
this, <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hōc</i> .	and <i>-em</i> ; abl. <i>turr-ī</i> and <i>-e</i> .
thither, <i>eo</i> .	town, <i>oppidum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
three, <i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> .	training, <i>exercitatiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.
— days, <i>trīdūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	traitor, <i>prōdītor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
through, <i>per</i> (acc.).	transport, I, <i>trāsport-ō</i> .
throughout, translate by the abl.	<i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> .
throw, I, <i>cōn-iciō</i> . 3. <i>-iēcī</i> ,	traveller, <i>viātor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
<i>-iectum</i> (tēla); <i>prō-iciō</i> . 3.	tribe, <i>nātiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.
<i>-iēcī</i> , <i>-iectum</i> (aquilam); <i>prac-</i> <i>cipit-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> , (mē).	tribune, <i>tribūnus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.
— away, <i>ab-iciō</i> . 3. <i>-iēcī</i> ,	tributary, <i>vectigālis</i> , <i>e</i> .
<i>-iectum</i> .	troops, say 'soldiers' or 'forces.'
— into-confusion, <i>per-turb-ō</i> .	trumpet, <i>tuba</i> , <i>ac</i> , f.
1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> .	trust, I, <i>con-fidō</i> . 3. <i>fīsus</i> <i>sueh</i> (dat. or abl.).
thus, <i>sic</i> , <i>tālī modō</i> .	try, I, <i>cōn-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātūs</i> ; <i>exprior</i> .
timber, <i>māteria</i> , <i>ae</i> , f. (in nom. and acc. sing. also <i>māteriēs</i> , <i>em</i>).	4. <i>expertus</i> (auxilium).
time, <i>tempus</i> , <i>oris</i> , n.	twenty, <i>vīgintī</i> .
to, sign of dat. case; in final clauses, <i>ut</i> .	two, <i>duo</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>o</i> .
— prep. <i>ad</i> , <i>in</i> (acc.).	— hundred, <i>ducentī</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> .
— morrow, <i>crās</i> .	— years, <i>biennium</i> , <i>nī</i> , n.
— one-another, <i>inter sē</i> .	
— relate, <i>v.</i> relate.	

U

unincumbered, *expeditus*, *a*,
um.
uneven, *iniquus*, *a*, *um*.

unexpectedly, (<i>dē</i>) <i>improvisō</i> .	victory, <i>victōria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
unknown, <i>ignōtus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	violence, <i>vis</i> , <i>vim</i> , <i>vī</i> , <i>f.</i>
unless, <i>nisi</i> .	do violence-to, I, <i>viol-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> (<i>acc.</i>).
unstable, <i>nuōbilis</i> , <i>e</i> .	voice, <i>vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> , <i>f.</i>
unsuitable, <i>nōn idōneus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (ad or dat.).	
until, <i>prīusquam</i> ; <i>dum</i> (<i>subj.</i>); <i>quoad</i> (<i>subj.</i>).	
unworthily, <i>indignē</i> ; compar. <i>-ius</i> ; superl. <i>-issimē</i> .	wage, I, <i>gerō</i> . 3. <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestuī</i> .
unworthy, <i>indignus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (abl.).	wait, I, <i>mor-or</i> . 1. <i>-ātus</i> (<i>v.n.</i>); <i>exspect-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> (<i>v.n.</i>).
urge-on, I, <i>urgeā</i> . 2. (<i>ursī</i>), no supine; <i>incitō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> , (equum).	— for, I, <i>exspect-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> (<i>v.a.</i>).
us, <i>nōs</i> .	walk, I, <i>ambul-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātūm</i> .
use, I, <i>ūtor</i> . 3. <i>ūsus</i> (abl.).	wall, <i>mīrus</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i>
useful, <i>ūtilis</i> , <i>e</i> ; dat. of <i>ūsus</i> ,	war, <i>bellum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i>
— <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i>	warlike, <i>bellicōsus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
useless, <i>inūtilis</i> , <i>e</i> .	warn, I, (<i>ad</i>) <i>mon-eō</i> . 2. <i>-ut</i> , <i>-itum</i> .

V

valley, <i>vallēs</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>f.</i>	warrior, <i>armātus</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i> (<i>lit. an</i> armed man).
valour, <i>virtūs</i> , <i>ūtis</i> , <i>f.</i>	warship, <i>nīvis longa</i> , <i>f.</i>
very, sign of superl. degree; (=actual), <i>ipse</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .	watch, <i>vigilia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
— easy, <i>perfacilis</i> , <i>e</i> .	water, <i>aqua</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
— young, <i>vī</i> , young.	way (=method), <i>modus</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i>
victorious, I am, <i>vī</i> , conquer; or <i>victor</i> , <i>superior sum</i> , <i>esse</i> ,	we, <i>nōs</i> ; or express by 1st pers. pl. of tenses.
<i>fui</i>	weapon, <i>tēlum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i>

weariness, <i>lassitudō, inis</i> , f.	wind, <i>vēntus, ī</i> , m.
weep, <i>ī, fleō</i> . 2. <i>fleūi, flētum</i> .	wine, <i>vinum ī</i> , n.
weigh-down, <i>I</i> (=oppress), <i>op-prīmō</i> . 3. <i>pressō, -pressum</i> .	wing, <i>cornū, ūs</i> , n. (milit.).
weighed, <i>exāminātus, a, um</i> .	winter, noun, <i>hiems, emis</i> , f.
weight, <i>pondus, eris</i> , n.	winter, <i>I</i> , <i>hiem-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī,</i> <i>-ātūm</i> .
what, rel. pron. =that which, <i>id quod</i> ; those things which, <i>ea quae</i> .	— quarters, <i>hiberna, ūrum</i> n. pl.
— interrog. pron. (in In- direct Questions), <i>quis, quid</i> (noun), <i>qui, quae, quod</i> (adj.).	wish, <i>I, volō, velle, volū</i> .
when, <i>ut</i> (indic.); <i>cum</i> (past tense of subj.).	— for, <i>I, cūp-iō</i> . 3. <i>ūvī (ii),</i> <i>-itūm</i> .
whence, <i>unde</i> .	— not, <i>I, nōlō, nolle, nōlūt</i> .
whenever, <i>cum, quotiens</i> , <i>v. Less. 49.</i>	with, <i>simplō</i> abl., or <i>cum</i> (abl.)=together with.
whether? <i>utrum</i> .	— difficulty, <i>aegrē, vix</i> .
whether . . . or (in Indirect Questions), <i>utrum, num, -ne</i> . . . <i>an</i> , v. p. 186.	within, <i>intrā</i> (acc.).
which, rel. v. who.	without, <i>sine</i> (abl.).
while, <i>dum</i> (indic.), v. p. 204.	woman, <i>mulier, eris</i> , f.; <i>fēmina</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
whither, rel. adv. <i>quō</i> .	wonderful, <i>mīrābilis, e</i> .
who, rel. pron., <i>qui, quae,</i> <i>quod</i> .	woody, <i>silvestris, e</i> .
— interrog. pron. <i>quis, quid</i> .	word, <i>verbum, ī</i> , n.
whole, whole-of, <i>tōtus, a, um</i> .	work, noun, <i>opus, eris</i> , n.
why? <i>cūr, quāmōbrem, quā dē</i> <i>causā</i> .	—, <i>I, labōr-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī,</i> <i>-ātūm</i> .
	wound, noun, <i>vulnus, eris</i> , n.
	—, <i>I, vulnēr-ō</i> . 1. <i>-āvī,</i> <i>-ātūm</i> .
	write, <i>scribō</i> . 3. <i>scripsī, scriptum</i> .
	wrong, <i>nefas</i> (indeel.).

Yyear, *annus*, *i*, m.yet (=nevertheless), *tamen*.you, sing. *tū*, pl. *vós*; or ex-press by 2nd pers. sing. or
pl. of tenses.young, very, *adulescentulus*, *a-*
um.young man, *iuvénis*, *is*, m.*adulescens*, *ntis*, m.men, *iuventūs*, *ntis*, f.

!

Zzeal, *studium*, *dī*, n.

MESSRS. RIVINGTONS'

Rivingtons' Junior Classics.

First Latin Translation Book.
By J. A. TURNER and A. H.
THOMAS. 1s. 6d.

Initia Latina. A Latin Book for
Beginners. By E. D. MANSFIELD. 2s.

Exercises in Latin Prose.

By E. D. MANSFIELD. 2s. 6d. net.
Edited, with Maps, Plans, Exercises for
Re-translation, Notes, and Vocabularies.

Caesar, The Gallic War.
Books I. to VI. 1s. 6d. each.

Selections from Cicero.
In Two Parts. 1s. 6d. each.

Ætropius. as.

Selections from Livy. as.

Selections from Ovid. as.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. Book I. 2s.

Rivingtons' Single Term Latin Readers
With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabularies.

First Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. 8d. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Second Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Third Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Fourth Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Fifth Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. 1s. 4d. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Sixth Term.—Three Books, increasing in difficulty. 1s. 9d. each. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Rivingtons' Single Term Greek Readers
With Notes and Vocabularies. 1s. 6d. each.

First Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Second Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

Third Term.—Three Books, of equal difficulty. First Book, Second Book, and Third Book.

A First Greek Reader; Book I.
By ARTHUR SIDGWICK. 1s. 6d.

Greek Sentence Construction.
By ARTHUR SIDGWICK. 1s. 6d. act.

A Primer of Greek Grammar.

By E. ABOTT and E. D. MANSFIELD.
2s. 6d. net, or separately:—

Accidence. 2s. 6d. net. Syntax. 1s. 6d. net.

A Primer of Greek Exercises.

Based on, and adapted to, the above.
By W. GREENSTOCK. 1s. 6d.

Elementary Greek Exercises.
By A. E. HILLARD and C. G. BOTTING.
1s. 6d.

Greek Prose Composition. By
M. A. NORTH and A. E. HILLARD.
1s. 6d.

Rivingtons' Middle Form Classics.

Livy. Book I. By A. F. HORT. 2s.

Livy. Book II. By A. F. HORT. 2s.

Livy. Book V. By A. F. HORT. 2s.

Euripides' Hercules Furens, Scenes
from. By A. F. HORT. 1s. 6d.

Pylos and Sphacteria, from Thucy-
dides. By W. ROUSE. 1s. 6d.

The Retreat from Syracuse, from
Thucydides. By W. ROUSE. 1s. 6d.

The Empire of Athens, from Thucy-
dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

The Siege of Plataea, from Thucy-
dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

Brasidas in Thrace, from Thucy-
dides. By J. M. SING. 1s. 6d.

A Primer of Latin Grammar.

By W. MODERN. 2s. 6d. Or separately:
Accidence, 1s. Syntax, 1s. 6d.

First Latin Lessons. For the
use of Preparatory and all types of
Secondary Schools. By C. M. D.

First Latin Book. Being the First
Year of a Two Years' Course prepara-
tory to Caesar. By C. A. WILLIAMS. 2s.

Latin Lessons for Beginners.

By A. S. and HILLARD. 1s. 6d.

Latin Prose Composition for
Middle Forms of Schools. By M. A.
NORTH and A. E. HILLARD. 1s. 6d.

A Latin Verse Book. For Junior
Students. By A. H. THOMAS.

Rivingtons' Class Books of
Latin Unseen. (a) Six books, for
alternative use (of a nearly similar
standard of difficulty), for the use of
Fourth Forms of Schools; and (b) Six
books, for use of Fifth Forms. Edited
by E. H. C. SMITH. 6d. each net.

Easy Latin Unseen. In Three Books.
Prose and Verse together.

Book I., 6d.; Book II., 6d.
Edited by S. E. LONGLAND.

Book III., A First Book of Latin
Verse. Edited by H. C. BENBOW. 6d.

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

An Elementary History of England.
By MRS. CYRIL RANSOME. 1s.

A First History of England.
By MRS. CYRIL RANSOME. 2s. 6d.

An Elementary History of England. By C. RANSOME. 1s. 6d.

An Illustrated History of England. For Upper and Middle Forms. By W. S. ROBINSON. One Vol. 3s. 6d., or in two Vols. 2s. each.

I. To the End of the Commonwealth, 1660. 2s.
II. To Edward VII., 1907. 2s.

A Class Book of English History. For Middle Forms of Schools. By A. HASSALL. 3s. 6d.

An Advanced History of England. By C. RANSOME. 7s. 6d.
Or, in 2 parts, 4s. each.

Rivington's Text Books of English History. By A. HASSALL.
The Tudor Dynasty. 1485-1603. 2s.
The Expansion of Great Britain. 1714-83. 3s.

War and Reform. 1789-1837. 3s.
An Elementary History of Greece. By C. W. C. OMAN. 2s.

A Short History of Greece. By W. S. ROBINSON. 2s.

A Short History of Rome. By W. S. ROBINSON. 3s. 6d.

A History of Rome. For Middle and Upper Forms. By J. L. MYKES. 5s.

A Short History of the Church in Great Britain. By W. H. HUTTON. 3s. 6d.

Readings in Old Testament History. By A. R. WHITHAM.

1. The Bible Text only, 2s. 6d. net.; or in Two Parts, 1s. 3d. each net.

2. The Readings only, in 78 Lessons, 2s. 6d. net. [4s. 6d. net.]

3. Text and Readings, in One Vol., By Canon GLAZEBROOK.

Lessons from the Old Testament. Senior Course. Text in Two Vols., 2s. 6d. each net. "Text and Notes of each Vol. together, 4s. each net.

Junior Course. Text and Notes in one Vols., 2s. 6d. net. "Text without Notes, 2s. 6d. net, or, in 3 Parts, 1s. each net.

Bible Lessons for the Young. The Old Testament in selections from the Authorised Version. 2s. 6d. net, or in Two Parts, 1s. 3d. each net.

Notes and Outlines for Bible Lessons. For Teachers using "Bible Lessons for the Young." 3s. 6d.

Bible Lessons and Notes and Outlines. also in 1 Vol., 4s. 6d.

Rivington's Bible and Prayer-Book Handbooks.

The First Volume of the Pentateuch: The Creation to Deliverance from Egypt. 2s. 6d. net.—**The Second Volume of the Pentateuch:** Departure from Egypt to Death of Moses. 2s. 6d. net.—**Joshua.** 2s. 6d. net.—**Judges and Ruth** in 1 Vol. 2s. 6d. net.—**The First Volume of the Monarchy:** Samuel to Accession of Solomon. 2s. 6d. net.—**The Second Volume of the Monarchy:** Solomon to Captivity of Judah. 3s. 6d. net.—**St. Matthew's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net +

St. Mark's Gospel. 2s. 6d. net.—**St. Luke's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net.—**St. John's Gospel.** 2s. 6d. net.—

The Acts. Pt. I., chs. i.-xv., 2s. 6d. net; Pt. II., chs. xvi.-end., 2s. net.—**The Prayer Book.** 4s. 6d. net.

Edited by DR. A. E. HILLARD.

Rivington's Books of the Bible. Genesis—Exodus—Joshua—Judges—Ruth and I. Samuel—II. Samuel—I. Kings—II. Kings—Ezra and Nehemiah—Amos—St. Matthew's Gospel—St. Mark's Gospel—St. Luke's Gospel—St. John's Gospel. 1s. 6d. each.—**The Acts.** 2s.

A Continuous Narrative of the Life of Christ in the Words of the Four Gospels. 2s. 6d.

By W. G. BORCHARDT.

Practical Arithmetic for Schools. Complete, 3s. 6d.; with Answers, 4s. 6d., or in Two Parts:

Part I., 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d. Part II., 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d.

Examples only, with or without Answers, 3s. Or in Two Parts:—Part I., 1s. 6d., with or without Answers. Part II., 2s., with or without Answers.

A Continuous Narrative of the Life of Christ in the Words of the Four Gospels. 2s. 6d.

By W. G. BORCHARDT.

Practical Arithmetic for Schools. Complete, 3s. 6d.; with Answers, 4s. 6d., or in Two Parts:

Part I., 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d. Part II., 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d.

Examples only, with or without Answers, 3s. Or in Two Parts:—Part I., 1s. 6d., with or without Answers. Part II., 2s., with or without Answers.

Arithmetical Types and Examples. 3s. 6d.

The Examples separately. 3s. Copies may be had with and without Answers.

Junior Arithmetic. 1s. 6d.; with Answers, 2s. The Examples separately, with or without Answers, 1s. 6d.

Elementary Algebra. [each.] Complete, 3s. 6d.; with Answers, 4s. 6d.

Part I., 2s. 6d.; with Answers, 2s. 6d. Part II., 2s.; with Answers, 2s. 6d.

The Examples separately. With or without Answers, 3s. Or in Two Parts:

Part I., 1s. 6d.; with Answers, 2s. Part II., 2s., with or without Answers.

Elementary Statics. With or without Answers, 4s. 6d.

London: 34, King Street, Covent Garden, W.C.

